CARBOHYDRATES: THE YET TO BE TASTED SWEET SPOT OF IMMUNITY

EDITED BY: Deirdre R. Coombe and Christopher R. Parish

PUBLISHED IN: Frontiers in Immunology

frontiers Research Topics

frontiers

ISSN 1664-8714
ISBN 978-2-88919-625-8
DOI 10.3389/978-2-88919-625-8

About Frontiers

Frontiers is more than just an open-access publisher of scholarly articles: it is a pioneering approach to the world of academia, radically improving the way scholarly research is managed. The grand vision of Frontiers is a world where all people have an equal opportunity to seek, share and generate knowledge. Frontiers provides immediate and permanent online open access to all its publications, but this alone is not enough to realize our grand goals.

Frontiers Journal Series

The Frontiers Journal Series is a multi-tier and interdisciplinary set of open-access, online journals, promising a paradigm shift from the current review, selection and dissemination processes in academic publishing. All Frontiers journals are driven by researchers for researchers; therefore, they constitute a service to the scholarly community. At the same time, the Frontiers Journal Series operates on a revolutionary invention, the tiered publishing system, initially addressing specific communities of scholars, and gradually climbing up to broader public understanding, thus serving the interests of the lay society, too.

Dedication to quality

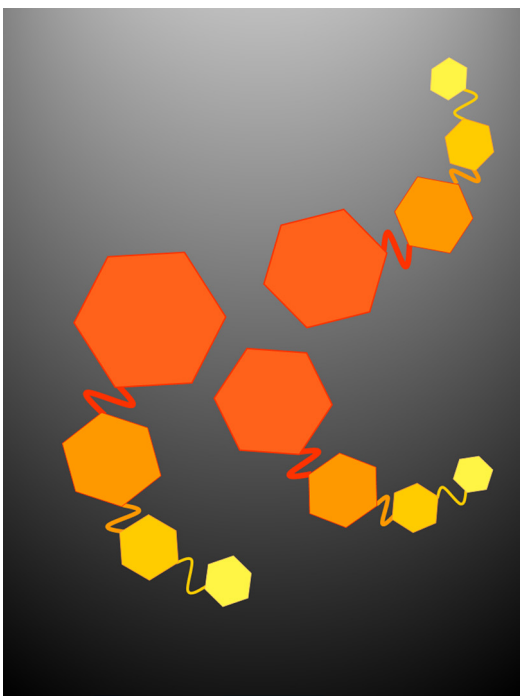
Each Frontiers article is a landmark of the highest quality, thanks to genuinely collaborative interactions between authors and review editors, who include some of the world's best academicians. Research must be certified by peers before entering a stream of knowledge that may eventually reach the public - and shape society; therefore, Frontiers only applies the most rigorous and unbiased reviews.
Frontiers revolutionizes research publishing by freely delivering the most outstanding research, evaluated with no bias from both the academic and social point of view.
By applying the most advanced information technologies, Frontiers is catapulting scholarly publishing into a new generation.

What are Frontiers Research Topics?

Frontiers Research Topics are very popular trademarks of the Frontiers Journals Series: they are collections of at least ten articles, all centered on a particular subject. With their unique mix of varied contributions from Original Research to Review Articles, Frontiers Research Topics unify the most influential researchers, the latest key findings and historical advances in a hot research area! Find out more on how to host your own Frontiers Research Topic or contribute to one as an author by contacting the Frontiers Editorial Office: **researchtopics@frontiersin.org**

CARBOHYDRATES: THE YET TO BE TASTED SWEET SPOT OF IMMUNITY

Topic Editors:
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia
Christopher R. Parish, Australian National University, Australia



Stylized representation of the core of three heparan sulfate fragments.

Image by Deirdre R Coombe.

Carbohydrates are extremely abundant bio-molecules; they are on all mammalian cell surfaces as well as on bacterial cell surfaces. In mammals most secreted proteins are glycosylated, with the glycan component comprising a significant amount by mass of the glycoprotein. Although, many years ago carbohydrate-protein recognition events were demonstrated as involved in invertebrate self-non self recognition, the contribution of carbohydrate-protein binding events to the mechanisms of the mammalian immune response was not embraced with the same enthusiasm. Adaptive immunity and the contribution of antibodies, T cells and T-lymphocyte sub-sets and protein antigen presentation dominated immunological theory. Unlike protein structures, carbohydrate structures are not template driven yet the numerous enzymes involved in carbohydrate biosynthesis and modification are encoded by a major component of the genome, and the expression of these enzymes is tightly regulated. As a consequence carbohydrate structures are also regulated, with different structures appearing according to the stage of cell differentiation and according to the age or health of the individual. The advent of technologies that have allowed carbohydrate structures and

carbohydrate-protein binding events to be more easily interrogated has resulted in these types of interactions taking their place in modern immunology. We now know that glycans and their ligands (or lectins) are involved in numerous immunological pathways of both the innate and adaptive systems. However, it is clear that our understanding is still in its infancy, as more and more examples where carbohydrate structures contribute to aspects of the immune response are being recognised. The goal of this research topic is to explore the variety of roles undertaken by glycans and lectins in all aspects of the immune response. The particular focus is how the interactions of glycans with their ligands contribute to the mechanism of immune responses.

Citation: Deirdre R.Coombe and Christopher R. Parish, eds. (2015). Carbohydrates: the yet to be tasted sweet spot of immunity. Lausanne: Frontiers Media. doi: 10.3389/978-2-88919-625-8

Table of Contents

frontiers in Immunology

EDITORIAL
published: 17 June 2015
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00314

Editorial: Carbohydrates: the yet to be tasted sweet spot of immunity

Deirdre R. Coombe[1]* *and Christopher R. Parish*[2]

[1] School of Biomedical Sciences, CHIRI Biosciences Research Precinct, Faculty of Health Sciences, Curtin University, Perth, WA, Australia, [2] Cancer and Vascular Biology Group, Department of Cancer Biology and Therapeutics, John Curtin School of Medical Research, The Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia

Keywords: Siglec, sialic acid, glycan, galectin, glycosaminoglycan, hyaluronan, heparan sulfate, heparanase

Glycobiology is an expanding discipline. Nowhere is this more apparent than in our understanding of the immune response. Perhaps the title of this focused research topic should be: "Carbohydrates: *now* the sweet spot of immunity!" The revolution in thinking to embrace the "glyco" component of glycoproteins and glycolipids has been accompanied by the development of new technologies that allow the structure of many different glycans to be determined. The article by van Kooyk et al. provides an introduction to glycan analytical tools (1). These range from technically simple analyses using plant lectins combined with flow cytometry or ELISA methods to obtain clues of glycan structures, to more complex sequencing methodologies for detailed structural characterizations. Nevertheless, determining the structure of some glycans, and particularly the glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), is still extremely difficult. However, good progress is being made in this area (2).

Cell surface glycosylation is a characteristic of all living cells (3, 4), thus it is logical that glycan structures are involved in self or non-self recognition. Nevertheless, glycans have been excluded from the thinking of most immunologists. Probably a lack of appreciation of the specificity of carbohydrate–protein interactions and the diversity of glycan structures led to this outcome. Yet, it is glycan diversity that has been harnessed by microbes to coat their surfaces, and most immunogens on microbes are glycans. As pathogens developed their glycan coats their vertebrate and invertebrate hosts similarly developed molecules to recognize these structures. The idea that invertebrate lectins can recognize glycan structures on microbes, thereby facilitating microbe phagocytosis, was accepted decades ago (5), but the fundamental contribution of glycan–protein interactions to mammalian immunity was accepted only recently. Numerous molecules involved in invertebrate host defense that recognize a spectrum of glycan structures on bacteria, fungi, and other pathogens are clearly related to similarly acting proteins in modern mammals (6). The lectin pathway of complement, toll-like receptors, the pentraxin pattern recognition receptors, and the galectins all probably arose initially in invertebrates ancestors and had roles in self or non-self recognition. We now know glycans and their binding proteins contribute to all aspects of immunology. It was argued that the essential role glycan–protein binding events play in host defense and infection is the driver of glycan diversity (3, 4). The evolutionary selection pressures imposed by the need of pathogens to avoid recognition by the proteins of their host's immune system, and for hosts to rapidly evolve glycan structures that are not sites for pathogen adhesion and infection, it was proposed, led to the conservation of glycan structural diversity (3, 4).

An appreciation of carbohydrate structural diversity is obtained when the number of genes involved in glycan biosynthesis is appreciated. van Kooyk et al. revealed that if all the genes involved in glycan biosynthesis are considered they would comprise around 3–4% of the genome (1). Although they primarily encode enzymes, co-factors, transporters, and activated sugar donors are also involved. Regulation of the expression of these genes, regulation of the activity of the different glycosyltransferases through a diverse collection of mechanisms, coupled with regulation of the expression of core proteins adds an extra dimension to glycoconjugate structural diversity (1).

Edited by:
Pietro Ghezzi, Brighton and Sussex Medical School, UK

Reviewed by:
Alex Langford-Smith, The University of Manchester, UK

***Correspondence:**
Deirdre R. Coombe
d.coombe@curtin.edu.au

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *27 May 2015*
Accepted: *02 June 2015*
Published: *17 June 2015*

Citation:
Coombe DR and Parish CR (2015) Editorial: Carbohydrates: the yet to be tasted sweet spot of immunity. Front. Immunol. 6:314. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00314

Given glycan biosynthetic processes, it is not surprising that glycan structures are altered in response to physiological and pathological cues, and these different structures affect the immunological outcomes of the process in which they are involved.

Dendritic cell (DC) sialic acids illustrate how glycan structures can influence the adaptive immune response. Glycans, both *N*- and *O*-linked, on glycoproteins terminate in sialic acid, and glycolipid gangliosides contain one or more sialic acids. Sialic acids shield host cells from pathogens, prevent the deposition of complement components on DCs, and interact with receptors of the Siglec and Selectin families (7). As explained by Crespo et al., the concentration of sialic acids on DCs is very high, most Siglecs binding to sialic acids on the same DC (i.e., *cis* interactions) (7). Sialidase activity releases these Siglecs allowing them to engage in interactions with sialic acids on pathogens. The balance between cell surface sialic acid and sialidases may regulate key DC functions like phagocytosis, micropinocytosis, migration, and DC–T cell interactions (7). Not all leukocytes can have these high-sialic acid levels, nor can their Siglecs signal via sialic acid in *cis* interactions. As the binding of Siglecs on eosinophils and neutrophils to antibodies or multimeric glycan ligands triggers cell death (8), yet in certain inflammatory conditions, these cell types abound; this could not happen if these cells have high-sialic acid levels that bind Siglecs in *cis* to trigger cell death. Nevertheless, inhibitory intracellular signals upon Siglec binding sialylated antigens are common, because most Siglecs have inhibitory ITIM signaling motifs and DCs may become tolerogenic if their Siglecs recognize sialylated carbohydrate antigens in tumors (7).

Dendritic cell immunogenicity is also regulated by other carbohydrate–protein interactions; the interaction of galectin-1 with DCs encourages a tolerogenic phenotype (9). Galectins are a family of β-galactoside binding lectins. Various galectin family members have been described as "regulators of immune homeostasis," as "pattern recognition receptors," and as "receptors for microbial adhesion and infection" (10). Often there is evidence for the same galectin having opposing functions, the question is how? Baum et al. examined the opposing roles of galectins in microbe–host interactions (11). They described how galectins can bridge specific glycans on viral and bacterial pathogens with glycans on target cell plasma membranes, to increase pathogen attachment. The outcome of galectin–pathogen interactions is not always infection; rather there are numerous examples of galectins contributing to innate and adaptive immune responses to pathogens, and some galectins have direct microbicidal activity (11). The response is dependent on the galectin, the pathogen and the host cell, with factors such as glycan density, glycan clustering, and the glycoprotein or glycolipid upon which the glycan is presented, all contributing to the context-specific outcome. Differences in the *N*-glycans of resting and activated cytolytic T lymphocytes (CTLs), with more galectin-3 ligands being present on activated CTLs, is an example where the density of a glycan structure regulates CTL function. In a galectin-3 rich milieu (e.g., a tumor), reduced motility of galectin-3 cross-linked glycoproteins on activated infiltrating CTLs could explain the decreased CTL activity within tumors (12).

Involvement in the immune response is also in the functional realm of GAGs. Simon Davis and Parish highlight the number of proteins that have heparin/heparan sulfate (HS) binding motifs within their sequences (13). Many of the possible new HS–protein interactions that they discovered may act in immune responses but this is unconfirmed. Other confirmed HS–protein interactions have clear implications for immunity; described are examples of HS–protein interactions contributing to (1) cell adhesion and migration, (2) the regulation of cytokine and chemokine functions, and (3) the sensing of tissue injury (13). The regulation, by HS, of complement pathway triggered inflammation is emphasized by two articles. Perkins et al. used molecular modeling and affinity coefficient data to develop a bivalent, co-operative model of complement factor H (CFH) binding to HS (14). They argued, mutations in either of the CFH HS binding regions that weaken binding, alters the orientation of CFH on the cell surface disrupting C3b binding and the regulation of C3b activity, with the result being inflammatory damage, whereas, Clark et al. offered the opinion that different HS structures (or "postcodes") in the glycomatrix of different tissues determine the levels of immobilized CFH. Probably, both explanations apply and collectively they explain the disease association of CFH polymorphisms (15).

The association of GAGs with inflammation extends beyond complement pathway regulation. Chemokine–HS interactions are known to establish chemokine gradients to direct leukocytes to inflammatory sites (16); but the contribution of the HS enzyme, heparanase (Hpse), to inflammatory disease is under appreciated. Heparanase assists leukocyte migration across basement membranes by acting as a "path-maker"; however, in type 1 diabetes Hpse activity actually drives the disease process (17). Simeonovic et al. describe how within pancreatic islets there are extraordinarily high levels of HS; this HS is essential for beta-cell survival. If active Hpse degrades HS in the islet basement membrane, inflammatory mononuclear cells can enter the islet; Hpse from these cells destroys intra-islet HS, triggering beta-cell death, and destructive insulitis. The ubiquitous non-sulfated GAG, hyaluronan (HA) is also involved in inflammation. Normally, it has a very high-average molecular weight, but at sites of inflammation and tissue injury HA polymers of overlapping length and function occur. As explained by Petrey and de la Motte, HA can promote and suppress inflammation, functions that depend upon polymer length and the activities of HA-binding proteins (18). The ability of hyaluronidases to degrade HA depends on the conformation of HA chains, which is influenced by the degree and hierarchy of protein–HA interactions, both of which depend on the HA-binding proteins in the microenvironment (18). The tissue microenvironment, its carbohydrates and their binding proteins, underpins the regulation of inflammation by HA and HS in a range of diseases including type 1 diabetes (18, 19).

The contribution of HS to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) infection has come of age. Connell and Lortat-Jacob indicate how the elegant design of a potential drug developed through an appreciation of the molecular events involved in HIV-1 infection of CD4+ leukocytes (20). Although the surface exposed V3 loop of the virus protein, gp120, is involve in HS binding, prior CD4 binding was found to induce a HS binding site that is also involved in binding to HIV-1's co-receptors, CXCR4 or CCR5. The glycoconjugate drug candidate was designed to block HIV from

binding to cell surface HS, its co-receptor and CD4. It is composed of a small CD4 mimetic linked to a chemically synthesized HS dodecamer (20). This glycoconjugate had strong anti-viral activity against HIV-1 regardless of its co-receptor usage, which is a major advance.

These articles highlight the contribution of glycans to different aspects of the immune response, yet this is a "taster plate" of their total contribution. Contrary to the often held view, glycan structures frequently bind proteins with quite exquisite specificity; our lack of understanding of their binding modes and the nature of the protein conformations that are recognized cause the miss-interpretation. Reductionist thinking and analyses, although useful, in isolation are unlikely to reveal the truth. Repeatedly, it is the "context," whether the presentation of glycan motifs, or the molecules (proteins and carbohydrates) of the surrounding microenvironment, which determines the outcome of glycan–protein interactions. It is fitting that the concluding article in this series (20) describes the development of a glycan inspired potential therapeutic, because this is an area of drug discovery currently under exploited. Advances in technologies of glycan structure determination and syntheses, coupled with a more holistic approach to understanding glycan interactions with their binding partners will lead to more glycan inspired therapeutics to treat immunological diseases.

References

1. van Kooyk Y, Kalay H, Garcia-Vallejo JJ. Analytical tools for the study of cellular glycosylation in the immune system. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:451. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00451
2. Kailemia MJ, Ruhaak LR, Lebrilla CB, Amster IJ. Oligosaccharide analysis by mass spectrometry: a review of recent developments. *Anal Chem* (2014) **86**:196–212. doi:10.1021/ac403969n
3. Gagneux P, Varki A. Evolutionary considerations in relating oligosaccharide diversity to biological function. *Glycobiology* (1999) **9**:747–55. doi:10.1093/glycob/9.8.747
4. Varki A. Evolutionary forces shaping the Golgi glycosylation machinery: why cell surface glycans are universal to living cells. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) **3**:a005462. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a005462
5. Coombe DR, Ey PL, Jenkin CR. Self-non-self recognition in invertebrates. *Q Rev Biol* (1984) **59**:231–56. doi:10.1086/413901
6. Iwanaga S, Lee BL. Recent advances in the innate immunity of invertebrate animals. *J Biochem Mol Biol* (2005) **38**:128–50. doi:10.5483/BMBRep.2005.38.2.128
7. Crespo HJ, Lau JT, Videira PA. Dendritic cells: a spot on sialic acid. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:491. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00491
8. Bochner BS, Zimmermann N. Role of Siglecs and related glycan-binding proteins in immune responses and immunoregulation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2015) **135**:598–608. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2014.11.031
9. Mascanfroni ID, Cerliani JP, Dergan-Dylon S, Croci DO, Ilarregui JM, Rabinovich GA. Endogenous lectins shape the function of dendritic cells and tailor adaptive immunity: mechanisms and biomedical applications. *Int Immunopharmacol* (2011) **11**:833–41. doi:10.1016/j.intimp.2011.01.021
10. Vasta GR, Ahmed H, Nita-Lazar M, Banerjee A, Pasek M, Shridhar S, et al. Galectins as self/non-self recognition receptors in innate and adaptive immunity: an unresolved paradox. *Front Immunol* (2012) **3**:199. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00199
11. Baum LG, Garner OB, Schaefer K, Lee B. Microbe-host interactions are positively and negatively regulated by galectin-glycan interactions. *Front Immunol* (2014) **5**:284. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00284
12. Antonopoulos A, Demotte N, Stroobant V, Haslam SM, van der Bruggen P, Dell A. Loss of effector function of human cytolytic T lymphocytes is accompanied by major alterations in N- and O-glycosylation. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**:11240–51. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.320820
13. Simon Davis DA, Parish CR. Heparan sulfate: a ubiquitous glycosaminoglycan with multiple roles in immunity. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:470. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00470
14. Perkins SJ, Fung KW, Khan S. Molecular interactions between complement factor H and its heparin and heparan sulfate ligands. *Front Immunol* (2014) **5**:126. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00126
15. Clark SJ, Bishop PN, Day AJ. The proteoglycan glycomatrix: a sugar microenvironment essential for complement regulation. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:412. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00412
16. Tanino Y, Coombe DR, Gill SE, Kett WC, Kajikawa O, Proudfoot AE, et al. Kinetics of chemokine-glycosaminoglycan interactions control neutrophil migration into the airspaces of the lungs. *J Immunol* (2010) **184**:2677–85. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0903274
17. Simeonovic CJ, Ziolkowski AF, Wu Z, Choong FJ, Freeman C, Parish CR. Heparanase and autoimmune diabetes. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:471. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00471
18. Petrey AC, de la Motte CA. Hyaluronan, a crucial regulator of inflammation. *Front Immunol* (2014) **5**:101. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00101
19. Bogdani M, Korpos E, Simeonovic CJ, Parish CR, Sorokin L, Wight TN. Extracellular matrix components in the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. *Curr Diab Rep* (2014) **14**:552. doi:10.1007/s11892-014-0552-7
20. Connell BJ, Lortat-Jacob H. Human immunodeficiency virus and heparan sulfate: from attachment to entry inhibition. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:385. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00385

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

MINI REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 11 December 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00451

Analytical tools for the study of cellular glycosylation in the immune system

Yvette van Kooyk, Hakan Kalay and Juan J. Garcia-Vallejo*

Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, Netherlands

Edited by:
Deirdre Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Manuela Mengozzi, Brighton and Sussex Medical School, UK
Daniel Kolarich, Max Planck Institute of Colloids and Interfaces, Germany

****Correspondence:***
Juan J. Garcia-Vallejo, Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology, VU University Medical Center, P.O. Box 7057, 1007MB Amsterdam, Netherlands
e-mail: jj.garciavallejo@vumc.nl

It is becoming increasingly clear that glycosylation plays important role in intercellular communication within the immune system. Glycosylation-dependent interactions are crucial for the innate and adaptive immune system and regulate immune cell trafficking, synapse formation, activation, and survival. These functions take place by the *cis* or *trans* interaction of lectins with glycans. Classical immunological and biochemical methods have been used for the study of lectin function; however, the investigation of their counterparts, glycans, requires very specialized methodologies that have been extensively developed in the past decade within the Glycobiology scientific community. This mini-review intends to summarize the available technology for the study of glycan biosynthesis, its regulation and characterization for their application to the study of glycans in immunology.

Keywords: glycan analysis, glycosyltransferases, glycans, lectins, immune cells

INTRODUCTION

Glycosylation is the most common post-translational modification of proteins. It is often estimated that more than 50% of all mammalian cellular and membrane-bound proteins are glycosylated, implicating an essential role in protein and cell function for carbohydrates. Indeed, carbohydrates play multiple roles in glycoprotein function: they participate in folding and maturation, contribute to the structural properties of glycoproteins, provide charge and hydrophilicity, and mediate interactions. In particular, carbohydrate-mediated interactions are specially crucial for the immune system (1). Glycans have been involved in the generation and loading of antigenic peptides into MHC-I (2), immune cell trafficking (3), T cell receptor signaling and apoptosis (4), B-cell receptor signaling (5), antibody function (6), immune cell differentiation (7), pathogen recognition (8), and immune homeostasis (9). Therefore, determining glycan structure, their biosynthetic regulation, their aglycon, and their binding partners is a fundamental step toward understanding the role of glycosylation in the immune system.

Glycans are often defined as assemblies of carbohydrates that include monosaccharides, oligosaccharides, polysaccharides, and their conjugates (glycoproteins, glycolipids, and proteoglycans). The structural diversity of glycans depends on several factors, namely differences in monosaccharide composition, anomeric state, glycosidic linkage, branching, the presence of non-carbohydrate substituted components (phosphorylation, sulfation, acetylation, etc.) and linkage to their aglycones (peptide, lipid, etc.) (10). Each of these structural factors is ultimately determined during glycan biosynthesis by the relative composition of the glycosylation machinery. The term "*glycosylation machinery*" refers to the set of, mainly enzymes, but also co-factors, transporters, and activated sugar donors that are necessary for the natural biosynthesis of glycans. It has been estimated that approximately 1% of the genome is dedicated to glycosyltransferases (11) and, if all genes involved in the glycosylation machinery are considered, this figure would probably rise to approximately 3–4%, thus a significant proportion. The glycosylation machinery is not localized to a single specific organelle within the cell and should be envisioned as a virtual engine (**Figure 1**) which involves mainly the Golgi apparatus, but also several other organelles and intracellular compartments, such as the nucleus (sialic acid biosynthesis), the endoplasmic reticulum (initial steps of *N*-glycosylation), lysosomes (monosaccharide recycling), or the cytoplasm (sugar donor and *N*-glycan precursor biosynthesis). With such a widespread localization and the involvement of so many factors it is no surprise that several levels of regulation have been described that affect the glycosylation process. Central to the glycosylation process, many glycosyltransferases have been shown to be regulated through transcriptional (12), post-transcriptional (13, 14), and post-translational (15) mechanisms. In addition, the activity of some glycosyltransferases may also be regulated through the interaction with chaperons (16, 17), competition for substrate with other glycosyltransferases (18), the availability of sugar donors (19), the pH at the Golgi (20), cleavage of their transmembrane domain (21), or even relocation to different organelles (22). Also, the regulation of the expression of glycoproteins as well as their modification by glycosidases (23) once on the cell membrane or the extracellular space contribute to the regulation of glycosylation. These mechanisms may operate in response to physiological (24–26) or pathological (27–29) cues and often have a biological correlate that is dependent on changes in the interaction with glycan-binding proteins (30). Thus, glycosylation is a highly regulated process that is extremely sensitive to both intracellular and extracellular stimuli. Moreover, due to the nature of the glycosylation process, the resulting glycoproteins exist as a mix of the same peptide backbone with a variety of different glycans. The diversity of these glycans depends

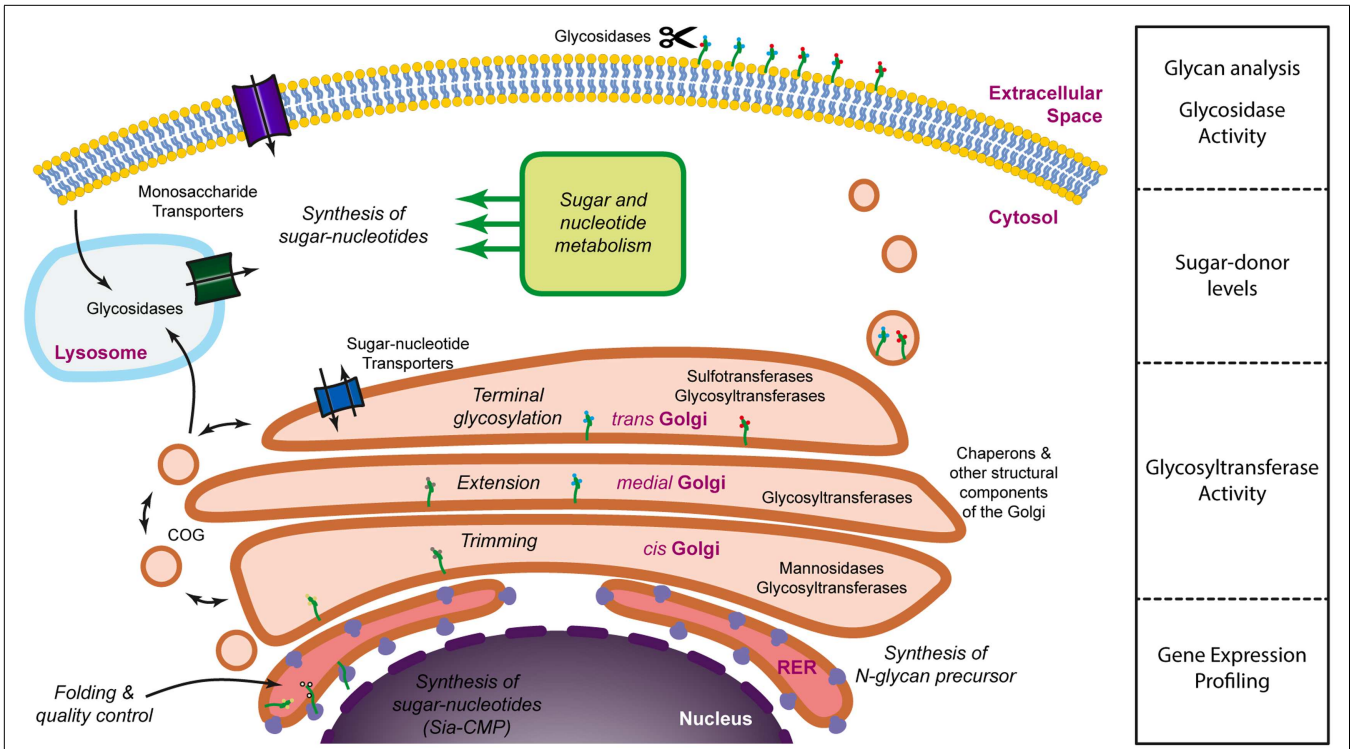


FIGURE 1 | Dissecting the glycosylation machinery. Glycosylation is a complex process that involves a large number of molecules and organelles. The glycosylation machinery can be defined as the set of enzymes, chaperones, transporters, sugar donors, and accessory molecules necessary for the modification of proteins or lipids with carbohydrates. Since many of these molecules are subjected to regulation, glycosylation is a highly dynamic process and it is, therefore, interesting to address not only the array of glycans present on the cell surface or the secretome, but also the activity and the expression levels of the molecules involved in glycan biosynthesis.

on the relative composition of the glycosyltransferases expressed and the interplay of all the regulatory stimuli that operate at a particular moment. This can affect both the number of glycans attached per glycoprotein, a type of variation that is referred to as macroheterogeneity, as well as the nature of these glycan chains (known as microheterogeneity). Thus, glycoproteins usually exist as complex mixtures of glycosylated variants or glycoforms. As an example, the human erythrocyte molecule CD59 consists of more than 120 different glycoforms, despite having a single *N*-linked glycosylation site and a couple of potential *O*-linked glycosylation sites (31).

Unfortunately, we still lack a systems biology approach to allow the modeling of the glycosylation machinery. Such a model would be extremely useful to predict how changes in the relative expression of different components of the glycosylation machinery would lead to alterations in the glycan profile of cells or secreted proteins. Accumulating evidence demonstrates, nevertheless, that there is a good correlation between changes in the transcript levels of glycosyltransferases and differences in the glycosylation pattern, suggesting that the modeling of the glycosylation machinery could be a possibility in the future. Until then, a comprehensive analysis of cellular glycosylation should incorporate different types of methodologies that provide information on the expression of the different components of the glycosylation machinery, their activity, as well as the characterization of the secreted or membrane-bound glycome (**Figure 1**).

Considering the different regulatory checkpoints of the glycosylation machinery, the most logical and accessible assays to address the glycosylation of cells would be the gene/protein expression profile of key components of the glycosylation machinery, their activity, and the glycosylation profile. We will now discuss the different methodological approaches to each of these types of assays, especially in the context of the study of the glycosylation of immune cells.

GENE-EXPRESSION ANALYSIS

The majority of the human and mouse glycosyltransferases known to date were cloned and characterized between the late 80s and the early decade of this century. The development of gene-expression technologies such as microarray technology and real-time PCR coincided with the completion of the list of existing glycosyltransferases and it is, therefore, no surprise that efforts were made to specifically develop gene-expression microarray-based methods to adequately address the glycosylation-related transcriptome. One of the most extensively used microarrays has been the glycogene-chip developed by the Consortium for Functional Glycomics. The last version of this microarray contained probes for more than 1200 human and mouse glycosylation-related genes, including glycosyltransferases (256), glycan-binding

proteins (146), glycosidases (88), nucleotide-sugar synthesizing enzymes and transporters (77), and conserved oligomeric Golgi (COG) complex proteins. In addition, several immune-related molecules such as interleukins, chemokines, and growth factors with their respective receptors were included, making this microarray extremely interesting for the analysis of the transcriptome of different immune subpopulations. In order to enhance specificity, this microarray consisted of 25 probes per gene. Unfortunately, due to the conclusion of the 10-year Glue Grant from the National Institute of General Medical Sciences (NIGMS), production of this microarray has been discontinued, although the data remains publicly available at the website of the Consortium for Functional Glycomics (http://www.functionalglycomics.org/glycomics/publicdata/microarray.jsp). Alternatives to the use of this microarray are genome-wide microarrays (Illumina microarrays also provide quantification based on 20–30 probes per gene) and real-time PCR of selected genes. Some currently available microarray platforms, like Illumina, provide genome-wide microarrays with also a high number of probes per gene. Analysis of the expression of genes encoding for glycosylation-related enzymes on data generated using this type of microarrays should be able to provide information to predict what type of glycans are to be expected on the cell of interest or what kind of glycosylation changes may operate under the treatment of study. In addition, since the whole genome is covered, these microarrays may be helpful in addressing the molecular mechanisms responsible for the regulation of the glycosylation-related gene-expression changes. Still, the use of low-density screening methods, such as real-time PCR (32–34) can be quite informative depending on the research question. The advent of next-generation sequencing technologies (35) will surely provide additional possibilities for quantification of glycosylation-related gene expression, with the advantage to identify mutations/splice variants and epigenetic variation associated with the glycosylation-related genes, potentially leading to the identification of susceptibility markers and inherited disease traits, a concept that has previously been suggested for autoimmunity (36, 37).

GLYCOSYLTRANSFERASE AND GLYCOSIDASE ACTIVITY ASSAYS

As already mentioned, glycosyltransferases may be regulated at the expression level, but also, since they are enzymes, in their catalytic activity. Several factors may contribute to this, including pH, substrate availability, interaction with co-factors or chaperons, and post-translational modifications affecting activity. Thus, determining the activity of glycosyltransferases and glycosidases *in vitro* provides a new layer of information to the study of their regulation and also facilitates the identification of specific inhibitors. However, glycosyltransferase assays (38, 39) are complicated by the fact that all Leloir-type glycosyltransferases (sugar-nucleotide dependent glycosyltransferases) that transfer the same sugar use the same sugar-nucleotide donor, but can differ in their acceptor specificity, and in the regio- and stereochemistry of the transfer reaction. In addition, glycosyltransferases can be rather promiscuous in their acceptor specificity (40). In general, the activity of glycosyltransferases can be monitored by following either the depletion of the sugar donor and the substrate(s) or the formation of the reaction products, whereas glycosidase activity is detected by following the loss of substrate. In order to allow the monitoring many assays make use of radiochemically- or fluorescently-tagged donor or acceptor analogs. Then, chromatographic, radiochemical, spectrophotometric, or immunological techniques are used to separate and/or detect one or more of the reaction species. Although glycosyltransferase activity assays have helped enormously in the characterization of glycosyltransferases and the identification of glycosyltransferase inhibitors, their contribution to understanding the regulation of glycosylation is limited. This limitation depends on the fact that many of the glycosyltransferase assays are based in reagents that are not able to cross membranes and, therefore, cannot be used in living cells or organisms. Alternatively, metabolic labeling approaches have been developed that allow the tagging of newly synthesized glycoproteins with radiochemically labeled glycans. Most recently, the use of bioorthogonal chemical reporters has allowed metabolic glycan labeling even *in vivo* (41). Importantly, the reporter must be non-toxic and small enough to not interfere with the transport of the monosaccharide into the cell, its incorporation into a sugar donor and the glycosyltransferase reaction. This is the case of azido or alkynyl monosaccharide derivatives, which have been used for the labeling of most glycan subtypes, except for glycosaminoglycans and glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchors (41). Unfortunately, monitoring of specific glycosyltransferases is not possible using this technology, but it can still be very useful to address the effect of multiple biological stimuli on specific glycan subtypes (e.g., sialylation, fucosylation, *O*-glycans, etc).

GLYCAN ANALYSIS

The complete characterization of the glycans from cell membranes or purified glycoproteins is a process that involves dedicated Analytical Chemistry technology and requires the integration of different analytical approaches. However, it is not always necessary to perform a comprehensive glycan sequencing and, depending on the type of experimental set up and evidence required, fast and simple approaches such as lectin binding assays may be sufficient. The availability of a large set of plant lectins with defined specificity has allowed the development of simple assays for the high-throughput gross characterization of the glycosylation of cells or purified glycoproteins (42). Small scale screening using selected lectins can easily be set up as flow cytometry or ELISA assays. On the other hand, lectin microarrays are becoming increasingly popular, specially in the development of disease-related biomarkers in cancer (43, 44). Unfortunately, most lectins have basic preferences to a broad set of carbohydrate structures or epitopes and a certain level of cross-reactivity is often observed. Therefore, lectins are not very practical when a detailed glycan characterization is needed. In this case, glycans can be sequenced by several different but complementary approaches. The most extended methodology is based in the purification of glycans after chemical or enzymatic released from their aglycon. This is considerably easier for *N*-linked glycans, which can be enzymatically released from mammalian glycoproteins using an amidase (PNGase F) (45). Unfortunately, only one enzyme has been described so far to be able to cleave the core 1 *O*-glycan, endo-α-*N*-acetylgalactosaminidase (*O*-glycanase), but

not its extended variants or any of the seven remaining *O*-glycan core structures (46, 47). Alternatively, chemical methods such as hydrazinolysis (48), deglycosylation by anhydrous trifluoromethanesulphonic acid (49), or non-reductive alkaline β-elimination (50) can be used instead, although these reactions require careful optimization to prevent glycan degradation (51). Regardless of the method used, released glycans can then be purified and analyzed by chromatographic and/or mass spectrometric methods. Small glycans can directly be analyzed by means of high performance anion-exchange chromatography with pulsed amperometric detection in stand-alone mode (52) or online-coupled to mass spectrometry through a desalter unit (53). High-performance anion-exchange chromatography with pulsed amperometric detection can also be used for monosaccharide analysis of purified glycans (54), which can be useful as an aid for further characterization, but requires high concentrations of experimental sample. Most often, glycans purified after deglycosylation are derivatized at their reducing end with a fluorochrome (55) and then resolved by hydrophilic interaction chromatography with a fluorescence detector. Further characterization is achieved by sequential deglycosylation using exoglycosidases (56), which specifically cleave glycosidic bonds of individual monosaccharide units from the terminal residue. Exoglycosidase digestion results in a shift in the glucose-unit value allowing detailed structural assignments with linkage information (56). Robotic systems and ultra-performance liquid chromatography in combination with sub 2 μm stationary phase capillary columns is allowing the implementation of very promising high-throughput glycan analysis projects that will certainly have an important impact in biomarker discovery (57, 58). In addition, the incorporation of an online mass spectrometer after the fluorescence detector facilitates glycan characterization without the need of extensive exoglycosidase reactions (55, 59). Alternatively, glycans can also be analyzed by porous graphitized carbon LC-MS/MS (60–63).

Derivatization of glycans with 9-aminopyrene-1,3,6-trisulfonic acid (APTS) or 8-aminonaphthalene-1,3,6-trisulfonic acid (ANTS) provides glycans with electrophoretic mobility and fluorescence detection, allowing their separation by capillary electrophoresis coupled to a laser-induced fluorescence detector (64). The main advantages of this technology are its sensitivity (10^{-15} to 10^{-18} mol of oligosaccharide samples), short separation time (<20 min), and high-throughput potential and, when combined with mass spectrometry, this method provides simultaneous glycan characterization (65).

Glycans can also be directly analyzed by mass spectrometry, with the advantage of providing a link between mass and composition. In order to perform mass spectrometric analysis of glycans it is necessary to derivatize them, since the ionization efficiency of glycans (especially those carrying terminal sialic acids) is generally low. Typical derivatization methods include permethylation (66), methyl-esterification of sialic acids (67), or the above-described fluorescent tagging of the reducing end. Often, rapid profiling is achieved through matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry because it is fast, simple, and requires only a small amount of sample. Ion fragmentation through electrospray ionization mass spectrometry, collision-induced dissociation and MS/MS help in achieving structural characterization. More recently developed fragmenting technologies such as electron capture dissociation and electron transfer dissociation have created huge expectative for the implementation of top-down proteomics (68) and their application to glycomics and glycoproteomics. Approaches based on this technology would be ideal for the sequencing of *N*- and *O*-linked glycans together with their peptide assignment. Intact *N*- and *O*-glycopeptides from purified glycoproteins have already been successfully analyzed using this approach (61, 69–73), but methods for more complex samples such as cell lysates remain to be implemented. Importantly, the development of analysis software and glycan databases for the direct assignment of glycan structures to specific masses in different platforms is pushing the field forward by facilitating reporting and data mining (74–76).

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Although the glycome of several immune cell populations has already been profiled (25, 26, 77) and accumulating evidence highlights the importance glycosylation regulation in multiple aspects of immune biology (78–81) we still need a better understanding of how glycosylation is regulated in different immune cell subpopulations. A better integration of glycobiological methodology in the immunological community is a pre-requisite, for which we hope this primer will be a useful first step.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Dr. T. C. van der Pouw Kraan (VUmc) and Dr. V. Monserrat Perez (LUMC) for critical reading and suggestions during the preparation of the manuscript. Juan J. Garcia-Vallejo is supported by the Dutch Asthma Foundation (Grant 3.2.10.040).

REFERENCES

1. van Kooyk Y, Rabinovich GA. Protein-glycan interactions in the control of innate and adaptive immune responses. *Nat Immunol* (2008) **9**:593–601. doi:10.1038/ni.f.203
2. Peaper DR, Cresswell P. Regulation of MHC class I assembly and peptide binding. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* (2008) **24**:343–68. doi:10.1146/annurev.cellbio.24.110707.175347
3. Sperandio M, Gleissner CA, Ley K. Glycosylation in immune cell trafficking. *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:97–113. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00795.x
4. Rabinovich GA, Croci DO. Regulatory circuits mediated by lectin-glycan interactions in autoimmunity and cancer. *Immunity* (2012) **36**:322–35. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.03.004
5. Crocker PR, Paulson JC, Varki A. Siglecs and their roles in the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2007) **7**:255–66. doi:10.1038/nri2056
6. Arnold JN, Wormald MR, Sim RB, Rudd PM, Dwek RA. The impact of glycosylation on the biological function and structure of human immunoglobulins. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2007) **25**:21–50. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141702
7. Marth JD, Grewal PK. Mammalian glycosylation in immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) **8**:874–87. doi:10.1038/nri2417
8. Osorio F, Reis e Sousa C. Myeloid C-type lectin receptors in pathogen recognition and host defense. *Immunity* (2011) **34**:651–64. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.05.001
9. García-Vallejo JJ, van Kooyk Y. Endogenous ligands for C-type lectin receptors: the true regulators of immune homeostasis. *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:22–37. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00786.x
10. Werz DB, Ranzinger R, Herget S, Adibekian A, von der Lieth C-W, Seeberger PH. Exploring the structural diversity of mammalian carbohydrates ("glycospace") by statistical databank analysis. *ACS Chem Biol* (2007) **2**:685–91. doi:10.1021/cb700178s

11. Coutinho PM, Deleury E, Davies GJ, Henrissat B. An evolving hierarchical family classification for glycosyltransferases. *J Mol Biol* (2003) **328**:307–17. doi:10.1016/S0022-2836(03)00307-3
12. Rajput B, Shaper NL, Shaper JH. Transcriptional regulation of murine beta1,4-galactosyltransferase in somatic cells. Analysis of a gene that serves both a housekeeping and a mammary gland-specific function. *J Biol Chem* (1996) **271**:5131–42. doi:10.1074/jbc.271.9.5131
13. Gringhuis SI, Garcia Vallejo J-J, van het Hof B, van Dijk W. Convergent actions of I kappa B kinase beta and protein kinase C delta modulate mRNA stability through phosphorylation of 14-3-3 beta complexed with tristetraprolin. *Mol Cell Biol* (2005) **25**:6454–63. doi:10.1128/MCB.25.15.6454-6463.2005
14. Garcia Vallejo J-J, van Dijk W, van Die I, Gringhuis SI. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha up-regulates the expression of beta1,4-galactosyltransferase I in primary human endothelial cells by mRNA stabilization. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**:12676–82. doi:10.1074/jbc.M410093200
15. Charron M, Shaper JH, Shaper NL. The increased level of beta1,4-galactosyltransferase required for lactose biosynthesis is achieved in part by translational control. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (1998) **95**:14805–10. doi:10.1073/pnas.95.25.14805
16. Ju T, Cummings RD. A unique molecular chaperone Cosmc required for activity of the mammalian core 1 beta 3-galactosyltransferase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2002) **99**:16613–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.262438199
17. Kanagawa M, Saito F, Kunz S, Yoshida-Moriguchi T, Barresi R, Kobayashi YM, et al. Molecular recognition by LARGE is essential for expression of functional dystroglycan. *Cell* (2004) **117**:953–64. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2004.06.003
18. Dalziel M, Whitehouse C, McFarlane I, Brockhausen I, Gschmeissner S, Schwientek T, et al. The relative activities of the C2GnT1 and ST3Gal-I glycosyltransferases determine O-glycan structure and expression of a tumor-associated epitope on MUC1. *J Biol Chem* (2001) **276**:11007–15. doi:10.1074/jbc.M006523200
19. Grigorian A, Lee S-U, Tian W, Chen I-J, Gao G, Mendelsohn R, et al. Control of T Cell-mediated autoimmunity by metabolite flux to N-glycan biosynthesis. *J Biol Chem* (2007) **282**:20027–35. doi:10.1074/jbc.M701890200
20. Maeda Y, Ide T, Koike M, Uchiyama Y, Kinoshita T. GPHR is a novel anion channel critical for acidification and functions of the Golgi apparatus. *Nat Cell Biol* (2008) **10**:1135–45. doi:10.1038/ncb1773
21. Kitazume S, Oka R, Ogawa K, Futakawa S, Hagiwara Y, Takikawa H, et al. Molecular insights into beta-galactoside alpha2,6-sialyltransferase secretion in vivo. *Glycobiology* (2009) **19**:479–87. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwp003
22. Gill DJ, Chia J, Senewiratne J, Bard F. Regulation of O-glycosylation through Golgi-to-ER relocation of initiation enzymes. *J Cell Biol* (2010) **189**:843–58. doi:10.1083/jcb.201003055
23. Tringali C, Lupo B, Silvestri I, Papini N, Anastasia L, Tettamanti G, et al. The plasma membrane sialidase NEU3 regulates the malignancy of renal carcinoma cells by controlling β1 integrin internalization and recycling. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**:42835–45. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.407718
24. García-Vallejo JJ, van Dijk W, van het Hof B, van Die I, Engelse MA, van Hinsbergh VWM, et al. Activation of human endothelial cells by tumor necrosis factor-alpha results in profound changes in the expression of glycosylation-related genes. *J Cell Physiol* (2006) **206**:203–10. doi:10.1002/jcp.20458
25. Bax M, García-Vallejo JJ, Jang-Lee J, North SJ, Gilmartin TJ, Hernández G, et al. Dendritic cell maturation results in pronounced changes in glycan expression affecting recognition by siglecs and galectins. *J Immunol* (2007) **179**:8216–24.
26. Comelli EM, Sutton-Smith M, Yan Q, Amado M, Panico M, Gilmartin T, et al. Activation of murine CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes leads to dramatic remodeling of N-linked glycans. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**:2431–40.
27. Koike T. Hypoxia induces adhesion molecules on cancer cells: a missing link between Warburg effect and induction of selectin-ligand carbohydrates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2004) **101**:8132–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.0402088101
28. Brockhausen I. Pathways of O-glycan biosynthesis in cancer cells. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (1999) **1473**:67–95. doi:10.1016/S0304-4165(99)00170-1
29. Hakomori S. Glycosylation defining cancer malignancy: new wine in an old bottle. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2002) **99**:10231–3. doi:10.1073/pnas.172380699
30. Cummings RD. The repertoire of glycan determinants in the human glycome. *Mol Biosyst* (2009) **5**:1087–104. doi:10.1039/b907931a
31. Rudd PM, Morgan BP, Wormald MR, Harvey DJ, van den Berg CW, Davis SJ, et al. The glycosylation of the complement regulatory protein, human erythrocyte CD59. *J Biol Chem* (1997) **272**:7229–44. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.11.7229
32. García-Vallejo JJ, Gringhuis SI, van Dijk W, van Die I. Gene expression analysis of glycosylation-related genes by real-time polymerase chain reaction. *Methods Mol Biol* (2006) **347**:187–209.
33. Yamamoto M, Yamamoto F, Luong TT, Williams T, Kominato Y, Yamamoto F. Expression profiling of 68 glycosyltransferase genes in 27 different human tissues by the systematic multiplex reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction method revealed clustering of sexually related tissues in hierarchical clustering algorithm analysis. *Electrophoresis* (2003) **24**:2295–307. doi:10.1002/elps.200305459
34. Nairn AV, York WS, Harris K, Hall EM, Pierce JM, Moremen KW. Regulation of glycan structures in animal tissues: transcript profiling of glycan-related genes. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**:17298–313. doi:10.1074/jbc.M801964200
35. Soon WW, Hariharan M, Snyder MP. High-throughput sequencing for biology and medicine. *Mol Syst Biol* (2013) **9**:640. doi:10.1038/msb.2012.61
36. t Hart BA, van Kooyk Y. Yin-Yang regulation of autoimmunity by DCs. *Trends Immunol* (2004) **25**:353–9. doi:10.1016/j.it.2004.04.006
37. Paulson JC. Innate immune response triggers lupus-like autoimmune disease. *Cell* (2007) **130**:589–91. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.08.009
38. Wagner GK, Pesnot T. Glycosyltransferases and their assays. *Chembiochem* (2010) **11**:1939–49. doi:10.1002/cbic.201000201
39. Palcic MM, Sujino K. Assays for glycosyltransferases. *Trends Glycosci Glycotech* (2001) **13**:361–70. doi:10.4052/tigg.13.361
40. Lairson LL, Henrissat B, Davies GJ, Withers SG. Glycosyltransferases: structures, functions, and mechanisms. *Annu Rev Biochem* (2008) **77**:521–55. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.76.061005.092322
41. Laughlin ST, Bertozzi CR. Imaging the glycome. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2009) **106**:12–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.0811481106
42. Sharon N. Lectins: past, present and future. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2008) **36**:1457–60. doi:10.1042/BST0361457
43. Ribeiro JP, Mahal LK. Dot by dot: analyzing the glycome using lectin microarrays. *Curr Opin Chem Biol* (2013) **17**:827–31. doi:10.1016/j.cbpa.2013.06.009
44. Hirabayashi J, Yamada M, Kuno A, Tateno H. Lectin microarrays: concept, principle and applications. *Chem Soc Rev* (2013) **42**:4443–58. doi:10.1039/c3cs35419a
45. Maley F, Trimble RB, Tarentino AL, Plummer TH. Characterization of glycoproteins and their associated oligosaccharides through the use of endoglycosidases. *Anal Biochem* (1989) **180**:195–204. doi:10.1016/0003-2697(89)90115-2
46. Umemoto J, Bhavanandan VP, Davidson EA. Purification and properties of an endo-alpha-N-acetyl-D-galactosaminidase from *Diplococcus pneumoniae. J Biol Chem* (1977) **252**:8609–14.
47. Bhavanandan VP, Umemoto J, Davidson EA. Characterization of an endo-alpha-N-acetyl galactosaminidase from *Diplococcus pneumoniae. Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (1976) **70**:738–45. doi:10.1016/0006-291X(76)90654-9
48. Patel TP, Parekh RB. Release of oligosaccharides from glycoproteins by hydrazinolysis. *Methods Enzymol* (1994) **230**:57–66.
49. Edge ASB. Deglycosylation of glycoproteins with trifluoromethanesulphonic acid: elucidation of molecular structure and function. *Biochem J* (2003) **376**:339–50. doi:10.1042/BJ20030673
50. Hanisch F-G, Teitz S, Schwientek T, Müller S. Chemical de-O-glycosylation of glycoproteins for application in LC-based proteomics. *Proteomics* (2009) **9**:710–9. doi:10.1002/pmic.200800492
51. Wada Y, Dell A, Haslam SM, Tissot B, Canis K, Azadi P, et al. Comparison of methods for profiling O-glycosylation: Human Proteome Organisation Human Disease Glycomics/proteome initiative multi-institutional study of IgA1. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2010) **9**:719–27. doi:10.1074/mcp.M900450-MCP200
52. Thurl S, Muller-Werner B, Sawatzki G. Quantification of individual oligosaccharide compounds from human milk using high-pH anion-exchange chromatography. *Anal Biochem* (1996) **235**:202–6. doi:10.1006/abio.1996.0113
53. Bruggink C, Wuhrer M, Koeleman CAM, Barreto V, Liu Y, Pohl C, et al. Oligosaccharide analysis by capillary-scale high-pH anion-exchange chromatography with on-line ion-trap mass spectrometry. *J Chromatogr B Analyt Technol Biomed Life Sci* (2005) **829**:136–43. doi:10.1016/j.jchromb.2005.10.006
54. Rohrer JS, Basumallick L, Hurum D. High-performance anion-exchange chromatography with pulsed amperometric detection for carbohydrate analysis of glycoproteins. *Biochemistry (Mosc)* (2013) **78**:697–709. doi:10.1134/S000629791307002X
55. Kalay H, Ambrosini M, van Berkel PHC, Parren PWHI, van Kooyk Y, García-Vallejo JJ. Online nanoliquid chromatography-mass spectrometry and

nanofluorescence detection for high-resolution quantitative N-glycan analysis. *Anal Biochem* (2012) **423**:153–62. doi:10.1016/j.ab.2012.01.015
56. Royle L, Dwek RA, Rudd PM. Determining the structure of oligosaccharides N- and O-linked to glycoproteins. *Curr Protoc Protein Sci* (2006) **12**:12.6. doi:10.1002/0471140864.ps1206s43
57. Doherty M, Bones J, McLoughlin N, Telford JE, Harmon B, DeFelippis MR, et al. An automated robotic platform for rapid profiling oligosaccharide analysis of monoclonal antibodies directly from cell culture. *Anal Biochem* (2013) **442**:10–8. doi:10.1016/j.ab.2013.07.005
58. Lauc G, Huffman JE, Pucic M, Zgaga L, Adamczyk B, Mužinic A, et al. Loci associated with N-glycosylation of human immunoglobulin G show pleiotropy with autoimmune diseases and haematological cancers. *PLoS Genet* (2013) **9**:e1003225. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.1003225
59. Kalay H, Ambrosini M, Chiodo F, van Kooyk Y, García-Vallejo JJ. Enhanced glycan nanoprofiling by weak anion exchange preparative chromatography, mild acid desialylation, and nanoliquid chromatography-mass spectrometry with nanofluorescence detection. *Electrophoresis* (2013) **34**:2350–6. doi:10.1002/elps.201200657
60. Jensen PH, Karlsson NG, Kolarich D, Packer NH. Structural analysis of N- and O-glycans released from glycoproteins. *Nat Protoc* (2012) **7**:1299–310. doi:10.1038/nprot.2012.063
61. Deshpande N, Jensen PH, Packer NH, Kolarich D. GlycoSpectrumScan: fishing glycopeptides from MS spectra of protease digests of human colostrum sIgA. *J Proteome Res* (2010) **9**:1063–75. doi:10.1021/pr900956x
62. Pabst M, Altmann F. Glycan analysis by modern instrumental methods. *Proteomics* (2011) **11**:631–43. doi:10.1002/pmic.201000517
63. Kolarich D, Lepenies B, Seeberger PH. Glycomics, glycoproteomics and the immune system. *Curr Opin Chem Biol* (2012) **16**:214–20. doi:10.1016/j.cbpa.2011.12.006
64. Mittermayr S, Bones J, Guttman A. Unraveling the glyco-puzzle: glycan structure identification by capillary electrophoresis. *Anal Chem* (2013) **85**:4228–38. doi:10.1021/ac4006099
65. Bunz S-C, Rapp E, Neusüß C. Capillary electrophoresis/mass spectrometry of APTS-labeled glycans for the identification of unknown glycan species in capillary electrophoresis/laser induced fluorescence systems. *Anal Chem* (2013) **85**:10218–24. doi:10.1021/ac401930j
66. Kang P, Mechref Y, Novotny MV. High-throughput solid-phase permethylation of glycans prior to mass spectrometry. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* (2008) **22**:721–34. doi:10.1002/rcm.3395
67. Powell AK, Harvey DJ. Stabilization of sialic acids in N-linked oligosaccharides and gangliosides for analysis by positive ion matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization mass spectrometry. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* (1996) **10**:1027–32. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0231(19960715)10:9<1027::AID-RCM634>3.0.CO;2-Y
68. Tran JC, Zamdborg L, Ahlf DR, Lee JE, Catherman AD, Durbin KR, et al. Mapping intact protein isoforms in discovery mode using top-down proteomics. *Nature* (2011) **480**:254–8. doi:10.1038/nature10575
69. Stadlmann J, Pabst M, Kolarich D, Kunert R, Altmann F. Analysis of immunoglobulin glycosylation by LC-ESI-MS of glycopeptides and oligosaccharides. *Proteomics* (2008) **8**:2858–71. doi:10.1002/pmic.200700968
70. Bakovic MP, Selman MHJ, Hoffmann M, Rudan I, Campbell H, Deelder AM, et al. High-throughput IgG Fc N-glycosylation profiling by mass spectrometry of glycopeptides. *J Proteome Res* (2013) **12**:821–31. doi:10.1021/pr300887z
71. Selman MHJ, de Jong SE, Soonawala D, Kroon FP, Adegnika AA, Deelder AM, et al. Changes in antigen-specific IgG1 Fc N-glycosylation upon influenza and tetanus vaccination. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2012) **11**:M111.014563. doi:10.1074/mcp.M111.014563
72. Wang J, Balog CIA, Stavenhagen K, Koeleman CAM, Scherer HU, Selman MHJ, et al. Fc-glycosylation of IgG1 is modulated by B-cell stimuli. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2011) **10**:M110.004655. doi:10.1074/mcp.M110.004655
73. Hanisch F-G. Top-down sequencing of O-glycoproteins by in-source decay matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization mass spectrometry for glycosylation site analysis. *Anal Chem* (2011) **83**:4829–37. doi:10.1021/ac200493c
74. Kolarich D, Rapp E, Struwe WB, Haslam SM, Zaia J, McBride R, et al. The minimum information required for a glycomics experiment (MIRAGE) project: improving the standards for reporting mass-spectrometry-based glycoanalytic data. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2013) **12**:991–5. doi:10.1074/mcp.O112.026492
75. Kameyama A, Kikuchi N, Nakaya S, Ito H, Sato T, Shikanai T, et al. A strategy for identification of oligosaccharide structures using observational multistage mass spectral library. *Anal Chem* (2005) **77**:4719–25. doi:10.1021/ac048350h
76. von der Lieth C-W, Freire AA, Blank D, Campbell MP, Ceroni A, Damerell DR, et al. EUROCarbDB: an open-access platform for glycoinformatics. *Glycobiology* (2011) **21**:493–502. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwq188
77. North SJ, von Gunten S, Antonopoulos A, Trollope A, MacGlashan DW, Jang-Lee J, et al. Glycomic analysis of human mast cells, eosinophils and basophils. *Glycobiology* (2012) **22**:12–22. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwr089
78. Priatel JJ, Chui D, Hiraoka N, Simmons CJ, Richardson KB, Page DM, et al. The ST3Gal-I sialyltransferase controls CD8+ T lymphocyte homeostasis by modulating O-glycan biosynthesis. *Immunity* (2000) **12**:273–83. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80180-6
79. van Vliet SJ, Gringhuis SI, Geijtenbeek TBH, van Kooyk Y. Regulation of effector T cells by antigen-presenting cells via interaction of the C-type lectin MGL with CD45. *Nat Immunol* (2006) **7**:1200–8. doi:10.1038/ni1390
80. Toscano MA, Bianco GA, Ilarregui JM, Croci DO, Correale J, Hernandez JD, et al. Differential glycosylation of TH1, TH2 and TH-17 effector cells selectively regulates susceptibility to cell death. *Nat Immunol* (2007) **8**:825–34. doi:10.1038/ni1482
81. Ilarregui JM, Croci DO, Bianco GA, Toscano MA, Salatino M, Vermeulen ME, et al. Tolerogenic signals delivered by dendritic cells to T cells through a galectin-1-driven immunoregulatory circuit involving interleukin 27 and interleukin 10. *Nat Immunol* (2009) **10**:981–91. doi:10.1038/ni.1772

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 11 October 2013; accepted: 28 November 2013; published online: 11 December 2013.
*Citation: van Kooyk Y, Kalay H and Garcia-Vallejo JJ (2013) Analytical tools for the study of cellular glycosylation in the immune system. Front. Immunol. **4**:451. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00451*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 27 December 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00491

Dendritic cells: a spot on sialic acid

Hélio J. Crespo[1,2]*, Joseph T. Y. Lau[2] and Paula A. Videira[1]*

[1] *CEDOC – UC Imunologia, Faculdade de Ciências Médicas, Universidade Nova de Lisboa, Lisbon, Portugal*
[2] *Department of Molecular and Cellular Biology, Roswell Park Cancer Institute, Buffalo, NY, USA*

Edited by:
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Masato Kubo, Tokyo University of Science, Japan
Jason Waithman, Telethon Institute for Child Health Research, Australia

***Correspondence:**
Hélio J. Crespo and Paula A. Videira, Department de Ciências Médicas, CEDOC – UC Imunologia, Universidade nova de Lisboa, Campo dos Mártires da Pátria 130, Lisboa 1169-056, Portugal
e-mail: helio.crespo@fcm.unl.pt; paula.videira@fcm.unl.pt

Glycans decorating cell surface and secreted proteins and lipids occupy the juncture where critical host–host and host-pathogen interactions occur. The role of glycan epitopes in cell–cell and cell-pathogen adhesive events is already well-established, and cell surface glycan structures change rapidly in response to stimulus and inflammatory cues. Despite the wide acceptance that glycans are centrally implicated in immunity, exactly how glycans and their changes contribute to the overall immune response remains poorly defined. Sialic acids are unique sugars that usually occupy the terminal position of the glycan chains and may be modified by external factors, such as pathogens, or upon specific physiological cellular events. At cell surface, sialic acid-modified structures form the key fundamental determinants for a number of receptors with known involvement in cellular adhesiveness and cell trafficking, such as the Selectins and the Siglec families of carbohydrate recognizing receptors. Dendritic cells (DCs) preside over the transition from innate to the adaptive immune repertoires, and no other cell has such relevant role in antigen screening, uptake, and its presentation to lymphocytes, ultimately triggering the adaptive immune response. Interestingly, sialic acid-modified structures are involved in all DC functions, such as antigen uptake, DC migration, and capacity to prime T cell responses. Sialic acid content changes along DC differentiation and activation and, while, not yet fully understood, these changes have important implications in DC functions. This review focuses on the developmental regulation of DC surface sialic acids and how manipulation of DC surface sialic acids can affect immune-critical DC functions by altering antigen endocytosis, pathogen and tumor cell recognition, cell recruitment, and capacity for T cell priming. The existing evidence points to a potential of DC surface sialylation as a therapeutic target to improve and diversify DC-based therapies.

Keywords: dendritic cell, sialic acid, sialylation, lectins, host-pathogen interaction

INTRODUCTION

Immunological studies, nowadays, imply researchers have at least basic knowledge of glycobiology since, at some point of their study, researchers are faced with glycosylation-related features. Glycosylation is a post-translational modification of basically all the secreted and cell surface proteins, as well as of lipids. Thus, all contacts between cell surface and/or serum molecules are continuously accompanied by glycosylation. The immune response lays on innumerous contacts between cells and molecules, a good example being the case of immunological synapses, a junction that forms between T cells and specialized cells and the antigen-antibody interactions. All the immune encounters have, with great probability, glycans occupying, and influencing the juncture. Thus, all self-asserted immunologist should consider to be (at least partially) glycobiologists.

Among the several cell types that constitute the immune system, dendritic cells (DCs) are key players. DCs survey the microenvironment where they are positioned in order to help correctly classify collected antigen information, in a "self" or "'foreign" category, and to respond accordingly. They carry antigen information from the infection site to the secondary lymphatic organs, presenting them to T cells, strongly potentiating a specific immune response against pathogens (**Figure 1**). The immune response is thus tremendously dependent on DCs and impairment of DC functions, as studied using animal models deficient for DC function-related molecules, or absence of DC populations, have been associated with infection or, oppositely, to a wide range of autoimmune diseases (1). DCs also play an important role in anti-tumoral immunity, whereupon specific cytotoxic T cells may be primed by DCs to respond against tumor cells. Investigating the underlying mechanisms of DC-pathogen or DC-host and -tumor cell interactions may help us to better comprehend the immune response in physiological and pathological events and to identify new targets for therapeutic intervention.

Dendritic cells show specific glycan patterns at cell surface, which are modulated during cell differentiation and respond to stimuli such as inflammatory cytokines and pathogens (2–4). Sialic acid is a sugar that frequently terminates glycan structures. Due to its terminal position and properties, sialic acid can mediate many immune processes such as host-pathogen recognition, migration, and antigen presentation, among other non-immune related processes. The addition of this sugar is mediated by a number of enzymes, the sialyltransferases, mainly located in the Golgi apparatus. Sialyltransferase expression is

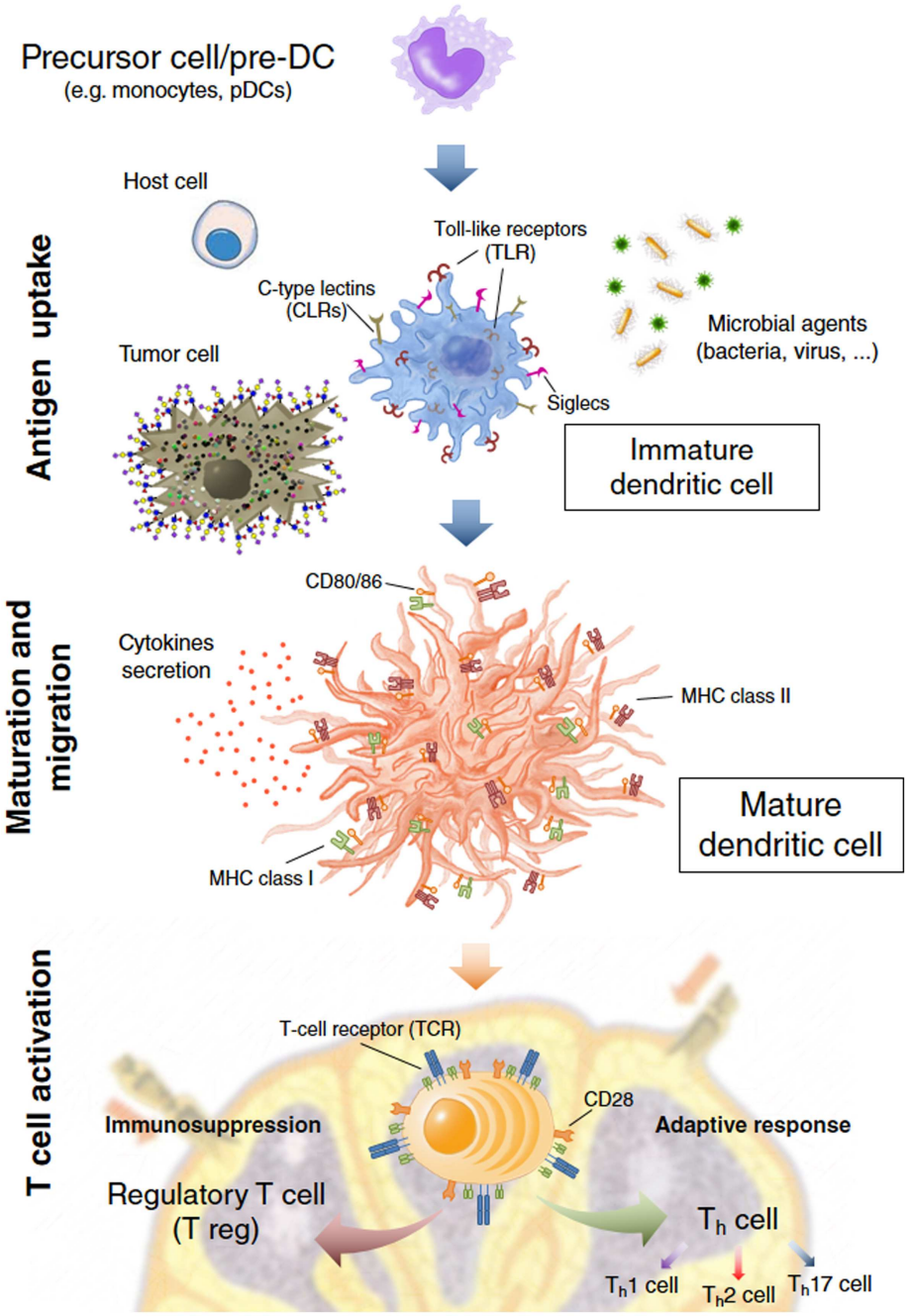


FIGURE 1 | Dendritic cell (DC) immune functions. DCs act on three main events: the *antigen capture* after interaction with host cells, microbial agents, and tumor cells by recognizing Pathogen-Associated Molecular Patterns (PAMPs) and self molecules through Pathogen Recognition Receptors (PRRs) and other cell surface receptors like Siglecs or C-type Lectins (CLRs); *maturation and migration* toward the secondary lymphoid organs; *T cell activation* where DCs present the processed antigens to T cells eliciting a specific and enduring response or tolerance from T cells.

finely regulated during DC differentiation and maturation, concurring with the expression of sialylated structures (3, 4). In diverse immune events, the sialylated glycans will be recognized by lectins, i.e., carbohydrate-binding proteins that are expressed in other cells or by DCs. While promoting cell recognition by some lectins, the presence of specific sialic acids can actually switch off recognition by other lectins specific for asialylated glycans. Thus, glycan recognition by DC lectins may impact the DC immunobiological functions. Thus, a deeper understanding of sialic acid's influence in the DC immunobiology potentially leads to a better understanding of the immune mechanisms mediated by DCs.

This review will focus on DC's glycoimmune processes, with special attention to the sialic acid-mediated ones and how they modulate the different DC functions. It includes an introduction of DCs' function and glycan recognition receptors, following a description of processes known to be mediated by sialic acid such as endocytosis, migration, priming of adaptive immune response, and pathogen/tumoral recognition.

DENDRITIC CELLS

Dendritic cells are part of the innate response and are essential to boost and/or regulate the adaptive immune response. They capture antigens in an earlier phase, process them "on the go" while migrating toward secondary lymphoid organs, such as lymph nodes, where they present, via major histocompatibility complex (MHC), the processed antigens to T cells and thus enacting an adaptive immune response. DCs can also present antigens to B cells, although by non-classical (non-MHC) mechanisms (5–7). Phenotypically, DCs are a heterogeneous population with different cell subsets, populating various organs. They can be broadly classified according the inflammatory status and differentiation state. Accordingly, conventional DCs are seen in a steady-state, that is, in the absence of infection and inflammation, and they can functionally be divided in two major types: migratory and non-migratory (lymphoid-tissue-resident) DCs [reviewed by Shortman and Naik (8)]. A good example of the former are dermal DCs and Langerhans cells that mainly reside in skin tissues and after antigen contact, they mature and migrate to the draining lymph nodes – hence the "migratory" classification. Conventional, non-migratory DCs (like spleen DCs) reside in secondary lymphoid organs, where they constantly screen blood or lymph for pathogens. The variety of DCs inside both these groups is significant and adapted toward the tissue where they reside in the immature state. Regarding DC differentiation, both canonical myeloid and lymphoid hematopoietic progenitors contribute to the steady-state DC pool and, actually, DCs use unique and flexible developmental programs that cannot be categorized into the conventional myeloid or lymphoid pathway. The expression of the Fms-like tyrosine kinase 3 (Flt-3) molecules is characteristic of DC precursors, regardless of the myeloid or lymphoid lineage and DCs development is driven by Flt3-ligand (Flt3L) (8–14). Much interestingly, it was recently reported that conventional DCs are marked by the exclusive expression of the DNGR-1 (15).

Opposed to the conventional DCs, some populations are inflammatory or infection-derived DCs. These populations include the plasmacytoid DC (pDC) population, a first line of defense against microbial invasion. Functionally specialized in the detection of viral infections, pDCs, develop a fully differentiated DC phenotype after infection and secretion of type 1 interferon (16, 17). Other inflammatory DCs include the monocyte-derived DCs (moDCs), comprising the TNF-α, inducible nitrous oxide synthase-producing DCs (Tip-DCs), a pathogenic subpopulation generated in an infection context (non-steady-state) [reviewed in Ref. (18)].

Dendritic cells constitutively uptake antigens in its surroundings as a surveillance measure (typical of the steady-state), fundamental to rapidly trigger the adaptive response against pathogens (inflammation) (19). DCs are, thus, naturally equipped with distinct means to uptake antigens, including: (1) receptor-mediated endocytosis, on which particles are endocytosed after cell surface receptor recognition; (2) macropinocytosis, or the non-selective endocytosis of solutes, a process constitutive in DCs and the major source of antigens for DC presentation (20); and (3) phagocytosis, the uptake of large molecules or cells, including virus, bacteria, protein clusters, apoptotic, and necrotic cells, which also involves specific membrane receptors. The uptake of foreign antigens usually trigger activation signals that will lead DCs to a mature phenotype, on which all the potential for antigen presentation and stimulation of the adaptive response immune cells is maximized.

Endocytosis is also fundamental in the maintenance of the self-tolerance mechanisms since, at steady-state, self-antigens are normally endocytosed and posteriorly presented by DCs. Endocytosis of self-antigens does not usually induces significant maturation changes (21), thus contributing to turn DCs tolerogenic and promoting regulatory but not effector T cells. Nevertheless, it has been suggested that the presence of very small, time-persistent concentrations of foreign and more common antigens are responsible for the induction of tolerance to those same antigens. These tolerance-inducing antigens are expressed by microorganisms present during the development of the immune system, such as commensal bacteria, flora members, and helminthes. The knowledge about these mechanisms raised the hypothesis that common microorganisms are able to regulate the immune system, the "old friends" hypothesis (22–24). These time-persistent antigens, thus shape our immune system to its present state, being presently not only tolerated but, in fact, needed in order to maintain the general tolerance balance. The "old friend" hypothesis complements the "hygiene" hypothesis stating, in brief, that the lack of immune challengers due to excessive hygiene is related to the growing number of autoimmune and hypersensitivity diseases that is observed in the developed countries, and not in the developing ones (24). Due to its key role in antigen uptake and presentation, DCs too may be involved in this mechanism of tolerance-induction toward these "old friends."

Dendritic cell maturation is the sum of all the phenotypical and functional changes occurring upon encounter with immune stimuli (i.e., antigens, cytokines, etc.) and it is crucial to enable DCs to effectively activate T cells. It is characterized by rapid downregulation of the antigen uptake process, acidification of lysosomal compartments, higher expression of MHC II molecules and of CD80 and CD86 co-stimulatory molecules, *de novo* or upregulated synthesis of DC-specific inflammatory cytokines (25). All these maturation and migration-changes are necessary hallmarks to enable DCs to perform antigen presentation and boosting T and B cell responses (26). It is also known that the molecular nature of uptaken antigens, as well as the cytokines to which DCs are exposed during the uptake process, are responsible for the modulation of the maturation process. This ultimately influences the differentiation of the DC-pulsed T cells into functionally distinct subtypes, namely, T helper type 1 or 2 (Th1 or Th2), T helper 17 (Th17), or regulatory (T_{reg}) cells, actively shaping a future active or tolerance response.

The migration (or homing) of conventional or inflammatory DCs loaded with antigens to T cell niches (normally, secondary

lymphatic organs) is a crucial step for the setting of effective immune responses. This process is characterized by chemokine-mediated cell recruitment to the lymphoid target site and, activation of the surrounding tissues (27–29). Tissue activation helps to increase the cell adhesion to the endothelium, by inducing the expression of several adhesion molecules, of which integrins and selectins and its ligands are the most relevant elements.

From all the above observations, it is, thus, clear and generally accepted that DC functions rely on a complex set of mechanisms that involve DC differentiation, ontogeny, maturation, and permanent contacts with other cells and pathogens.

PATHOGEN RECOGNITION BY DENDRITIC CELLS

Pathogen recognition by DCs depends on the identification of distinct microbial patterns, not present in mammalian cells, but shared by most of the pathogenic microbial, known as "pathogen-associated molecular patterns" (PAMPs) (30, 31). They include bacterial and viral unmethylated CpG DNA, bacterial flagellin, peptides containing *N*-formylmethionine residues, lipoteichoic acids, and double-stranded and single-stranded viral RNA. A substantial part of PAMPs are glycan-containing ones, such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS), *N*-acetylglucosamine, peptidoglycan, and terminal fructose- and mannose-containing glycans, and glucan-containing cell walls from fungi.

Pathogen-associated molecular patterns are recognized by specific receptors named "pattern recognition receptors" (PRRs), with functions aggregating endocytosis and intracellular signaling. Examples of PRRs expressed by DCs include Scavenger receptors, Nod-like receptors, and C-type lectins (CLRs). However, perhaps, the most widely studied are the Toll-like receptors (TLRs), a growing family of 12 evolutionary conserved PRRs consisting of type 1 integral membrane glycoprotein with relevant role in the microbial response. The outcome of TLR recognition is the induction of intracellular signaling and consequent expression of antigen presentation molecules (MHC II molecules), co-stimulatory molecules (CD80/86, CD40), inflammatory and/or antiviral cytokines (such as TNF-α, IL-12, IL-23, IFNα/β), chemokines (i.e., IL-8, RANTES) (32, 33), thus enacting a powerful response against pathogenic microbes.

C-type lectins are another very relevant family of PRRs expressed by DCs (34). Being lectins, their main function is to recognize glycan structures and, in immunological context, they recognize pathogen-associated glycans or glycosylated self-antigens. In DCs, some CLRs of note include the DC-Specific Intracellular adhesion molecule-3 Grabbing Non-integrin (DC-SIGN), CD207/Langerin, the Selectin family (discussed below), the Macrophage Galactose/*N*-acetylgalactosamine-specific Lectin (MGL-1), Mannose Receptor (MR), DEC205, the Blood DC antigens 2 (BDCA 2), the Dendritic Cell Immunoreceptor (DCIR), the Dendritic Cell Immunoactivating receptor (DCAR), and Dectin-1/2/3. In contrast to TLRs, all of these CLRs functionally bind glycan structures expressed by mammalian cells (except for Dectin-1/2/3 that apparently only recognizes fungal and/or mycobacterial glycans), a fact demonstrating its potential role in both host and pathogen recognition (35). CLRs can also recognize and internalize pathogens for presentation without inducing DCs' maturation. In fact, the CLR-mediated antigen uptake doesn't necessarily elicit a factual immune response, and may instead contribute to induce immunological tolerance (36). A downside of these phenomena is the potential immune escape of pathogens recognized via CLRs (35, 37–39).

Like CLRs, the Sialic acid-binding immunoglobulin-like lectins (Siglecs) can also recognize pathogens' glycoproteins and glycolipids thus also contributing to the host's innate immune responses. Siglecs specifically recognize sialic acid-containing glycans and as mentioned below they also play a relevant role in self recognition (40–43). The biological and immunological relevance of CLR and Siglec receptors will be discussed in detail in later sections.

Dendritic cells can also recognize and internalize microbes and its derivate particles by receptors that bind to opsonins in opsonized ("coated") microbes. Opsonization of microbes can occur in two forms: by coating with complement proteins or by binding of antibodies to antigens expressed on their surface. DC recognition of opsonized microbes is thus mainly mediated by complement receptors and Fc receptors and assures the capture of pathogens that might otherwise evade recognition by other DC receptors (44, 45).

Summarizing, DCs can interact in different ways with microbes, as well as with the host antigens, through panoply of receptors. This recognition initiate mechanisms that will induce or suppress a specific immune response. The DC recognition is thus considered to be of great relevance for the development of a suitable, specific immune outcome, dictating the balance tolerance/reactivity of the developing host-pathogen response.

DENDRITIC CELLS-BASED THERAPY

The current knowledge of DC immunobiology allowed several biotechnological and pharmaceutical companies to develop DC-based immunotherapies. Applications for DC-based therapy include a plethora of pathologies ranging from infectious and hypersensitivity diseases to malignancies. One strategy is the *ex vivo* upload of DCs with the antigen to turn them able to efficiently develop an efficient response against the antigen bearer (46–50). The best example of this strategy is the vaccination of cancer patients with DCs loaded with tumor antigens.

Other approaches include the use of specific antibodies targeting DC endocytic receptors that are used to force the upload of specific antigens toward that receptor. Antibodies are also used to block specific receptor-ligand interaction and consequent downstream signaling, counteracting for instance the negative immunomodulatory cues of the tumor microenvironment.

Dendritic cells have also been studied as targets of DNA vaccines encoding for antigens (51). Viral transduction not only targets antigens to DCs, but also induces intracellular pathways to modulate the immune response (52).

All these relatively recent drug-niche that exploits DC unique immune potential is proof of reconnaissance of DCs' cornerstone role in the immune system. Nevertheless, the DC-based therapies still face several hindrances to full application, mostly derived from the lack of full knowledge regarding pathogenesis/tolerance balance mechanisms, an area where glycosylation has been shown to have a relevant role.

GLYCOSYLATION AND SIALYLATION

Glycosylation is the most frequent modification of proteins and lipids. The majority of glycans exist as membrane-bound or soluble glycoconjugates. One consequence of this fact is that all cells present at their surface a glycocalyx, that is, the full surface-complex of glycans, glycoproteins, and glycosylated lipids. The three main classes of glycoconjugates are glycoproteins, proteoglycans, and glycolipids and their synthesis occurs mainly in (but not limited to) the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum and in the Golgi apparatus. In glycoproteins, the sugar chain is classified as *N*- or *O*-linked, depending if the glycosidic moiety is linked to an asparagine (Asn) residue in the protein moiety or to a serine/threonine (Ser/Thr) residue, respectively.

The cell glycocalyx is the result of many factors. The most relevant one is probably the expression of the set of enzymes responsible for the synthesis and/or transfer of glycosylated structures, i.e., the glycosyltransferases. Also critical is the expression of enzymes responsible for the removal of glycans or entire structures from glycosylated molecules, i.e., the glycosidases. These two sets of enzymes work in a finely controlled balance both during the glycoconjugate synthesis at the Golgi apparatus. Both enzyme types can also be present in plasma membrane or soluble forms, with potentially relevant biological roles as we shall see in sections below (53–56).

Sialic acids are a large family of negatively charged, nine-carbon monosaccharides that are normally found at glycan terminal positions. They include *N*-acetylneuraminic acid (Neu5Ac), *N*-glycolylneuraminic acid (Neu5Gc), and 9-*O*-acetyl-*N*-acetylneuraminic acid (9-*O*-Ac-NeuAc). Human cells can only synthesize Neu5Ac. However, Neu5Gc can also be found in some tumor cells (57). Interestingly, some pathogens may express Neu5Ac, but Neu5Gc has never been reported to be synthesized by any pathogenic bacteria (58). This review will focus mainly on Neu5Ac and, for the sake of simplification, and we will strictly refer to Neu5Ac when using the term "sialic acids."

Sialyltransferases are a family of twenty glycosyltransferases that catalyze the addition of sialic acids to terminal non-reducing position of the oligosaccharide, transferring the sialic acid from the activated sugar donor CMP-Neu5Ac to different sugar acceptors (**Table 1**). Sialyltransferases normally locate at the Golgi apparatus as integral membrane proteins adding sialic acids to glycoconjugates during their synthesis. However, some sialyltransferases are also expressed as soluble enzymes (59) and sialyltransferase activity at plasma membrane has been reported in immune cells (54). Each sialyltransferase presents high selectivity toward its acceptor substrate. *In vivo*, competition between other sialyltransferases and glycosyltransferases' common substrates is observed and, as a result, the cell's sialylation status is the dynamic sum of transferase activities, Golgi localization, and concentration of activated sugar donors. Sialyltransferases depending on their specificities, can establish α2,3-, α2,6-, α2,8-linkages and can be organized in four families depending on linkage specificity and acceptor substrate: the ST3Gal family, catalyzing the addition of sialic acid to a terminal galactose of *O*-linked glycans and glycolipids in an α2,3-linkage; the ST6Gal family, α2,6-linking sialic acids to galactose residues of *N*-glycans; the ST8Sia family, the only known sialyltransferases promoting the linkage to another sialic acid residue in *N*- or *O*-glycans, in a α2,8-bond; and, finally, the ST6GalNAc family, adding sialic acid to terminal *N*-acetylgalactosamine (GalNAc) residues of glycoproteins and glycolipids, in an α2,6-linkage (60). Thus, on the cell surface, sialic acid residues can be present in *N*- and *O*-glycans in glycoproteins, as well as in gangliosides, i.e., a glycolipid containing one or more residues of sialic acid.

The overall sialic acid content of a cell is also regulated by the removal of sialic acid residues, catalyzed by the sialidase enzymes. Four known enzymes fit into this family, also known as the Neuraminidase family: Neu1, Neu2, Neu3, and Neu4. These sialidases are variedly distributed, with Neu1 located at the lysosomes and also expressed on the surface of diverse types of cells, Neu2 at the cytosol, Neu3 integrated in the cell membrane, and Neu4 being an intracellular protein. They are all exoglycosidases, i.e., they cleave terminal sialic acids, but have different substrate specificities: Neu1, Neu2, and Neu4 remove sialic acid residues from glycoproteins, Neu2 and Neu4 also cleaves sialic acids from glycolipids, and Neu3 preferentially hydrolyzes gangliosides. A list of human sialyltransferases and sialidases, their expression patterns in DCs, and their preferred acceptor and donor substrates, is shown in **Table 1**.

SIALYLATION AND MODULATION OF THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

The terminal position occupied by sialic acids on membrane and extracellular glycans puts them on the frontline during leukocyte communication and overall immune response. Sialic acids, on an immune perspective, can function in two (seemingly contradictory) major ways: as biological masks and as recognizable cell patterns (63). In the former way, sialic acid helps shield host cells from pathogen recognition. It also prevents autoimmune responses, by preventing complement deposition over cell surface. Furthermore, it was reported that, during acute phase inflammation, both soluble and cell surface sialic acid is increased, as a consequence of the increase in soluble and circulatory forms of sialyltransferases. Higher sialic acid is thus part of the acute phase response and it seems to protect cells against pathogens, and also helping the immune system distinguishing "self" from "non-self" antigens (64). ST6Gal-I is an example of sialyltransferase whose soluble expression is upregulated during inflammation and its expression has been used by some authors as a serological clinical marker for inflammation (65–67). Non-sialylated glycans are recognized by specific lectins, and the addition of sialic acid to its terminal position may blocklectin binding. As an example, the presence of α2,6-linked sialic acids on *N*-glycans blocks recognition by galectins (68), a family of β-galactoside-binding lectins that regulate diverse cell behaviors, such as cell adhesion, migration, proliferation, differentiation, transformation, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and immune responses (69–73). However, sialic acid masking can also be used by pathogens, as a mimicry tactic in order to evade the immune system. This is the case of some *Trypanosoma* spp. that have mutated ST3Gal sialyltransferases that act as trans-sialidases, transferring the host's sialic acid to coat themselves in order to evade host recognition (74, 75).

Opposed to the asialylated-glycan recognition, sialic acids can be recognized by several cell surface receptors, such as the

Table 1 | Human sialyltransferases and sialidases.

	Preferred saccharide substrate	Glycan specificity	Dendritic cell expression (cell status)
SIALYLTRANSFERASE			
ST3Gal-I	Galβ1,3GalNAc	*O*-glycan	Yes
ST3Gal-II	Galβ1,3GalNAc	*O*-glycan	Yes (mature)
ST3Gal-III	Galβ1,3(4)GlcNAc	*O*-glycan, *N*-glycan	Yes (mature)
ST3Gal-IV	Galβ1,4(3)GlcNAc	*N*-glycan, *O*-glycan	Yes (mature)
ST3Gal-V	Galβ1,4Glc-ceramide	Glycolipid	Yes
ST3Gal-VI	Galβ1,4GlcNAc	*N*-glycan	Yes
ST6Gal-I	Galβ1,4GlcNAc	*N*-glycan	Yes
ST6Gal-II	Galβ1,4GlcNAc	*N*-glycan	No
ST6GalNAc-I	GalNAcα1,*O*-Ser/Thr	*O*-glycan	No
	Galβ1,3GalNAcα1, *O*-Ser/Thr		
ST6GalNAc-II	Galβ1,3GalNAcα1, *O*-Ser/Thr	*O*-glycans	Yes
ST6GalNAc-III	Siaα2,3Galβ1,3GalNAc	*O*-glycan	Yes (?)
ST6GalNAc-IV	Siaα2,3Galβ1,3GalNAc	*O*-glycan	Yes
ST6GalNAc-V	GM1b	Glycolipid	No
ST6GalNAc-VI	All α-series gangliosides	Glycolipid	Yes
ST8Sia-I	Siaα2,3Galβ1,4Glc-ceramide	Glycolipid	No
ST8Sia-II	Siaα2,3Galβ1,4GlcNAc	*N*-glycan on NCAM	No
ST8Sia-III	Siaα2,3Galβ1,4GlcNAc	*N*-glycan on NCAM	No
ST8Sia-IV	$(Sialα2,8)_n$Siaα2,3Galβ1-R	*N*-glycan on NCAM	Yes
ST8Sia-V	GM1b, GT1b, GD1a, GD3	Glycolipid	No
ST8Sia-VI	Siaα2,3(6)Gal	Sialic acid on *O*-glycan	Unknown
SIALIDASES			
Neu1	Siaα2,3	Oligosaccharides	Yes
	Siaα2,6	Glycopeptides	
Neu2	Siaα2,3	Oligosaccharides	No
	Siaα2,6	Glycopeptides	
		Gangliosides	
Neu3	Siaα2,3	Gangliosides	Yes (mature)
	Siaα2,6		
Neu4	Siaα2,3	Oligosaccharides	Yes
	Siaα2,6	Glycopeptides including mucins	
		Gangliosides	

Preferred substrates for each enzyme and expression pattern in human dendritic cells are indicated. Data was based on (2, 4, 61, 62).
? stands for "unknown" regarding the cell status (whether mature or immature).

previously mentioned CLRs and Siglecs (41, 76). Siglecs are sialic acid-recognizing proteins that, albeit structurally similar, are commonly organized in two categories: (i) one comprises the CD22 family [including CD22 (or Siglec-2), sialoadhesin (or Siglec-1), myelin-associated glycoprotein (MAG or Siglec-4), and Siglec-15]; and (ii) the CD33-related family comprising CD33 (or Siglec 3), Siglec-5, -11, -14, and -16 in humans, all chiefly expressed in myeloid and lymphoid cells (63, 77). Siglecs recognize and bind ligands present not only in other cells (viz., in *trans*) but also on the same cell (in *cis*). Many Siglecs present one or two intracellular immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs (ITIMs), classically described as being involved in signaling to regulation-inducing pathways, or intracellular tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs), involved in the initiation of activation signaling pathways. Hence, Siglecs have a decisive role in regulating, positively or negatively, immune responses such as inflammation or tissue damage by actively discriminating between self-associated molecular patterns (SAMPs) and PAMPs (41, 63, 78, 79).

Studies using mice deficient for selected α2,3- and α2,6-sialyltransferases have provided evidence confirming the importance of sialic acid in immune processes (80–82). ST6Gal-I KO mice were reported as presenting impaired humoral immune response, namely, by reduced concentration levels of circulating and surface IgM, impaired B cell proliferation in response to various activation signals and impaired antibody production following contact with antigens (80). CD22, one of the first described Siglecs (83), was later shown to recognize ST6Gal-I-mediated glycans, functionally regulating several B cell functions and survival mechanisms (84). Other ST6Gal-I KO mice studies have also revealed that soluble forms of ST6Gal-I have a relevant role in myelopoiesis during acute inflammation, namely, by limiting it, thus avoiding uncontrolled excessive neutrophilic and eosinophilic inflammatory responses (59, 85, 86). Using ST3Gal-I KO mice, on the other hand, it has been shown that α2,3-sialylated *O*-glycans are required for $CD8^+$ T cell homeostasis and survival (82).

These are only few examples on how sialic acids influence immune-relevant processes. Other examples include roles in host-pathogen interactions, regulation/modulation of the acute phase response and influence in the progression and differentiation of human malignancies.

DENDRITIC CELLS AND SIALIC ACID

As above mentioned, DCs play a role of enormous relevance in the immune system. Ever since Dr. Steinman and co-workers first described these cells (87–91), there has been an effort to fully characterize their immunobiology, and as part of those efforts, the relevance that glycosylation may have on it. The characterization of the DC's "glycome" ("sialome" included) and its functional impact on the DCs immunobiology and, of course, on the immune system has been a work in progress. There are many questions still open, with many potential clinical applications.

SIALYLATION IN DENDRITIC CELLS

In human DCs, the sialylation profile of inflammatory DCs has been the most studied. This comes as the result of two factors: first, they are the most frequent population of DCs and, second, in more practical terms, they are the easiest subset to obtain *in vitro* with human moDCs being a widely used human conventional migratory and inflammatory DC model. Other vertebrate DC models rely on the obtainment of DCs by differentiation of bone marrow extracts or, more specifically, $CD34^+$ hematopoietic precursors myeloid lineage (92).

Immature moDCs present a high sialylation content, namely α2,3- and α2,6-sialylated glycoproteins, when compared to its monocyte precursors (4, 93). This has been reported by different teams that used plant lectins from *Sambucus nigra* and *Maackia amurensis*, preferably recognizing α2,6-linked sialic acid linked to lactosamine (Neu5Acα2,6Galβ1,4GlcNAc-) in *N*-glycans and α2,3-linked sialic acid linked to lactosamine (Neu5Acα2,6Galβ1,4GlcNAc-), respectively.

Quantitative Real-Time PCR and microarray analysis has shown that both sialyltransferases and sialidases undergo significant gene expression variation during differentiation and maturation (4, 62, 93, 94). In particular, a significant upregulation of the ST3Gal-I and ST6Gal-I genes occurs during moDCs' differentiation that correlates with an increase of enzymatic activity by these two enzymes. Increased phenotypic change in α2,3- and α2,6-sialylation (4) during myeloid lineage-committed differentiation indicates these two sialyltransferases as the major contributors to the biosynthesis of α2,3- and α2,6-linked sialic acid-containing glycan structures specific for moDCs, with potential functional relevance. There are, however, other potentially relevant sialyltransferases that should not be discarded, such as ST3Gal-IV and -VI, being described as essential for the synthesis of the adhesion-related sialyl-Lewis x (sLe^x) antigens. Regarding sialidases, modulation during moDCs' differentiation is similarly observed, with Neu1 and Neu3 being significantly upregulated during this process (62). Maturation of moDCs leads to an increase of α2,3-sialylation and a decrease of α2,6-sialylation (2, 4, 93) although the reported variations are stimulus-dependent processes, and correlated with the sialyltransferases and sialidases activity.

While the functional impact of these observed sialic acid changes has to be further elucidated, there is already some evidence that these variations are biologically relevant, as it will be discussed further on in this review.

SIALIC ACID-RECOGNIZING DENDRITIC CELL RECEPTORS

Sialic acid-containing glycans expressed by DCs are the target of receptors, such as Siglecs, being the largest represented family. Recognition of DC sialylated glycans has functional implications: examples include a recognition mechanism of high α2,6-sialic acid content of immature and tolerogenic DCs by inhibitory Siglecs expressed by effector T cells as a host-tolerance-inducing mechanism (93), or the observed increased binding of Siglecs-1, -2, and -7 correlating with the higher sialic acid content of mature DCs (2). All this gathered evidence point to an even more promising, relevant role of Siglec-mediated immunobiological processes involving DCs and other leukocytes, but still to be unraveled and requiring, thus, further studies.

Besides being recognized by Siglecs through their expression of glycans, DCs express themselves Siglecs enabling them to also recognize sialylated structures. MoDCs and blood-circulating DCs [namely pDCs, $CD1a^+$, and $CD141^+$ DCs (95)] express Siglec-1, -2, -3, -5, -7, -9, -10, -14, and -15 (2, 43, 78, 96), while pDCs have a more restricted pattern and apparently only express Siglec-5 (43). Siglecs, with the exception of Siglec-14 and -15, expressed by DCs present ITIM motifs in their cytosolic portion and are therefore mainly involved in inhibiting activation signals and have an immunoregulatory function (40, 41).

The concentration of sialic acids on surfaces of human cells is very high; for example, Stamatos and colleagues estimated that DCs had 8.9 nM per 5×10^6 cells, which correspond to nearly 10^{18} sialic acid molecules per cell (62).

Therefore, it is possible that the majority of Siglecs expressed at DC surface bind *in cis*, i.e., to sialic acids at their own cell surface. The *cis* interaction will have primacy over the *trans* interactions, the only exception being sialoadhesin, which has an extended structure, projecting their binding site away from plasma membrane and being therefore involved in *trans* interactions (97).

Siglec interactions *in cis* can be released by sialidase activity, either extrinsic for instance from pathogens or intrinsically due to the activity of endogenous sialidases (40, 98). Since DCs ultimate function is to immunomodulate T cells and (to some extent) B cells, Siglecs potentially play a largely relevant role in host-tolerance mechanisms (2, 43, 99). Chen and co-workers reported Siglec-10 as involved in helping distinguish TLR-recognized danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) – generated during cell/tissue damage or even regular cell lifecycle – from PAMPs, thus controlling inflammation (100). There are known examples of T cell activation where DC Siglecs have a relevant role in inducing Th1 and Th2 responses, as is the case of DC Siglecs-1 and -7 *trans* recognition of α2,3-sialic acids and α2,8-polisialic acids, respectively, in mimicked GM1a and GD1a (Siglec-1 recognized) and GD1c (Siglec-7 recognition) gangliosides included in *Campylobacter jejuni*'s LPSs (101).

CD33-related Siglecs can function as endocytic receptors that are important in the clearance of sialylated antigens. On the other hand, many pathogens are able to express appropriate sialic acids

themselves (102–105). Pathogen's sialic acids may interfere with DC functions such as endocytosis (43, 106) thus helping DCs to internalize and further present pathogen's antigens. This, however, may also open an opportunity window for pathogens to modulate DCs' immune functions (by binding to immunoregulating Siglecs) or even use DCs as vectors (i.e., "Trojan horses") for infection of other immune system cells, such as HIV using Siglec-1 as a gateway-receptor for DC entry and posterior transmission to $CD4^+$ T cells (107). However, a safety mechanism may be present: Siglec-15 can act as an activation receptor balancing the negative signaling triggered after recognition of sialylated pathogens (viz., enveloped viruses) through inhibitory Siglecs (78).

DENDRITIC CELL SIALYLATION AND ENDOCYTOSIS

The sialic acid's role on endocytosis has long been studied on the perspective of the pathogen. Besides the already referred trans-sialidase bearing *T. cruzi* parasite, it is also known that several bacteria developed sialic acid-masking mechanisms in order to escape immune surveillance and/or response (108). Recent discoveries, however, hinted that sialic acid's role in these immune processes goes far beyond than "just" being an antigen, with a functional impact on the innate immune phase cells as well, like DCs.

As previously mentioned DCs are functionally well prepared to endocytose pathogens, in order to process and present them to the adaptive immune response cells (20, 109, 110). Using two different approaches – sialidase treatment of moDCs and bone marrow-derived DCs (BMDCs) from sialyltransferase KO mice, it has been determined the functional impact of sialic acid on macropinocytosis and phagocytosis. Asialylated DCs presented significantly reduced ovalbumin-macropinocytosis but increased phagocytosis levels (111). Similar results having been obtained using BMDCs from ST6Gal-I and ST3Gal-I sialyltransferase-deficient mice (3).

Sialic acid removal (or absence in BMDCs) has a positive impact over the DC maturation process, leading to higher expression of maturation markers. Hence, this effect should account for the observed reduction of macropinocytosis levels, since matured DCs tend to have decreased endocytosis ability (112). The observed increase in phagocytosis in asialylated immature and mature DCs (111) seems, therefore, to oppose the endocytosis reduction induced by maturation. It is documented, however, that mature DCs may continuously uptake antigens by phagocytosis and receptor-mediated endocytosis, even if always described in lower levels than immature DCs (110, 113). As no studies have been performed from a sialic acid point of view, this can account for novel, groundbreaking evidence adding to the well-established concepts of endocytosis. Another piece of this apparent puzzle lies in the DC cytoskeleton, which has to be adjusted to perform cellular extensions needed for phagocytosis. After sialidase treatment of DCs, a cytoskeleton disorganization is observed. In addition, the activity of two Rho GTPases – Rac1 and Cdc42 – that regulate, among other processes, the actin-dependent events of macropinocytosis and phagocytosis (19, 112, 114–116) are downregulated, after sialidase treatment. This may justify the cytoskeleton disorganization and decreased macropinocytosis.

Hence, the fact that sialidase treatment accounts for the significant *E. coli* phagocytosis enhancement, in both sialidase-treated immature and mature DCs, is a process unrelated to maturation. Interestingly, the effect on phagocytosis seems to depend on the presence, in *trans*, of bacterial sialic acid (111), adding a potential involvement of Siglecs. Hence, sialidase treatment would release DCs' Siglecs from in *cis* ligands, making them available to bind to ligands in *trans*, such as sialic acid-containing glycans present in the *E. coli* cell wall. However further investigations are still needed to elucidate the underlying mechanisms.

Sialidase-induced activation of receptors is not a novel phenomenon. Receptors like TLR-4 are known to depend on the activity of membrane sialidase prior to LPS-induced activation: in mice, DC phagocytosis is activated by desialylation of surface receptors (62, 117, 118). This evidence is in line with the already mentioned increased expression of sialidases, such as Neu1 during DCs differentiation and maturation (117). Furthermore, physiologically, cell surface sialic acid content is not exclusively cleaved by endogenous sialidases, since exogenous sialidase sources are also released by pathogenic bacteria or virus during the course of an infection. In the mouse model, it was reported that Neu1-induced desialylation activates phagocytosis by macrophages and DCs (118). Also, cell surface desialylation by influenza virus sialidase stimulates the internalization of target virus by infected mouse macrophages (119).

Siglecs and TLRs fit perfectly in the recent model presented by Cabral and collaborators showing that sialidase treatment of DCs favors phagocytosis (111). Since they are receptors with both strong activating- and suppressive-inducing properties, with known roles in regulating immune responses and with the potential of becoming active after sialic acid removal by sialidases, they are also likely to account for the observed upregulation of both pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines (111). Nevertheless, the referred receptor families may not be the only receptors affected by sialidase treatment in DCs as novel glycan-protein interactions are continuously being revealed, but further studies are in order to better elucidate the role of sialic acid in endocytosis.

SIALYLATION AND DENDRITIC CELL MIGRATION

Dendritic cell migration includes both DC recruitment to non-lymphoid tissue and homing to lymphoid organs.

When located within tissues, DCs may respond to pro-inflammatory cytokines and pathogens, which trigger maturation and DCs then migrate to lymphoid tissues via afferent lymphatic vessels, wherein they activate antigen-responsive T cells. Immature and mature DCs may also enter the blood and from there disseminate to non-lymphoid and lymphoid organs, thereafter returning to blood, thus undergoing cycles of recirculation. Therefore DCs have complex trafficking routes, allowing for dynamic reassortment of DCs, making the most of their capacity to uptake antigens and to encounter T cells to present antigens and activate them.

While, generally, the migratory processes are based upon mechanisms like adhesion and chemotaxis, some processes still show their own particularities. The extravasation of blood DCs to any tissue involves DC adhesion to endothelium and is dependent of selectin interactions with sialofucosylated glycans. The role of certain sialylated glycans as selectin ligands is one of the most recognized functions of sialic acid in the context of leukocyte recruitment (120).

Selectins are CLRs expressed by platelets, endothelium, or leukocytes, hence taking their name: P-, E-, or L-selectins, although endothelial cells also express P-selectins.

All selectins recognize the sialic acid and fucose (Fuc) containing tetrasaccharide, where sLe^x (Neu5Acα2,3Galβ1,4[Fucα1,3] GlcNAc-) is the major prototype. Selectin ligands are expressed in most circulating immune cells and some endothelial cells during inflammation. They mediates essentially the rolling and tethering phase of cell transmigration over the endothelial cell surface (121). sLe^x expression is well characterized in neutrophils and lymphocytes (76, 122) but only relatively approached in DC (123–126). Recently, it was found that moDCs also express functional selectin ligands, based on their observations of moDC tethering and rolling over a P-, E-, and L-selectin immobilized surface (126). They observed decreasing tethering affinities (by decreasing order) toward P-, E-, and L-selectin, with similar lower rolling velocity on P- and E-selectins and the largest rolling velocity observed over L-selectins. These findings were in line with other studies using blood DCs and $CD34^+$-derived DCs (125, 127). Furthermore, the use of anti-sLe^x antibodies on the rolling studies resulted in a significant binding inhibition, definitely proving that sLe^x mediates the moDCs-selectin binding (126).

In order to properly function as a selectin ligand, sLe^x must be expressed in carrier glycoproteins or glycolipids (128, 129). The only described sLe^x carrier-protein described in moDCs is the P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 (PSGL-1) (123), a mucin-like glycoprotein, present in the microvilli of most leukocytes (130, 131) (**Figure 2**, "Cell adhesion" feature). In DCs, sLe^x-decorating PSGL-1 is the solely ligand for P-selectin, with significant less affinity toward L-selectin and being indifferent for E-selectin binding (126).

Nevertheless, sialic acids also participate in the chemokine receptor-mediated firm arrest, as well as in β1 integrins function (132–134). There is also evidence concerning the chemokine-mediated migration to the lymph nodes. It was recently reported that ST8Sia-4-dependent polysialylation of neuropilin-2 seems to be relevant for chemokine-driven migration toward lymph nodes (135). Other report claims that ST3Gal-IV is not relevant for chemokine-dependent DC homing, in the mouse model (120), but, interestingly, our team's preliminary studies using ST6Gal-I-deficient mice have shown impaired DC migration toward draining lymph nodes, suggesting a previously unknown role for α2,6-sialylated *N*-glycans in DC homing.

Dendritic cell mobility is a crucial step still needing to be better elucidated. Most of the clinically efficacy of DC immunotherapy relies on the migration ability of these cells. In *ex vivo* generated DC vaccines, it is estimated that only 1–2% of total administered DCs reach secondary lymphatic organs (136). Therefore the majority of *ex vivo* generated DCs are inefficient because they do not meet T cells. Thus, understanding DC migration should be regarded as important to find means to improve DC immunotherapy.

SIALIC ACID IN DENDRITIC CELL-T CELL INTERACTIONS

The ultimate function of DC immunobiology is the DC-T cell interaction, whereupon DCs present the uptaken, processed antigens to T cells, thus eliciting a specific, long-lasting immune response. Since immunological synapses between these two cells involve glycoprotein receptor-mediated process, it is, thusly, potentially influenced by sialic acid.

Dendritic cells' sialic acid-containing glycans have been shown to negatively influence T cell priming, most likely by interference on MHC-mediated antigen presentation and co-stimulation (137, 138). In line with these findings, sialidase-treated moDCs were able to prime T cells and induce proliferation more efficiently than fully sialylated moDCs (3, 111). This effect could be attributable to the increased maturation by sialidase-treated moDCs (3). However, one should not discard a synergistic effect with enhanced protein–protein interaction due to the absence of the negatively charged sialic acid (137), leading to enhanced inter cellular interactions. The verified upregulation of a set of pro-inflammatory, Th1 profile-inducing cytokine expression (viz., IL-1α, -6, -12, and TNF-α) in sialidase-treated moDCs (with subsequent IFN-γ secretion) could also account for the observed increased priming.

Reinforcing these results, others have observed that endogenous sialidase activity also promotes cytokine production by moDCs and this has been attributable to the action of Neu3 upregulation during moDC differentiation (62). Interestingly, tolerogenic, immature moDCs present high sialic acid content, as well as regulatory T cells. Thus it has been hypothesized that, host-tolerance induction by DCs could be a Siglec-mediated process (93).

Taken together, this evidence reminds that DC sialylation has implications in the T cell interaction and it is likely to twist the immunogenic/tolerogenic balance. Thus sialylation should be considered to fine tune DC-based therapy either pathology-treating or tolerance-inducing.

DENDRITIC CELL GLYCAN RECOGNITION OF TUMORS

Dendritic cells functions also include specific identification of tumor cells and presentation of tumor antigens to T cells. One of the mechanisms for tumor cells recognition is through the binding of cells surface receptors to tumor-specific antigen (TSA), with an almost exclusive tumor expression and tumor-associated antigens (TAAs), normally expressed on the cells but of aberrant expression on tumor cells (139). Upon recognition, these antigens normally elicit a maturation response on DCs but the immune potency depends on many factors, including the antigen. Tumors have, however, several evasion strategies from immune responses, achieving this by creating a tolerance-inducing microenvironment, secretion of inhibitory factors, and activation of immunosuppressant intracellular pathways in the immune cells (140–142). DCs present certain flaws in their antigen-presenting strategy that tumor cells take advantage of in order to create defective T cell responses, thus creating problems in generating effective anti-tumoral solutions (142, 143).

Aberrant glycosylation is a hallmark of cancer cells and aberrant glycosylated proteins can be shed into the body fluids of the patients (serum, urine, pleural effusions, etc.). This altered glycosylation pattern in tumor cells includes either a loss or a gain of expression of certain glycan structures, the appearance of truncated structures, as well as of novel structures. Upregulation and/or downregulation of specific glycosyltransferases is often responsible for these changes. Tumor-associated carbohydrate (TAC) structures allow tumor cells to invade and metastasize

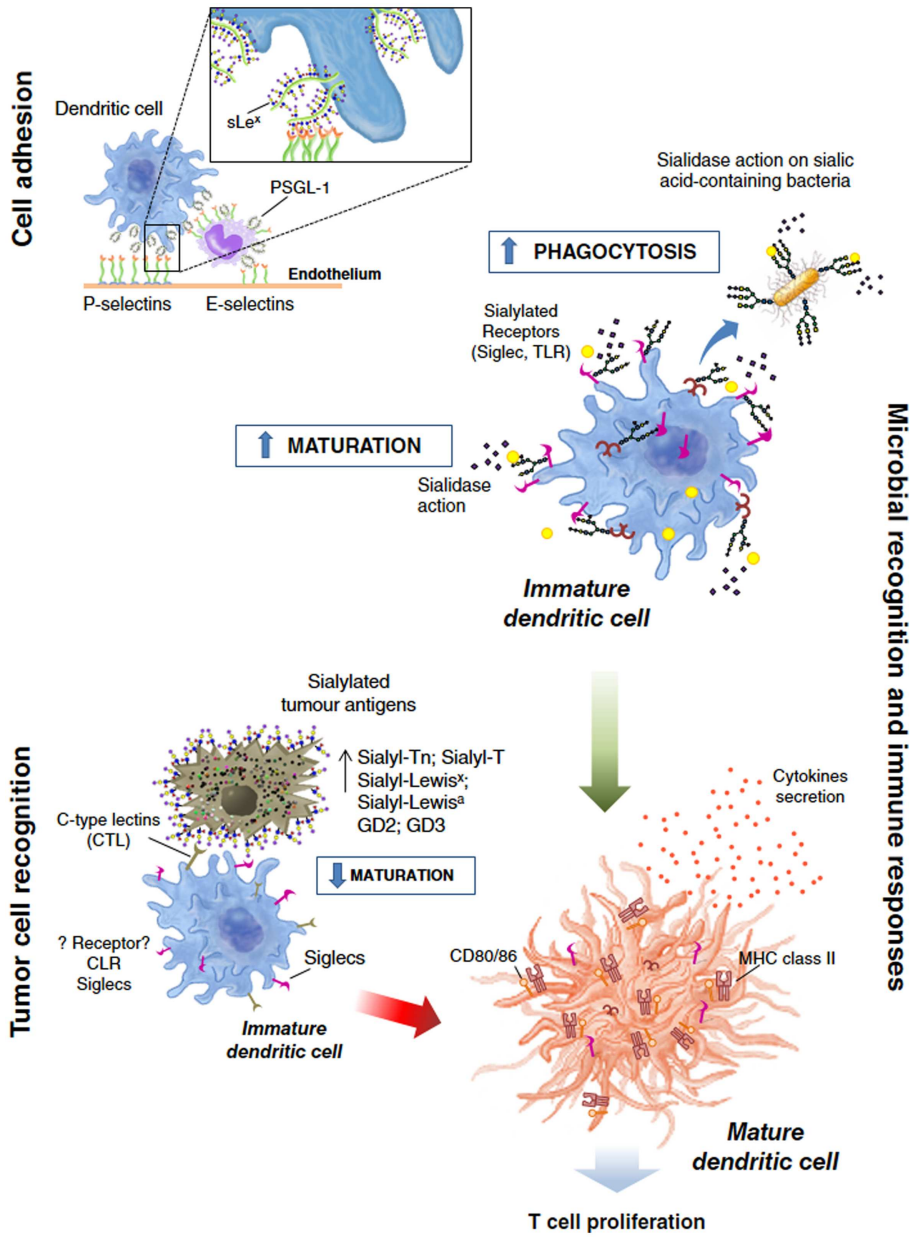


FIGURE 2 | General overview of the dendritic cell functions modulated by sialylation. Sialic acid-containing glycans actively participate and modulate processes like: *cell adhesion* during migration and homing; or in "de facto" immune processes such as *tumor cell recognition* and *microbial recognition*, overall modulating the immune response/tolerance balance.

or to evade the immune system. Immature and/or tolerogenic DCs can migrate to the rapidly growing tumor microenvironment, thus eliciting immune tolerance in several ways, such as T cell deletion, anergy, and T_{reg} activation (142–145). The tolerogenic profile depends on the DCs recognition and binding to TAC. However, how DCs recognize the tumor cells and in particular the TAC are not fully disclosed. The few available studies point, so far, to the CLRs, MGL-1, and DC-SIGN receptors as being relevant in tumor recognition and undesired tolerance induction (37, 146): the former is highly expressed in immature, tolerogenic DCs, and shown to interact with the tumor-associated Tn antigen-bearing forms of MUC1 (147); the latter is also expressed by immature DCs and recognizes Le^x and Lewis Y (Le^y) glycoantigens in a carcinoembryonic antigen-context expressed in colorectal carcinoma. Besides these receptors, the observed involvement of DCs' Siglecs (such as Siglec-3 and -9) could help justifying the frequent tolerance-induction mechanisms: by recognizing overexpressed sialylated antigens at the tumor microenvironment (e.g., sialyl T and sLe^a expressed on mucins), these receptors could send inhibitory intracellular

signals from their ITIM motifs thus preventing DCs from differentiating (by inducing apoptosis of their precursors) or maturating, keeping them in a tolerance-inducing state with concomitant upregulated anti-inflammatory cytokine expression, downregulated pro-inflammatory cytokine expression, and reduced antigen-presenting capability (148–150).

It is now evident that TAC and in particular, sialic acid expression influences tumor progression. DCs become tolerogenic after recognition of TAC (including glycan-bearing/glycosylated TAC), favoring tumor progression and being generally associated with bad prognosis. The collected evidence regarding the glycan influence on anti-carcinogenic immune processes should be, therefore, seriously considered whenever DC-based immunotherapies against specific malignancies are available.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The weight of glycosylation and, in particular, sialic acid in biological processes is being increasingly acknowledged. Being at the terminal position of many glycans, it plays an essential role in modulating many of the DC functions. In human DCs, the majority of studies to date have focused on moDCs and only scattered and very scarce data was reported regarding other subsets. It would be extremely important to study these and other immune mechanisms from the newly identified subsets' perspective and to complement those studies using mouse DCs other than the traditionally (myeloid) BMDCs. Being known that different subsets of DCs have different functions/affinities toward different pathogens/tissues (and elicit different responses) it should not come as a surprise that different subsets could express different glycans and glycan-recognizing receptors, having thus different underlying mechanisms and eliciting different immune responses. The discovery and accessibility of new, faster, and more precise glycobiology-related techniques may allow a better understanding of the role of sialylation and glycosylation in DCs. The problem that poses glycobiologists, and immunologists in particular, is trying to add a new perspective and knowledge, in the same magnitude, to the amount of knowledge that proteomics and genetics have gathered the last 30 or 40 years, in a short amount of time. That premise is getting growingly important every time a relevant role for glyco-based phenomenon is identified. Our hope, with this review is that we contributed a little bit more to put the spotlight on Glycoimmunology and encourage further investigations on this subject.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was supported by the Portuguese Foundation for Science and Technology (FCT) – PTDC/SAU-MII/67561/2006 and CEDOC (Paula A. Videira) and SFRH/BD/61204/2009 (Hélio J. Crespo). FCT is co-financed by European Social Fund (ESF) under Human Potential Operation Program (POPH) from National Strategic Reference Framework (NSRF).

REFERENCES

1. Collin M, Bigley V, Haniffa M, Hambleton S. Human dendritic cell deficiency: the missing ID? *Nat Rev Immunol* (2011) **11**:575–83. doi:10.1038/nri3046
2. Bax M, Garcia-Vallejo JJ, Jang-Lee J, North SJ, Gilmartin TJ, Hernandez G, et al. Dendritic cell maturation results in pronounced changes in glycan expression affecting recognition by siglecs and galectins. *J Immunol* (2007) **179**:8216–24.
3. Crespo HJ, Cabral MG, Teixeira AV, Lau JTY, Trindade H, Videira PA. Effect of sialic acid loss on dendritic cell maturation. *Immunology* (2009) **128**:e621–31. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2567.2009.03047.x
4. Videira PA, Amado IF, Crespo HJ, Alguero MC, Dall'Olio F, Cabral MG, et al. Surface alpha 2-3- and alpha 2-6-sialylation of human monocytes and derived dendritic cells and its influence on endocytosis. *Glycoconj J* (2008) **25**:259–68. doi:10.1007/s10719-007-9092-6
5. Harwood NE, Batista FD. Antigen presentation to B cells. *F1000 Biol Rep* (2010) **2**:87. doi:10.3410/B2-87
6. Palucka K, Banchereau J. How dendritic cells and microbes interact to elicit or subvert protective immune responses. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2002) **14**:420–31. doi:10.1016/S0952-7915(02)00365-5
7. Qi H, Egen JG, Huang AY, Germain RN. Extrafollicular activation of lymph node B cells by antigen-bearing dendritic cells. *Science* (2006) **312**:1672–6. doi:10.1126/science.1125703
8. Shortman K, Naik SH. Steady-state and inflammatory dendritic-cell development. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2007) **7**:19–30. doi:10.1038/nri1996
9. D'Amico A, Wu L. The early progenitors of mouse dendritic cells and plasmacytoid predendritic cells are within the bone marrow hemopoietic precursors expressing Flt3. *J Exp Med* (2003) **198**:293–303. doi:10.1084/jem.20030107
10. Ishikawa F, Niiro H, Iino T, Yoshida S, Saito N, Onohara S, et al. The developmental program of human dendritic cells is operated independently of conventional myeloid and lymphoid pathways. *Blood* (2007) **110**:3591–660. doi:10.1182/blood-2007-02-071613
11. Manz MG, Traver D, Miyamoto T, Weissman IL, Akashi K. Dendritic cell potentials of early lymphoid and myeloid progenitors. *Blood* (2001) **97**:3333–41. doi:10.1182/blood.V97.11.3333
12. Shigematsu H, Reizis B, Iwasaki H, Mizuno S, Hu D, Traver D, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells activate lymphoid-specific genetic programs irrespective of their cellular origin. *Immunity* (2004) **21**:43–53. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2004.06.011
13. Singh P, Hoggatt J, Hu P, Speth JM, Fukuda S, Breyer RM, et al. Blockade of prostaglandin E2 signaling through EP1 and EP3 receptors attenuates Flt3L-dependent dendritic cell development from hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Blood* (2012) **119**:1671–82. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-03-342428
14. Watowich SS, Liu YJ. Mechanisms regulating dendritic cell specification and development. *Immunol Rev* (2010) **238**:76–92. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2010.00949.x
15. Schraml BU, van Blijswijk J, Zelenay S, Whitney PG, Filby A, Acton SE, et al. Genetic tracing via DNGR-1 expression history defines dendritic cells as a hematopoietic lineage. *Cell* (2013) **154**:843–58. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2013.07.014
16. Grouard G, Rissoan MC, Filgueira L, Durand I, Banchereau J, Liu YJ. The enigmatic plasmacytoid T cells develop into dendritic cells with interleukin (IL)-3 and CD40-ligand. *J Exp Med* (1997) **185**:1101–11. doi:10.1084/jem.185.6.1101
17. O'Keeffe M, Hochrein H, Vremec D, Caminschi I, Miller JL, Anders EM, et al. Mouse plasmacytoid cells: long-lived cells, heterogeneous in surface phenotype and function, that differentiate into CD8(+) dendritic cells only after microbial stimulus. *J Exp Med* (2002) **196**:1307–19. doi:10.1084/jem.20021031
18. Segura E, Amigorena S. Inflammatory dendritic cells in mice and humans. *Trends Immunol* (2013) **34**(9):440–5. doi:10.1016/j.it.2013.06.001
19. Sallusto F, Cella M, Danieli C, Lanzavecchia A. Dendritic cells use macropinocytosis and the mannose receptor to concentrate macromolecules in the major histocompatibility complex class II compartment: downregulation by cytokines and bacterial products. *J Exp Med* (1995) **182**:389–400. doi:10.1084/jem.182.2.389
20. Norbury CC. Drinking a lot is good for dendritic cells. *Immunology* (2006) **117**:443–51. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2567.2006.02335.x
21. Wilson NS, El-Sukkari D, Belz GT, Smith CM, Steptoe RJ, Heath WR, et al. Most lymphoid organ dendritic cell types are phenotypically and functionally immature. *Blood* (2003) **102**:2187–94. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-02-0513
22. Kramer A, Bekeschus S, Broker BM, Schleibinger H, Razavi B, Assadian O. Maintaining health by balancing microbial exposure and prevention of infection: the hygiene hypothesis versus the hypothesis of early immune challenge. *J Hosp Infect* (2013) **83**(Suppl 1):S29–34. doi:10.1016/S0195-6701(13)60007-9
23. Rook GA. Review series on helminths, immune modulation and the hygiene hypothesis: the broader implications of the hygiene hypothesis. *Immunology* (2009) **126**:3–11. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2567.2008.03007.x

24. Rook GA. 99th Dahlem conference on infection, inflammation and chronic inflammatory disorders: darwinian medicine and the "hygiene" or "old friends" hypothesis. *Clin Exp Immunol* (2010) **160**:70–9. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2249.2010.04133.x
25. Thomas R, Lipsky PE. Human peripheral blood dendritic cell subsets. Isolation and characterization of precursor and mature antigen-presenting cells. *J Immunol* (1994) **153**:4016–28.
26. Sallusto F, Lanzavecchia A. Efficient presentation of soluble antigen by cultured human dendritic cells is maintained by granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor plus interleukin 4 and downregulated by tumor necrosis factor alpha. *J Exp Med* (1994) **179**:1109–18. doi:10.1084/jem.179.4.1109
27. Bonasio R, von Andrian UH. Generation, migration and function of circulating dendritic cells. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2006) **18**:503–11. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2006.05.011
28. Forster R, Braun A, Worbs T. Lymph node homing of T cells and dendritic cells via afferent lymphatics. *Trends Immunol* (2012) **33**:271–80. doi:10.1016/j.it.2012.02.007
29. von Andrian UH, Mempel TR. Homing and cellular traffic in lymph nodes. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2003) **3**:867–78. doi:10.1038/nri1222
30. Netea MG, van der Graaf C, Van der Meer JW, Kullberg BJ. Toll-like receptors and the host defense against microbial pathogens: bringing specificity to the innate-immune system. *J Leukoc Biol* (2004) **75**:749–55. doi:10.1189/jlb.1103543
31. Schnare M, Holt AC, Takeda K, Akira S, Medzhitov R. Recognition of CpG DNA is mediated by signaling pathways dependent on the adaptor protein MyD88. *Curr Biol* (2000) **10**:1139–42. doi:10.1016/S0960-9822(00)00700-4
32. Dzopalic T, Rajkovic I, Dragicevic A, Colic M. The response of human dendritic cells to co-ligation of pattern-recognition receptors. *Immunol Res* (2012) **52**:20–33. doi:10.1007/s12026-012-8279-5
33. Takeda K, Kaisho T, Akira S. Toll-like receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2003) **21**:335–76. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.21.120601.141126
34. Zelensky AN, Gready JE. The C-type lectin-like domain superfamily. *FEBS J* (2005) **272**:6179–217. doi:10.1111/j.1742-4658.2005.05031.x
35. van Kooyk Y, Rabinovich GA. Protein-glycan interactions in the control of innate and adaptive immune responses. *Nat Immunol* (2008) **9**:593–601. doi:10.1038/ni.f.203
36. Figdor CG, de Vries IJ, Lesterhuis WJ, Melief CJ. Dendritic cell immunotherapy: mapping the way. *Nat Med* (2004) **10**:475–80. doi:10.1038/nm1039
37. van Gisbergen KP, Aarnoudse CA, Meijer GA, Geijtenbeek TB, van Kooyk Y. Dendritic cells recognize tumor-specific glycosylation of carcinoembryonic antigen on colorectal cancer cells through dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing nonintegrin. *Cancer Res* (2005) **65**:5935–44. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-4140
38. van Kooyk Y. C-type lectins on dendritic cells: key modulators for the induction of immune responses. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2008) **36**:1478–81. doi:10.1042/BST0361478
39. van Kooyk Y, Engering A, Lekkerkerker AN, Ludwig IS, Geijtenbeek TB. Pathogens use carbohydrates to escape immunity induced by dendritic cells. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2004) **16**:488–93. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2004.05.010
40. Crocker PR. Siglecs in innate immunity. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* (2005) **5**:431–7. doi:10.1016/j.coph.2005.03.003
41. Crocker PR, Paulson JC, Varki A. Siglecs and their roles in the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2007) **7**:255–66. doi:10.1038/nri2056
42. Kawasaki N, Vela JL, Nycholat CM, Rademacher C, Khurana A, van Rooijen N, et al. Targeted delivery of lipid antigen to macrophages via the CD169/sialoadhesin endocytic pathway induces robust invariant natural killer T cell activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2013) **110**:7826–31. doi:10.1073/pnas.1219888110
43. Lock K, Zhang J, Lu J, Lee SH, Crocker PR. Expression of CD33-related siglecs on human mononuclear phagocytes, monocyte-derived dendritic cells and plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Immunobiology* (2004) **209**:199–207. doi:10.1016/j.imbio.2004.04.007
44. Ben Nasr A, Haithcoat J, Masterson JE, Gunn JS, Eaves-Pyles T, Klimpel GR. Critical role for serum opsonins and complement receptors CR3 (CD11b/CD18) and CR4 (CD11c/CD18) in phagocytosis of *Francisella tularensis* by human dendritic cells (DC): uptake of *Francisella* leads to activation of immature DC and intracellular survival of the bacteria. *J Leukoc Biol* (2006) **80**:774–86 . doi:10.1189/jlb.1205755
45. Sedlik C, Orbach D, Veron P, Schweighoffer E, Colucci F, Gamberale R, et al. A critical role for Syk protein tyrosine kinase in Fc receptor-mediated antigen presentation and induction of dendritic cell maturation. *J Immunol* (2003) **170**:846–52.
46. Caminschi I, Shortman K. Boosting antibody responses by targeting antigens to dendritic cells. *Trends Immunol* (2012) **33**:71–7. doi:10.1016/j.it.2011.10.007
47. Matos I, Mizenina O, Lubkin A, Steinman RM, Idoyaga J. Targeting antigens to dendritic cells in vivo induces protective immunity. *PLoS One* (2013) **8**:e67453. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0067453
48. Mintern JD, Percival C, Kamphuis MM, Chin WJ, Caruso F, Johnston AP. Targeting dendritic cells: the role of specific receptors in the internalization of polymer capsules. *Adv Healthc Mater* (2013) **2**:940–4. doi:10.1002/adhm.201200441
49. Phanse Y, Carrillo-Conde BR, Ramer-Tait AE, Roychoudhury R, Pohl NLB, Narasimhan B, et al. Functionalization of polyanhydride microparticles with di-mannose influences uptake by and intracellular fate within dendritic cells. *Acta Biomater* (2013) **9**, 8902–9. doi:10.1016/j.actbio.2013.06.024
50. Yao Y, Chen L, Wei W, Deng X, Ma L, Hao S. Tumor cell-derived exosome-targeted dendritic cells stimulate stronger CD8+ CTL responses and antitumor immunities. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2013) **436**:60–5. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2013.05.058
51. Cao J, Jin Y, Li W, Zhang B, He Y, Liu H, et al. DNA vaccines targeting the encoded antigens to dendritic cells induce potent antitumor immunity in mice. *BMC Immunol* (2013) **14**:39. doi:10.1186/1471-2172-14-39
52. Liechtenstein T, Perez-Janices N, Bricogne C, Lanna A, Dufait I, Goyvaerts C, et al. Immune modulation by genetic modification of dendritic cells with lentiviral vectors. *Virus Res* (2013) **176**:1–15. doi:10.1016/j.virusres.2013.05.007
53. Banerjee DK. N-glycans in cell survival and death: cross-talk between glycosyltransferases. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2012) **1820**:1338–46. doi:10.1016/j.bbagen.2012.01.013
54. Cabral MG, Piteira AR, Silva Z, Ligeiro D, Brossmer R, Videira PA. Human dendritic cells contain cell surface sialyltransferase activity. *Immunol Lett* (2010) **131**:89–96. doi:10.1016/j.imlet.2010.02.009
55. Hennet T. Diseases of glycosylation beyond classical congenital disorders of glycosylation. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2012) **1820**:1306–17. doi:10.1016/j.bbagen.2012.02.001
56. Rosnoblet C, Peanne R, Legrand D, Foulquier F. Glycosylation disorders of membrane trafficking. *Glycoconj J* (2013) **30**:23–31. doi:10.1007/s10719-012-9389-y
57. Varki NM, Varki A. Diversity in cell surface sialic acid presentations: implications for biology and disease. *Lab Invest* (2007) **87**:851–7. doi:10.1038/labinvest.3700656
58. Sonnenburg JL, Altheide TK, Varki A. A uniquely human consequence of domain-specific functional adaptation in a sialic acid-binding receptor. *Glycobiology* (2004) **14**:339–46. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwh039
59. Jones MB, Nasirikenari M, Feng L, Migliore MT, Choi KS, Kazim L, et al. Role for hepatic and circulatory ST6Gal-1 sialyltransferase in regulating myelopoiesis. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:25009–17. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.104406
60. Harduin-Lepers A, Vallejo-Ruiz V, Krzewinski-Recchi MA, Samyn-Petit B, Julien S, Delannoy P. The human sialyltransferase family. *Biochimie* (2001) **83**:727–37. doi:10.1016/S0300-9084(01)01301-3
61. Miyagi T, Takahashi K, Hata K, Shiozaki K, Yamaguchi K. Sialidase significance for cancer progression. *Glycoconj J* (2012) **29**:567–77. doi:10.1007/s10719-012-9394-1
62. Stamatos NM, Carubelli I, van de Vlekkert D, Bonten EJ, Papini N, Feng C, et al. LPS-induced cytokine production in human dendritic cells is regulated by sialidase activity. *J Leukoc Biol* (2010) **88**:1227–39. doi:10.1189/jlb.1209776
63. Varki A, Gagneux P. Multifarious roles of sialic acids in immunity. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:16–36. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06517.x
64. Jamieson JC, McCaffrey G, Harder PG. Sialyltransferase: a novel acute-phase reactant. *Comp Biochem Physiol B* (1993) **105**:29–33.
65. Jamieson JC, Lammers G, Janzen R, Woloski BM. The acute phase response to inflammation: the role of monokines in changes in liver glycoproteins and enzymes of glycoprotein metabolism. *Comp Biochem Physiol B* (1987) **87**:11–5.
66. Kaplan HA, Woloski BM, Hellman M, Jamieson JC. Studies on the effect of inflammation on rat liver and serum sialyltransferase. Evidence that inflammation causes release of Gal beta 1 leads to 4GlcNAc alpha 2 leads to 6 sialyltransferase from liver. *J Biol Chem* (1983) **258**:11505–9.

67. Yasukawa Z, Sato C, Kitajima K. Inflammation-dependent changes in alpha2,3-, alpha2,6-, and alpha2,8-sialic acid glycotopes on serum glycoproteins in mice. *Glycobiology* (2005) **15**:827–37. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwi068
68. Zhuo Y, Bellis SL. Emerging role of alpha2,6-sialic acid as a negative regulator of galectin binding and function. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**:5935–41. doi:10.1074/jbc.R110.191429
69. Erbacher A, Gieseke F, Handgretinger R, Müller I. Dendritic cells: functional aspects of glycosylation and lectins. *Hum Immunol* (2009) **70**:308–12. doi:10.1016/j.humimm.2009.02.005
70. Hsu DK, Yang RY, Liu FT. Galectins in apoptosis. *Methods Enzymol* (2006) **417**:256–73. doi:10.1016/S0076-6879(06)17018-4
71. Hughes RC. Galectins as modulators of cell adhesion. *Biochimie* (2001) **83**:667–76. doi:10.1016/S0300-9084(01)01289-5
72. Leffler H, Carlsson S, Hedlund M, Qian Y, Poirier F. Introduction to galectins. *Glycoconj J* (2004) **19**:433–40. doi:10.1023/B:GLYC.0000014072.34840.04
73. Nakahara S, Raz A. On the role of galectins in signal transduction. *Methods Enzymol* (2006) **417**:273–89. doi:10.1016/S0076-6879(06)17019-6
74. Freire-de-Lima L, Oliveira IA, Neves JL, Penha LL, Alisson-Silva F, Dias WB, et al. Sialic acid: a sweet swing between mammalian host and *Trypanosoma cruzi*. *Front Immunol* (2012) **3**:356. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00356
75. Paris G, Ratier L, Amaya MF, Nguyen T, Alzari PM, Frasch AC. A sialidase mutant displaying trans-sialidase activity. *J Mol Biol* (2005) **345**:923–34. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2004.09.031
76. Sperandio M. Selectins and glycosyltransferases in leukocyte rolling in vivo. *FEBS J* (2006) **273**:4377–89. doi:10.1111/j.1742-4658.2006.05437.x
77. Pillai S, Netravali IA, Cariappa A, Mattoo H. Siglecs and immune regulation. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2012) **30**:357–92. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-020711-075018
78. Crocker PR, Redelinghuys P. Siglecs as positive and negative regulators of the immune system. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2008) **36**:1467–71. doi:10.1042/BST0361467
79. Liu Y, Chen GY, Zheng P. CD24-Siglec G/10 discriminates danger- from pathogen-associated molecular patterns. *Trends Immunol* (2009) **30**:557–61. doi:10.1016/j.it.2009.09.006
80. Hennet T, Chui D, Paulson JC, Marth JD. Immune regulation by the ST6Gal sialyltransferase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1998) **95**:4504–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.95.8.4504
81. Moody AM, North SJ, Reinhold B, Van Dyken SJ, Rogers ME, Panico M, et al. Sialic acid capping of CD8beta core 1-O-glycans controls thymocyte-major histocompatibility complex class I interaction. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**:7240–6. doi:10.1074/jbc.M210468200
82. Priatel JJ, Chui D, Hiraoka N, Simmons CJ, Richardson KB, Page DM, et al. The ST3Gal-I sialyltransferase controls CD8+ T lymphocyte homeostasis by modulating O-glycan biosynthesis. *Immunity* (2000) **12**:273–83. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80180-6
83. Powell LD, Sgroi D, Sjoberg ER, Stamenkovic I, Varki A. Natural ligands of the B cell adhesion molecule CD22 beta carry N-linked oligosaccharides with alpha-2,6-linked sialic acids that are required for recognition. *J Biol Chem* (1993) **268**:7019–27.
84. Ghosh S, Bandulet C, Nitschke L. Regulation of B cell development and B cell signalling by CD22 and its ligands alpha2,6-linked sialic acids. *Int Immunol* (2006) **18**:603–11. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxh402
85. Nasirikenari M, Chandrasekaran EV, Matta KL, Segal BH, Bogner PN, Lugade AA, et al. Altered eosinophil profile in mice with ST6Gal-1 deficiency: an additional role for ST6Gal-1 generated by the P1 promoter in regulating allergic inflammation. *J Leukoc Biol* (2010) **87**:457–66. doi:10.1189/jlb.1108704
86. Nasirikenari M, Segal BH, Ostberg JR, Urbasic A, Lau JT. Altered granulopoietic profile and exaggerated acute neutrophilic inflammation in mice with targeted deficiency in the sialyltransferase ST6Gal I. *Blood* (2006) **108**:3397–405. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-04-014779
87. Steinman RM, Adams JC, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. IV. Identification and distribution in mouse spleen. *J Exp Med* (1975) **141**:804–20.
88. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. I. Morphology, quantitation, tissue distribution. *J Exp Med* (1973) **137**:1142–62. doi:10.1084/jem.137.5.1142
89. Steinman RM, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. II. Functional properties in vitro. *J Exp Med* (1974) **139**:380–97. doi:10.1084/jem.139.2.380
90. Steinman RM, Lustig DS, Cohn ZA. Identification of a novel cell type in peripheral lymphoid organs of mice. III. Functional properties in vivo. *J Exp Med* (1974) **139**:1431–45. doi:10.1084/jem.139.6.1431
91. Steinman RM, Witmer MD. Lymphoid dendritic cells are potent stimulators of the primary mixed leukocyte reaction in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1978) **75**:5132–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.75.10.5132
92. Lutz MB, Kukutsch N, Ogilvie AL, Rossner S, Koch F, Romani N, et al. An advanced culture method for generating large quantities of highly pure dendritic cells from mouse bone marrow. *J Immunol Methods* (1999) **223**:77–92. doi:10.1016/S0022-1759(98)00204-X
93. Jenner J, Kerst G, Handgretinger R, Muller I. Increased alpha2,6-sialylation of surface proteins on tolerogenic, immature dendritic cells and regulatory T cells. *Exp Hematol* (2006) **34**:1212–8. doi:10.1016/j.exphem.2006.04.016
94. Trottein F, Schaffer L, Ivanov S, Paget C, Vendeville C, Cazet A, et al. Glycosyltransferase and sulfotransferase gene expression profiles in human monocytes, dendritic cells and macrophages. *Glycoconj J* (2009) **26**:1259–74. doi:10.1007/s10719-009-9244-y
95. Hemont C, Neel A, Heslan M, Braudeau C, Josien R. Human blood mDC subsets exhibit distinct TLR repertoire and responsiveness. *J Leukoc Biol* (2013) **93**:599–609. doi:10.1189/jlb.0912452
96. Crocker PR, McMillan SJ, Richards HE. CD33-related siglecs as potential modulators of inflammatory responses. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:102–11. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06449.x
97. Freeman SD, Kelm S, Barber EK, Crocker PR. Characterization of CD33 as a new member of the sialoadhesin family of cellular interaction molecules. *Blood* (1995) **85**:2005–12.
98. Crocker PR. Siglecs: sialic-acid-binding immunoglobulin-like lectins in cell-cell interactions and signalling. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* (2002) **12**:609–15. doi:10.1016/S0959-440X(02)00375-5
99. Santos L, Draves KE, Boton M, Grewal PK, Marth JD, Clark EA. Dendritic cell-dependent inhibition of B cell proliferation requires CD22. *J Immunol* (2008) **180**:4561–9.
100. Chen GY, Tang J, Zheng P, Liu Y. CD24 and Siglec-10 selectively repress tissue damage-induced immune responses. *Science* (2009) **323**:1722–5. doi:10.1126/science.1168988
101. Bax M, Kuijf ML, Heikema AP, van Rijs W, Bruijns SC, Garcia-Vallejo JJ, et al. *Campylobacter jejuni* lipooligosaccharides modulate dendritic cell-mediated T cell polarization in a sialic acid linkage-dependent manner. *Infect Immun* (2011) **79**:2681–9. doi:10.1128/IAI.00009-11
102. Avril T, Attrill H, Zhang J, Raper A, Crocker PR. Negative regulation of leucocyte functions by CD33-related siglecs. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2006) **34**:1024–7. doi:10.1042/BST0341024
103. Carlin AF, Lewis AL, Varki A, Nizet V. Group B streptococcal capsular sialic acids interact with siglecs (immunoglobulin-like lectins) on human leukocytes. *J Bacteriol* (2007) **189**:1231–7. doi:10.1128/JB.01155-06
104. Jones C, Virji M, Crocker PR. Recognition of sialylated meningococcal lipopolysaccharide by siglecs expressed on myeloid cells leads to enhanced bacterial uptake. *Mol Microbiol* (2003) **49**:1213–25. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2958.2003.03634.x
105. Khatua B, Ghoshal A, Bhattacharya K, Mandal C, Saha B, Crocker PR. Sialic acids acquired by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* are involved in reduced complement deposition and siglec mediated host-cell recognition. *FEBS Lett* (2010) **584**:555–61. doi:10.1016/j.febslet.2009.11.087
106. Biedermann B, Gil D, Bowen DT, Crocker PR. Analysis of the CD33-related siglec family reveals that Siglec-9 is an endocytic receptor expressed on subsets of acute myeloid leukemia cells and absent from normal hematopoietic progenitors. *Leuk Res* (2007) **31**:211–20. doi:10.1016/j.leukres.2006.05.026
107. Izquierdo-Useros N, Lorizate M, Puertas MC, Rodriguez-Plata MT, Zangger N, Erikson E, et al. Siglec-1 is a novel dendritic cell receptor that mediates HIV-1 trans-infection through recognition of viral membrane gangliosides. *PLoS Biol* (2012) **10**:e1001448. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.1001448
108. Severi E, Hood DW, Thomas GH. Sialic acid utilization by bacterial pathogens. *Microbiology* (2007) **153**:2817–22. doi:10.1099/mic.0.2007/009480-0
109. Lim JP, Gleeson PA. Macropinocytosis: an endocytic pathway for internalising large gulps. *Immunol Cell Biol* (2011) **89**:836–43. doi:10.1038/icb.2011.20
110. Nayak JV, Hokey DA, Larregina A, He Y, Salter RD, Watkins SC, et al. Phagocytosis induces lysosome remodeling and regulated presentation of particulate antigens by activated dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**:8493–503.

111. Cabral MG, Silva Z, Ligeiro D, Seixas E, Crespo H, Carrascal MA, et al. The phagocytic capacity and immunological potency of human dendritic cells is improved by α2,6-sialic acid deficiency. *Immunology* (2013) **138**:235–45. doi:10.1111/imm.12025
112. Garrett WS, Chen LM, Kroschewski R, Ebersold M, Turley S, Trombetta S, et al. Developmental control of endocytosis in dendritic cells by Cdc42. *Cell* (2000) **102**:325–34. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(00)00038-6
113. Platt CD, Ma JK, Chalouni C, Ebersold M, Bou-Reslan H, Carano RA, et al. Mature dendritic cells use endocytic receptors to capture and present antigens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2010) **107**:4287–92. doi:10.1073/pnas.0910609107
114. Austyn JM. New insights into the mobilization and phagocytic activity of dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* (1996) **183**:1287–92. doi:10.1084/jem.183.4.1287
115. Inaba K, Inaba M, Naito M, Steinman RM. Dendritic cell progenitors phagocytose particulates, including bacillus Calmette-Guerin organisms, and sensitize mice to mycobacterial antigens in vivo. *J Exp Med* (1993) **178**:479–88. doi:10.1084/jem.178.2.479
116. Shurin GV, Tourkova IL, Chatta GS, Schmidt G, Wei S, Djeu JY, et al. Small rho GTPases regulate antigen presentation in dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2005) **174**:3394–400.
117. Amith SR, Jayanth P, Franchuk S, Finlay T, Seyrantepe V, Beyaert R, et al. Neu1 desialylation of sialyl alpha-2,3-linked beta-galactosyl residues of TOLL-like receptor 4 is essential for receptor activation and cellular signaling. *Cell Signal* (2010) **22**:314–24. doi:10.1016/j.cellsig.2009.09.038
118. Seyrantepe V, Iannello A, Liang F, Kanshin E, Jayanth P, Samarani S, et al. Regulation of phagocytosis in macrophages by neuraminidase 1. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:206–15. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.055475
119. Watanabe Y, Shiratsuchi A, Shimizu K, Takizawa T, Nakanishi Y. Stimulation of phagocytosis of influenza virus-infected cells through surface desialylation of macrophages by viral neuraminidase. *Microbiol Immunol* (2004) **48**:875–81. doi:10.1111/j.1348-0421.2004.tb03619.x
120. Sperandio M, Gleissner CA, Ley K. Glycosylation in immune cell trafficking. *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:97–113. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00795.x
121. McEver RP. Selectins: lectins that initiate cell adhesion under flow. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* (2002) **14**:581–6. doi:10.1016/S0955-0674(02)00367-8
122. Patel KD, Moore KL, Nollert MU, McEver RP. Neutrophils use both shared and distinct mechanisms to adhere to selectins under static and flow conditions. *J Clin Invest* (1995) **96**:1887–96. doi:10.1172/JCI118234
123. Julien S, Grimshaw MJ, Sutton-Smith M, Coleman J, Morris HR, Dell A, et al. Sialyl-Lewis(x) on P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 is regulated during differentiation and maturation of dendritic cells: a mechanism involving the glycosyltransferases C2GnT1 and ST3Gal I. *J Immunol* (2007) **179**:5701–10.
124. Pendl GG, Robert C, Steinert M, Thanos R, Eytner R, Borges E, et al. Immature mouse dendritic cells enter inflamed tissue, a process that requires E- and P-selectin, but not P-selectin glycoprotein ligand 1. *Blood* (2002) **99**:946–56. doi:10.1182/blood.V99.3.946
125. Robert C, Fuhlbrigge RC, Kieffer JD, Ayehunie S, Hynes RO, Cheng G, et al. Interaction of dendritic cells with skin endothelium: a new perspective on immunosurveillance. *J Exp Med* (1999) **189**:627–36. doi:10.1084/jem.189.4.627
126. Silva Z, Tong Z, Guadalupe Cabral M, Martins C, Castro R, Reis C, et al. Sialyl Lewis(x)-dependent binding of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells to selectins. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2011) **409**:459–64. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2011.05.026
127. Urzainqui A, Martinez del Hoyo G, Lamana A, de la Fuente H, Barreiro O, Olazabal IM, et al. Functional role of P-selectin glycoprotein ligand 1/P-selectin interaction in the generation of tolerogenic dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2007) **179**:7457–65.
128. Foxall C, Watson SR, Dowbenko D, Fennie C, Lasky LA, Kiso M, et al. The three members of the selectin receptor family recognize a common carbohydrate epitope, the sialyl Lewis(x) oligosaccharide. *J Cell Biol* (1992) **117**:895–902. doi:10.1083/jcb.117.4.895
129. Marth JD, Grewal PK. Mammalian glycosylation in immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) **8**:874–87. doi:10.1038/nri2417
130. Kieffer JD, Fuhlbrigge RC, Armerding D, Robert C, Ferenczi K, Camphausen RT, et al. Neutrophils, monocytes, and dendritic cells express the same specialized form of PSGL-1 as do skin-homing memory T cells: cutaneous lymphocyte antigen. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2001) **285**:577–87. doi:10.1006/bbrc.2001.5230
131. Laszik Z, Jansen PJ, Cummings RD, Tedder TF, McEver RP, Moore KL. P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 is broadly expressed in cells of myeloid, lymphoid, and dendritic lineage and in some nonhematopoietic cells. *Blood* (1996) **88**:3010–21.
132. Frommhold D, Ludwig A, Bixel MG, Zarbock A, Babushkina I, Weissinger M, et al. Sialyltransferase ST3Gal-IV controls CXCR2-mediated firm leukocyte arrest during inflammation. *J Exp Med* (2008) **205**:1435–46. doi:10.1084/jem.20070846
133. Semel AC, Seales EC, Singhal A, Eklund EA, Colley KJ, Bellis SL. Hyposialylation of integrins stimulates the activity of myeloid fibronectin receptors. *J Biol Chem* (2002) **277**:32830–6. doi:10.1074/jbc.M202493200
134. Woodard-Grice AV, McBrayer AC, Wakefield JK, Zhuo Y, Bellis SL. Proteolytic shedding of ST6Gal-I by BACE1 regulates the glycosylation and function of alpha4beta1 integrins. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**:26364–73. doi:10.1074/jbc.M800836200
135. Rey-Gallardo A, Delgado-Martin C, Gerardy-Schahn R, Rodriguez-Fernandez JL, Vega MA. Polysialic acid is required for neuropilin-2a/b-mediated control of CCL21-driven chemotaxis of mature dendritic cells, and for their migration in vivo. *Glycobiology* (2011) **21**:655–62. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwq216
136. Ridolfi R, Riccobon A, Galassi R, Giorgetti G, Petrini M, Fiammenghi L, et al. Evaluation of in vivo labelled dendritic cell migration in cancer patients. *J Transl Med* (2004) **2**:27. doi:10.1186/1479-5876-2-27
137. Boog CJ, Neefjes JJ, Boes J, Ploegh HL, Melief CJ. Specific immune responses restored by alteration in carbohydrate chains of surface molecules on antigen-presenting cells. *Eur J Immunol* (1989) **19**:537–42. doi:10.1002/eji.1830190319
138. Dubsky P, Ueno H, Piqueras B, Connolly J, Banchereau J, Palucka AK. Human dendritic cell subsets for vaccination. *J Clin Immunol* (2005) **25**:551–72. doi:10.1007/s10875-005-8216-7
139. Swann JB, Smyth MJ. Immune surveillance of tumors. *J Clin Invest* (2007) **117**:1137–46. doi:10.1172/JCI31405
140. Banchereau J, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* (1998) **392**:245–52. doi:10.1038/32588
141. Condamine T, Gabrilovich DI. Molecular mechanisms regulating myeloid-derived suppressor cell differentiation and function. *Trends Immunol* (2011) **32**:19–25. doi:10.1016/j.it.2010.10.002
142. Rabinovich GA, Gabrilovich D, Sotomayor EM. Immunosuppressive strategies that are mediated by tumor cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2007) **25**:267–96. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141609
143. Benencia F, Sprague L, McGinty J, Pate M, Muccioli M. Dendritic cells the tumor microenvironment and the challenges for an effective antitumor vaccination. *J Biomed Biotechnol* (2012) **2012**:425476. doi:10.1155/2012/425476
144. Palucka K, Ueno H, Fay J, Banchereau J. Dendritic cells and immunity against cancer. *J Intern Med* (2011) **269**:64–73. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2796.2010.02317.x
145. Strioga M, Schijns V, Powell DJ Jr, Pasukoniene V, Dobrovolskiene N, Michalek J. Dendritic cells and their role in tumor immunosurveillance. *Innate Immun* (2013) **19**:98–111. doi:10.1177/1753425912449549
146. Saeland E, van Vliet SJ, Backstrom M, van den Berg VC, Geijtenbeek TB, Meijer GA, et al. The C-type lectin MGL expressed by dendritic cells detects glycan changes on MUC1 in colon carcinoma. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* (2007) **56**:1225–36. doi:10.1007/s00262-006-0274-z
147. Napoletano C, Rughetti A, Agervig Tarp MP, Coleman J, Bennett EP, Picco G, et al. Tumor-associated Tn-MUC1 glycoform is internalized through the macrophage galactose-type C-type lectin and delivered to the HLA class I and II compartments in dendritic cells. *Cancer Res* (2007) **67**:8358–67. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-1035
148. Ishida A, Ohta M, Toda M, Murata T, Usui T, Akita K, et al. Mucin-induced apoptosis of monocyte-derived dendritic cells during maturation. *Proteomics* (2008) **8**:3342–9. doi:10.1002/pmic.200800039
149. Ohta M, Ishida A, Toda M, Akita K, Inoue M, Yamashita K, et al. Immunomodulation of monocyte-derived dendritic cells through ligation of tumor-produced mucins to Siglec-9. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2010) **402**:663–9. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2010.10.079
150. Rughetti A, Pellicciotta I, Biffoni M, Backstrom M, Link T, Bennet EP, et al. Recombinant tumor-associated MUC1 glycoprotein impairs the differentiation and function of dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2005) **174**:7764–72.

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 30 September 2013; accepted: 15 December 2013; published online: 27 December 2013.
Citation: Crespo HJ, Lau JTY and Videira PA (2013) Dendritic cells: a spot on sialic acid. Front. Immunol. ***4****:491. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00491*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 18 June 2014
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00284

Microbe–host interactions are positively and negatively regulated by galectin–glycan interactions

Linda G. Baum[1]*, Omai B. Garner[1], Katrin Schaefer[1] and Benhur Lee[1,2]

[1] *Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, David Geffen School of Medicine at University of California Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA*
[2] *Department of Microbiology, Immunology and Molecular Genetics, David Geffen School of Medicine at University of California Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA*

Edited by:
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Giamila Fantuzzi, University of Illinois at Chicago, USA
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

***Correspondence:**
Linda G. Baum, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, 10833 Le Conte Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90095, USA
e-mail: LBaum@mednet.ucla.edu

Microbe–host interactions are complex processes that are directly and indirectly regulated by a variety of factors, including microbe presentation of specific molecular signatures on the microbial surface, as well as host cell presentation of receptors that recognize these pathogen signatures. Cell surface glycans are one important class of microbial signatures that are recognized by a variety of host cell lectins. Host cell lectins that recognize microbial glycans include members of the galectin family of lectins that recognize specific glycan ligands on viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites. In this review, we will discuss the ways that the interactions of microbial glycans with host cell galectins positively and negatively regulate pathogen attachment, invasion, and survival, as well as regulate host responses that mitigate microbial pathogenesis.

Keywords: galectin, cell surface glycans, microbial pathogen, virus, bacteria

INTRODUCTION

Lectins are proteins that recognize glycan ligands. In mammalian hosts, different types of endogenous lectins can bind to self glycans, e.g., selectins that tether circulating leukocytes to the endothelium or siglecs that regulates signaling in leukocytes by binding to cell surface glycoprotein receptors (1–4). Also in mammalian hosts, various types of lectins can recognize glycans that are typically found on pathogens, but not on host cells, such as mannose binding protein and dectin-1 that bind high mannose and β-glucan ligands, respectively, on yeast (5–8). Thus, these types of lectins have been grouped in the category of pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) that bind pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) expressed exclusively on microbes (9, 10).

However, it is becoming increasingly clear that there are several lectins that cannot be exclusively segregated into either category of lectins that only recognize self or lectins that only recognize non-self. These include some C-type lectins, such as DC-SIGN, DCIR, and the macrophage mannose receptor, that can recognize both host and microbial glycans (11–13). Similarly, several members of the galectin family can recognize both host and microbial glycans (14–17). Many C-type lectins and galectins are considered to be components of the innate immune response to pathogens, because binding of these lectins to microbial glycans can either directly or indirectly promote host defense, by triggering leukocyte activation, phagocytosis, complement fixation, and cytokine production (7, 8, 14). However, some of these same lectins can also enhance microbial infection of different hosts, an effect that would seem to be counter-intuitive if lectins are considered to act solely as host defense molecules (7, 17). Thus, the effects of specific lectins as pro-microbe or pro-host must always be considered in a context-dependent manner.

This review will examine roles of galectin family members in both promoting microbial infection and enhancing host resistance to infection. The galectins are a family of lectins with a common carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD), and are found in all multicellular organisms, including fungi, nematodes, insects, and vertebrates. Importantly, all galectins are either bivalent or can multimerize into dimers, pentamers, and higher order oligomers; the multivalency of galectins allows these molecules to bind multiple glycan ligands on either the same cell or on opposing cells, or, in some cases, on microbes and host cells (14, 15, 18).

In many organisms, galectins have been described as participating in recognition and defense against microbial pathogens. Several recent reviews have addressed the indirect effects of galectins on microbial pathogenesis through regulation of innate and adaptive immunity, e.g., promoting dendritic cell maturation and migration, enhancing cytokine production, or initiating release of intracellular mediators such as histamine (14, 15, 19–21). In contrast, we will specifically address mechanisms by which galectins directly interact with microbial pathogens to effect three distinct outcomes – enhancement of microbial infection, blockade of microbial infection, or microbicidal activity (**Figure 1**).

GALECTINS PROMOTE MICROBIAL INFECTION

The best-described role for galectins in microbial infections is to promote pathogen attachment to or entry into host cells. As galectins are typically multivalent, galectins can bind to glycan ligands on both the microbial pathogen and the host plasma membrane to "bridge" the microbe to the target cell. This effect has been described for viruses, bacteria, and parasites.

Sato and colleagues demonstrated that galectin-1 can promote HIV-1 infection of human T cells and macrophages by promoting viral adsorption to the target cells (22, 23). This effect was specific for galectin-1, as galectin-3 did not enhance HIV-1 infection of T cells or macrophages. Moreover, galectin-1 promoted viral attachment, but did not affect fusion, supporting the "bridging" function

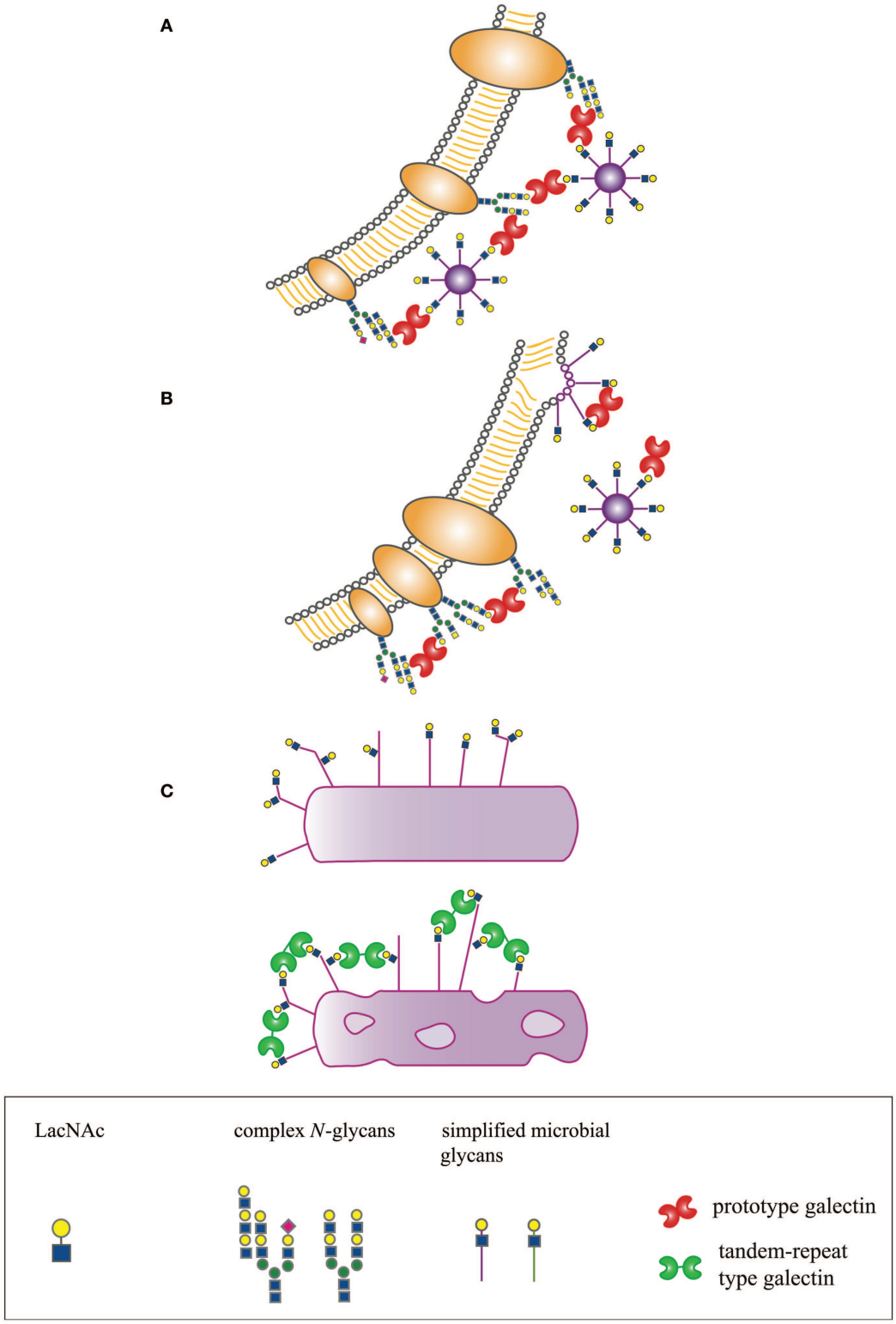


FIGURE 1 | Host-derived galectins can positively and negatively regulate microbe–host interactions. **(A)** Galectins can promote microbial attachment to and infection of host cells by bridging pathogen glycans to host cell surface glycans. **(B)** Galectins can inhibit microbial attachment and infection by binding to host or microbial glycans and blocking molecular interactions essential for microbial binding and entry, or by binding to glycans on nascent microbes, such as budding viruses, and preventing proper structural assembly. **(C)** Galectins can be directly microbicidal, an effect regulated by expression of specific glycan ligands on the pathogen surface.

of galectin-1 in this context. Glycoprotein receptors for galectin-1 have been proposed to be gp120 on the virus and CD4 on the host cells. However, galectin-1 can also bind to CD43 and CD45 on T cells (24, 25); these large glycoproteins are very abundant on the plasma membrane of these cells, and may also contribute to adsorption of virus to target cells. In addition, it is known that budding viral particles can incorporate host cell glycoproteins in the viral envelope, raising the possibility that host cell glycoproteins such as CD45 on the viral envelope may also contribute to galectin-1 binding (26). A similar mechanism of galectin-1 bridging virus to host target cells has recently been observed by our labs for the Nipah virus. Galectin-1 binds to specific glycans on viral envelope glycoproteins and on the target cell plasma membrane to increase adsorption of virus to target cells, resulting in increased efficiency of infection of target cells (Garner et al., in preparation).

Our labs also found that HIV infection of target cells was promoted by another galectin family member, galectin-9 (27). However, in this case, enhanced infection was not achieved by direct "bridging" of the virus to target T cells. Rather, galectin-9 regulated the redox environment at the T cell surface by retaining the thioreductase protein disulfide isomerase (PDI) on the cell surface; as reduced forms of both the viral Env glycoprotein gp120 and the T cell counterreceptor CD4 promote viral entry, the enhancing effect was likely due to the reducing environment created by galectin-9 retention of PDI.

Both galectin-1 and -3 have been implicated in increasing target cell infection with human T cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) (28). As described for HIV, galectin-1 was found to stabilize attachment of HTLV-1 to human T cells, resulting in increased efficiency of infection as well as increased fusion of HTLV-1 infected cells. Galectin-3 was also found to increase T cell infection by HTLV-1, although the proposed mechanism differs from the direct bridging of virus to host cell that has been proposed for galectin-1 and HTLV-1. HTLV-1 forms extracellular viral assemblies, and the attachment of these viral assemblies to host T cells is promoted by extracellular matrix proteins such as agrin and collagen, as well as by cell surface proteins including galectin-3. Unlike the HIV envelope glycoprotein, the HTLV-1 env protein is poorly glycosylated, so that galectin-3 may bind to these viral assemblies via recognition of glycans on T cell-derived glycoproteins in these supramolecular aggregates (29). However, in both cases, the galectin-mediated interaction results in increased infection of human T cells with HTLV-1.

A similar bridging function has been proposed for galectin-3 in promoting infection of human corneal epithelial cells by herpes simplex virus (HSV)-1 (30). Galectin-3 specifically bound to HSV-1 in a carbohydrate-dependent manner, but did not bind the highly related HSV-2, indicating that specific glycans on viral envelope glycoproteins are determinants of galectin-3 recognition. Reduction of galectin-3 expression on corneal keratinocytes reduced HSV-1 binding and infection of the cells, indicating that galectin-3 can directly promote HSV-1 infection of target cells.

Direct bridging of pathogen to host target cells has also been described for enhancement of bacterial adhesion to host cells by galectins. Galectin-3 specifically increased binding of *Neisseria meningitidis* to human monocytes and macrophages, but not to nasopharyngeal epithelial cells (31). Galectin-3 bound *N. meningitidis* lipopolysaccharide (LPS) that bears terminal LacNAc sequences, a preferred glycan ligand for galectin-3. Full-length galectin-3 was required for this effect; as proteolytic removal of the N-terminal multimerization domain abrogated the enhanced binding, this implied that galectin-3 must multimerize for enhancement to occur. In addition, galectin-3 null mice demonstrated reduced levels of bacteremia, compared to wildtype mice, after challenge with live *N. meningitidis*, further implicating galectin-3 in promoting bacterial infection of host cells. Similarly, LPS from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* also bound galectin-3; galectin-3 is produced by human corneal epithelial cells, a target of *P. aeruginosa* infection. Antibodies specific for either the outer core region of *P. aeruginosa* LPS or for galectin-3 blocked binding of bacteria to cultured human corneal epithelial cells, implicating galectin-3 in corneal infection and development of bacterial keratitis (32).

Numerous studies have also found roles for galectins in bridging parasite pathogens to host cells. *Leishmania major* can bind both galectin-3 and -9 (33, 34). Galectin-9 binding to polygalactose epitopes on *L. major* lipophosphoglycans promotes binding of the parasite to macrophages; specific galectin-9 receptors on the target cells were not identified, although the authors proposed that other macrophage lectins, such as the macrophage mannose receptor, may be involved. In contrast to galectin-9, galectin-3 binds *L. major* but this resulted in proteolytic cleavage of galectin-3 and did not promote binding of *L. major* to macrophages. As the N-terminal domain of galectin-3 regulates multimerization and the C-terminal domain of galectin-3 contains the CRD (15), cleaved galectin-3 would be unable to multimerize; thus, galectin-3 could not tether the parasite to host cells, because the bridging effect relies on the multivalency of galectins.

Intriguingly, galectin-mediated bridging of *L. major* to host cells is also important at another point in the parasite life cycle. Valenzuela and co-workers found that a galectin homolog in the midgut of the sand fly *Phlebotomus papatasi* participates in binding of *L. major* at the procyclic phase to gut epithelial cells during infection of this obligate insect host (35). The *L. major* parasite replicates in the sandfly midgut and differentiates into the metacyclic phase that is highly infectious to mammalian hosts and is transmitted during insect bites. Differentiation into the metacyclic phase coincides with alterations in the parasite lipophosphoglycans that reduce binding to the sandfly galectin and allow release of the parasite from the insect gut epithelial cells. Thus, changes in the parasite surface glycoconjugates can promote or reduce binding to various types of galectins in both insect and human hosts at different points during the *L. major* life cycle.

Galectin-3 has also been implicated in enhancing infection of human host cells by the parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi*. Galectin-3 bound to the surface of *T. cruzi* trypomastigotes and exogenous galectin-3 enhanced binding of the parasite to human coronary artery smooth muscle cells. In addition, reducing expression of endogenous galectin-3 by these cells dramatically reduced *T. cruzi* adhesion (36). Galectin-3 also promoted binding of *T. cruzi* to extracellular matrix proteins such as laminin (37). As

T. cruzi infection increases expression of ECM components such as laminin by host cells, the parasite may use the bridging function of galectin-3 to accumulate in the basement membranes surrounding host target cells such as cardiac myoblasts, thus increasing the likelihood of infection (38).

Most work on the roles of galectins in promoting microbial infection has focused on galectins-1, -3, and -9, that are highly expressed by cells of the immune system as well as endothelial cells and many types of epithelial cells. Other galectins have a more restricted expression pattern; for example, galectin-7 is expressed by squamous epithelial cells. Okumura et al. investigated attachment factors that would promote infection of cervical epithelial cells by *Trichomonas vaginalis* (39). This group found that galectin-1, but not galectin-7, bound to *T. vaginalis*, although both galectins were expressed by cervical epithelial cells. Addition of exogenous galectin-1, but not galectin-7, also enhanced parasite binding to cervical epithelial cells, while reducing expression of endogenous galectin-1 in these cells via siRNA decreased parasite binding. Thus, as has been found for several of the pathogens described above, there is specific binding of one or more distinct galectin family members to different microbial pathogens, demonstrating the unique functions of different galectins at discrete points during infection.

GALECTINS BLOCK MICROBIAL INFECTION

While it is clear that several galectins can bind to microbial glycans to bridge the microbes to host target cells, galectin binding to microbial glycans does not always result in a pro-microbe effect; a microbial glycoprotein that may be available for host attachment may, at another point in the microbial lifecycle, be a liability when galectin binding prevents microbial dissemination. An example of this dichotomy is the interaction of galectin-1 with the NiV–F fusion protein. As described above, binding of galectin-1 to Nipah virus envelope glycoproteins can enhance infection of target endothelial cells by bridging the virus to host plasma membrane glycoproteins (Garner et al., in preparation). However, post-infection, the fusion-promoting activity of the NiV–F protein has a pathogenic effect beyond facilitating viral entry. Endothelial cells infected with Nipah virus and thus expressing NiV–F at the plasma membrane fuse with one another to form giant syncytia; *in vivo*, this process leads to endothelial cell disruption and death and is a primary cause of the hemorrhagic diathesis seen in Nipah virus infection (40–42).

Galectin-1 binding to NiV–F expressed at the plasma membrane prevented cell syncytia formation by three distinct mechanisms. First, NiV–F initially appears at the plasma membrane as an immature precursor that must be endocytosed and proteolytically cleaved intracellularly; the cleaved, mature form recycles to the plasma membrane and is fusion-competent. However, galectin-1 binding to the immature NiV–F protein retards this essential endocytosis step and thus results in decreased production of fusion-competent NiV–F. Second, optimal membrane fusion requires lateral movement of NiV–F on the plasma membrane; however, galectin-1 binding to NiV–F reduces this lateral movement and thus reduces the extent of syncytia formation. Third, NiV–F must undergo a conformational change to effect the membrane mixing required for fusion, and galectin-1 binding inhibits this conformational change of NiV–F. While the NiV–F glycoprotein has five *N*-glycan attachment sites, one particular glycan, the F3 glycan, on NiV–F contributed significantly to all three of these inhibitory effects, i.e., the inhibitory effects of galectin-1 on NiV–F maturation, movement, and conformational changes were reduced when the F3 site was mutagenized to remove the *N*-glycan (40, 42). As the NiV–F3 glycan was also important for the bridging effect that enhances NiV entry into endothelial cells (Garner et al., in preparation), this demonstrates that the same galectin–glycan interaction that can promote viral entry at an early time point during infection can reduce the pathophysiological effect of viral infection at a later time point.

Finally, the presence of galectin-1 during viral budding reduced the production of Nipah virus particles from infected endothelial cells (42). While it is not yet clear whether this effect resulted specifically and directly from binding of galectin-1 to viral envelope glycoproteins NiV–F or NiV–G, or whether binding of host plasma membrane glycoproteins by galectin-1 disrupts efficient viral budding, this observation reinforces the point that the same lectin, galectin-1, can have a pro-viral or anti-viral effect, depending on the timing and context of galectin binding to viral glycoproteins.

Another example of a galectin directly blocking microbial infection is described in the study by Shiau and colleagues (43); this group found that galectin-1 can bind directly to envelope glycoproteins of influenza virus, an effect that impaired virus infection of target cells *in vitro*. In addition to demonstrating this protective effect of galectin-1 *in vitro*, the authors described increased expression of galectin-1 in airway epithelia *in vivo* in a murine model of influenza virus infection. Moreover, intranasal administration of recombinant galectin-1 during influenza virus infection reduced viral load and accompanying inflammation, tissue damage, and mortality in the murine model, and galectin-1 null mice were more susceptible to influenza infection than wildtype mice.

While not directly blocking viral entry, the Panjwani and Argüeso labs found that galectin-3 can bind to ocular mucins to contribute to the barrier function of ocular mucins in preventing infection. Thus, while galectin-3 can bind to HSV-1 to promote viral entry into epithelial cells, as described above (30), galectin-3 also contributes to reducing HSV-1 entry by organizing cell surface mucins to maintain mucosal barrier function in the eye (30, 44), providing another example of a galectin having both infection-promoting and infection-reducing effects for a particular microbial pathogen.

Numerous studies have implicated galectins in promoting a protective innate or adaptive immune response to pathogens, although many of the studies have described effects that do not directly involve binding of the pathogen to a galectin. However, Schwarz and colleagues have demonstrated that the glycophosphatidylinositol (GPIs) on the surface of *Toxoplasma gondii* can bind directly to galectin-3 on the surface of macrophages (45). The binding of these parasite GPIs to cell surface galectin-3, which associates with TLR2, is essential for TLR2-mediated production of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) α by the macrophages. As TNFα is a critical cytokine that promotes parasite clearance, the direct

interaction of galectin-3 and *T. gondii* GPIs is an important initial step to reduce the extent of infection.

Finally, several studies have proposed that galectins in the gastrointestinal tract can participate in the organization of mucins into a protective layer that impedes access of microbial pathogens to the host epithelium, implying an indirect role for galectins in reducing microbial invasion. Galectin-4, a galectin that is highly expressed in gut epithelial cells and has been shown to organize epithelial plasma membrane domains by binding to specific glycoproteins and glycolipids, can bind directly to epithelial glycolipids that are receptors for pathogens such as *Bordetella pertussis* and *Helicobacter pylori*. This observation gave rise to the hypothesis that galectin-4 may directly impede the ability of bacterial pathogens to attach to glycolipid receptors and infect host epithelium (46, 47). Experimentally, such a role has been shown for the *Caenorhabditis elegans* galectin LEC8, which has significant homology to mammalian galectins and, like galectin-4, binds glycolipids. Ideo et al. found that LEC8 is expressed in the *C. elegans* digestive tract, and that LEC8 directly blocked infection of the worms with *Escherichia coli*. Moreover, LEC8-deficient animals were more susceptible to *E. coli* infection compared to wildtype worms (48). Thus, depending on the availability of specific microbial glycoprotein receptors for galectins, the anatomic localization of galectin expression, and the timing of galectin expression during infection, galectins may block pathogen binding to and entry into target cells, rather than enhance binding as described in the previous section.

GALECTINS HAVE ANTI-MICROBIAL ACTIVITY

Galectins are evolutionarily ancient molecules found in multicellular fungi, nematodes, and insects as well as vertebrates. Thus, in addition to interfering with pathogen attachment or entry into host cells, as described above, galectins can act as "danger receptors" by either enhancing cytokine production or phagocytic clearance of pathogens by cells of the innate immune system, or by having direct microbicidal activity.

Early work described galectins associating with microbial pathogens in phagocytic vesicles, such as the association of galectin-3 with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in macrophage vesicles (49). While a direct anti-microbial mechanism was not determined in this study, galectin-3 null mice had a reduced capacity to clear *M. tuberculosis* late in infection, suggesting that galectin-3 had anti-microbial activity.

A more specific role for galectins in phagocytic clearance of pathogens was recently described for galectin-8 in defense against *Salmonella typhimurium*. *Salmonella* bacteria invade epithelial cells and initially reside in a specialized vacuole. The bacteria generate pores in these vacuoles, damaging the integrity of the vesicle membrane, which allows the bacteria to access the cytosol but also releases "danger signals" that initiate autophagy by the cells to contain the spread of infection. Galectins-1, -3, -8, and -9 are all recruited to vesicles damaged by endocytosed bacteria, and have all been proposed to participate as "danger-sensing" molecules; however, specific actions of galectin-1, -3, and -9 in controlling bacterial damage have not been elucidated. However, Randow and colleagues found that cytosolic galectin-8 is a specific and critical component for activation of autophagy in cells infected with *S. typhimurium* (50). This group has proposed that cytosolic galectin-8 is recruited to the sites of damaged vacuoles by binding to glycan ligands on glycoproteins displayed on the interior face of the vacuoles, although this remains to be definitively demonstrated. Cells lacking galectin-8 failed to recruit other molecular components to the damaged vesicles to initiate autophagy, demonstrating a role for galectin-8 in initiating this critical anti-microbial defense. Randow and colleagues also found that intracellular galectin-8 was recruited to damaged endosomes and lysosomes during infection with *Listeria monocytogenes* or *Shigella flexneri*, as well as during sterile vesicular damage, indicating that galectin-8 is a general component in the autophagy-initiating machinery.

As mentioned above, other galectins have been found associated with endocytosed or phagocytosed pathogens. A direct role for galectin-3 in the phagocytosis of helminths such as *Schistosoma mansoni* has been proposed (51). Galectin-3 can bind GalNAc–β1,4-GlcNAc (LacdiNAc) sequences found on the surface of helminths, and can also bind LacdiNAc ligands that are components of *S. mansoni* soluble egg antigen. Addition of recombinant galectin-3 enhanced recognition and phagocytosis of LacdiNAc-coated beads by rat macrophages, and galectin-3 was abundantly expressed *in vivo* in granulomata containing *Schistosoma* eggs in infected hamsters. Thus, galectin-3 has been proposed to play an important role in the uptake and immunologic "containment" of parasites within granulomata.

A role for galectin-3 in phagocytosis of yeast has also been shown. The yeasts *Candida albicans* and *Candida parapsilosis* can be phagocytosed by macrophages and neutrophils. Bliss and colleagues found that galectin-3 secreted by neutrophils was important for effective phagocytosis of yeast by neutrophils; adding blocking antibody to galectin-3 reduced phagocytosis, while addition of exogenous galectin-3 increased phagocytosis (52). Thus, in neutrophils, galectin-3 appears to act at an early point in the yeast recognition and engulfment process to enhance uptake of fungal pathogens. In contrast, an indirect role for galectin-3 in anti-fungal immunity has also been proposed, as galectin-3 has been found to be important for production of the cytokine TNF-α by macrophages exposed to *C. albicans*. Using a murine macrophage cell line, Fink and colleagues found that galectin-3 was not essential for fungal uptake, but that galectin-3 associated with Dectin-1, a C-type lectin that specifically recognizes fungal β1,3-glucan in the fungal wall and directly mediated fungal uptake; loss of galectin-3 expression in these cells did not reduce fungal uptake, but reduced TNF-α production (53). Similarly, Poulain and colleagues found that, while galectin-3 can bind specific β1,2-mannosides on *C. albicans* mannoproteins, *C. albicans* uptake by human monocyte-derived macrophages required TLR2 but not galectin-3; however, galectin-3 associated with TLR2 in macrophages that had phagocytosed yeast, and galectin-3 expression by the macrophages was essential for optimal TNF-α production after yeast phagocytosis (54).

In addition to promoting phagocytic uptake or autophagic destruction of bacteria, fungi, and parasites, galectins have been shown to have direct microbicidal activity. As mentioned above, galectin-3 can recognize specific fungal mannosides on *C. albicans*. In examining the binding of galectin-3 to intact, live *C.*

albicans, Kohatsu et al. observed that galectin-3 binding was directly fungicidal (55). The effect was dependent on galectin-3 binding to specific glycan ligands on the yeast, and the fungicidal effect was only seen with *Candida* species that expressed specific β1,2-oligomannans. Galectin-3 binding to susceptible yeast resulted in morphologic changes, including cell shrinkage and increased intracellular granularity. Cell death was confirmed by a number of assays, and direct fungicidal, rather than fungistatic, activity was confirmed. While the mechanism of fungal death has not been precisely determined, galectin-3 binding appeared to directly damage the integrity of the cell membrane, given the observed cell shrinkage and uptake of a fluorescent dye that would be excluded by intact cells.

A direct microbicidal effect was also demonstrated for galectin-4 and -8 in the killing of *E. coli* that express the blood group B glycans on the cell surface (56). Unlike the autophagy-promoting activity of intracellular galectin-8 described above (50), addition of either galectin-4 or -8 to susceptible *E. coli* strains in the absence of any host cells resulted in rapid killing of the bacteria, as demonstrated by loss of membrane integrity and failure of the bacteria to divide. The complement-independent, rapid, and direct damage to the bacterial membrane is reminiscent of the activity of galectin-3 on susceptible *Candida* species, described above. As with *Candida*, the mechanism of bacterial death triggered by galectin binding has not been determined; however, it is tempting to speculate that the cross-linking of numerous glycoprotein or glycolipids on the pathogen surface by galectin binding results in physical changes or mechanical stresses to the surface or interior of the pathogen that compromise cellular integrity. Stowell and colleagues propose that the ability of galectins-4 and -8 to directly kill bacteria is part of an innate immune function of galectins, providing an important line of defense against gastrointestinal pathogens.

While not a mammalian defense against microbial pathogens, another form of microbicidal activity by galectins has been described for the conger eel (57). This organism expresses two galectin family members, congerin I and II, in the digestive tract. In eels infected with parasitic *Cucullanus* nematodes, these galectins mediate adhesion of nematodes to peritoneal cells that encapsulate and sequester the parasites. This effect may be similar to the effect of mammalian galectin-3 sequestering *Schistosoma* eggs in granulomata in mammalian hosts; while not directly microbicidal, the effect of encapsulation or sequestering of microbial pathogens prevents pathogen replication and protects the host.

CONCLUSION

Galectins have been described as PRRs that can discriminate microbial glycans from host glycans, and as danger receptors that can participate in innate immune defense. These are certainly functions of the galectins, but it is becoming increasingly clear that galectins can bind both host and microbial glycans; thus, assuming that there is a non-overlapping dichotomy of pathogen vs. host glycans is not valid. Rather, galectins bind a variety of glycans in a context-dependent manner on both microbes and on mammalian cells (58). Moreover, the outcome of binding can be quite variable, both promoting infection and blocking infection, and both directly killing microbes and initiating immune responses; as pathogens evolve in this environment of host glycans and host galectins, microbes may adapt by exploiting these host features to enhance infection or evade an immune response (59–62). This broad array of functional outcomes does not reflect a lack of specificity of the galectins, but rather emphasizes that specific responses are dependent on both the pathogen and the host cell and are determined by factors such as glycan density, glycan clustering, glycan presentation on specific glycoproteins and glycolipids, and interactions with other cell surface molecules, all of which are features that define unique cellular landscapes in which the galectins act. Thus, as more examples of galectin–microbe interactions are discovered, it may be possible to begin to define features of the galectins and glycans that would predict the outcome of a particular binding event. As galectins are evolutionarily ancient molecules, predating vertebrate innate and adaptive immunity, it is not surprising that these lectins have evolved into a large family with a wide range of context-specific functions.

REFERENCES

1. Telen MJ. Cellular adhesion and the endothelium: E-selectin, L-selectin, and pan-selectin inhibitors. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* (2014) **28**:341–54. doi:10.1016/j.hoc.2013.11.010
2. Varki A, Gagneux P. Multifarious roles of sialic acids in immunity. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:16–36. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06517.x
3. Paulson JC, Macauley MS, Kawasaki N. Siglecs as sensors of self in innate and adaptive immune responses. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:37–48. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06362.x
4. Klaas M, Crocker PR. Sialoadhesin in recognition of self and non-self. *Semin Immunopathol* (2012) **34**:353–64. doi:10.1007/s00281-012-0310-3
5. Degn SE, Thiel S. Humoral pattern recognition and the complement system. *Scand J Immunol* (2013) **78**:181–93. doi:10.1111/sji.12070
6. Ip WK, Takahashi K, Ezekowitz RA, Stuart LM. Mannose-binding lectin and innate immunity. *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:9–21. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00789.x
7. van den Berg LM, Gringhuis SI, Geijtenbeek TB. An evolutionary perspective on C-type lectins in infection and immunity. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:149–58. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06392.x
8. Goodridge HS, Wolf AJ, Underhill DM. Beta-glucan recognition by the innate immune system. *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:38–50. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00793.x
9. Mahla RS, Reddy MC, Prasad DV, Kumar H. Sweeten PAMPs: role of sugar complexed PAMPs in innate immunity and vaccine biology. *Front Immunol* (2013) **4**:248. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00248
10. Davicino RC, Eliçabe RJ, Di Genaro MS, Rabinovich GA. Coupling pathogen recognition to innate immunity through glycan-dependent mechanisms. *Int Immunopharmacol* (2011) **11**:1457–63. doi:10.1016/j.intimp.2011.05.002
11. Garcia-Vallejo JJ, van Kooyk Y. The physiological role of DC-SIGN: a tale of mice and men. *Trends Immunol* (2013) **34**:482–6. doi:10.1016/j.it.2013.03.001
12. Kerscher B, Willment JA, Brown GD. The dectin-2 family of C-type lectin-like receptors: an update. *Int Immunol* (2013) **25**:271–7. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxt006
13. Martinez-Pomares L. The mannose receptor. *J Leukoc Biol* (2012) **92**:1177–86. doi:10.1189/jlb.0512231
14. Chen HY, Weng IC, Hong MH, Liu FT. Galectins as bacterial sensors in the host innate response. *Curr Opin Microbiol* (2014) **17C**:75–81. doi:10.1016/j.mib.2013.11.006
15. Vasta GR, Ahmed H, Nita-Lazar M, Banerjee A, Pasek M, Shridhar S, et al. Galectins as self/non-self recognition receptors in innate and adaptive immunity: an unresolved paradox. *Front Immunol* (2012) **13**:199. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00199
16. Dam TK, Brewer CF. Lectins as pattern recognition molecules: the effects of epitope density in innate immunity. *Glycobiology* (2010) **20**:270–9. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwp186
17. Sato S, St-Pierre C, Bhaumik P, Nieminen J. Galectins in innate immunity: dual functions of host soluble beta-galactoside-binding lectins as damage-associated

molecular patterns (DAMPs) and as receptors for pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). *Immunol Rev* (2009) **230**:172–87. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00790.x

18. Garner OB, Baum LG. Galectin–glycan lattices regulate cell-surface glycoprotein organization and signaling. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2008) **36**:1472–7. doi:10.1042/BST0361472
19. Cedeno-Laurent F, Dimitroff CJ. Galectins and their ligands: negative regulators of anti-tumor immunity. *Glycoconj J* (2012) **29**:619–25. doi:10.1007/s10719-012-9379-0
20. Rabinovich GA, Croci DO. Regulatory circuits mediated by lectin–glycan interactions in autoimmunity and cancer. *Immunity* (2012) **36**:322–35. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.03.004
21. Liu FT, Yang RY, Hsu DK. Galectins in acute and chronic inflammation. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:80–91. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06386.x
22. Sato S, Ouellet M, St-Pierre C, Tremblay MJ. Galectins, glycans and HIV infection. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) **1253**:133–48. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06475.x
23. St-Pierre C, Manya H, Ouellet M, Clark GF, Endo T, Tremblay MJ, et al. Host-soluble galectin-1 promotes HIV-1 replication through a direct interaction with glycans of viral gp120 and host CD4. *J Virol* (2011) **85**:11742–51. doi:10.1128/JVI.05351-11
24. Earl LA, Bi S, Baum LG. N- and O-glycans modulate galectin-1 binding, CD45 signaling, and T cell death. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:2232–44. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.066191
25. Hernandez JD, Nguyen JT, He J, Wang W, Ardman B, Green JM, et al. Galectin-1 binds different CD43 glycoforms to cluster CD43 and regulate T cell death. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**:5328–36. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.8.5328
26. Krishnamoorthy L, Bess JW Jr., Preston AB, Nagashima K, Mahal LK. HIV-1 and microvesicles from T cells share a common glycome, arguing for a common origin. *Nat Chem Biol* (2009) **5**:244–50. doi:10.1038/nchembio.151
27. Bi S, Hong PW, Lee B, Baum LG. Galectin-9 binding to cell surface protein disulfide isomerase regulates the redox environment to enhance T-cell migration and HIV entry. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) **108**:10650–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.1017954108
28. Gauthier S, Pelletier I, Ouellet M, Vargas A, Tremblay MJ, Sato S, et al. Induction of galectin-1 expression by HTLV-1 Tax and its impact on HTLV-1 infectivity. *Retrovirology* (2008) **5**:105. doi:10.1186/1742-4690-5-105
29. Pais-Correia AM, Sachse M, Guadagnini S, Robbiati V, Lasserre R, Gessain A, et al. Biofilm-like extracellular viral assemblies mediate HTLV-1 cell-to-cell transmission at virological synapses. *Nat Med* (2010) **16**:83–9. doi:10.1038/nm.2065
30. Woodward AM, Mauris J, Argüeso P. Binding of transmembrane mucins to galectin-3 limits herpesvirus 1 infection of human corneal keratinocytes. *J Virol* (2013) **87**:5841–7. doi:10.1128/JVI.00166-13
31. Quattroni P, Li Y, Lucchesi D, Lucas S, Hood DW, Herrmann M, et al. Galectin-3 binds *Neisseria meningitidis* and increases interaction with phagocytic cells. *Cell Microbiol* (2012) **14**:1657–75. doi:10.1111/j.1462-5822.2012.01838.x
32. Gupta SK, Masinick S, Garrett M, Hazlett LD. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* lipopolysaccharide binds galectin-3 and other human corneal epithelial proteins. *Infect Immun* (1997) **65**:2747–53.
33. Pelletier I, Sato S. Specific recognition and cleavage of galectin-3 by *Leishmania major* through species-specific polygalactose epitope. *J Biol Chem* (2002) **277**:17663–70. doi:10.1074/jbc.M201562200
34. Pelletier I, Hashidate T, Urashima T, Nishi N, Nakamura T, Futai M, et al. Specific recognition of *Leishmania major* poly-beta-galactosyl epitopes by galectin-9: possible implication of galectin-9 in interaction between *L. major* and host cells. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**:22223–30. doi:10.1074/jbc.M302693200
35. Kamhawi S, Ramalho-Ortigao M, Pham VM, Kumar S, Lawyer PG, Turco SJ, et al. A role for insect galectins in parasite survival. *Cell* (2004) **119**:329–41. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2004.10.009
36. Kleshchenko YY, Moody TN, Furtak VA, Ochieng J, Lima MF, Villalta F. Human galectin-3 promotes *Trypanosoma cruzi* adhesion to human coronary artery smooth muscle cells. *Infect Immun* (2004) **72**:6717–21. doi:10.1128/IAI.72.11.6717-6721.2004
37. Nde PN, Lima MF, Johnson CA, Pratap S, Villalta F. Regulation and use of the extracellular matrix by *Trypanosoma cruzi* during early infection. *Front Immunol* (2012) **3**:337. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00337
38. Villalta F, Scharfstein J, Ashton AW, Tyler KM, Guan F, Mukherjee S, et al. Perspectives on the *Trypanosoma cruzi*-host cell receptor interactions. *Parasitol Res* (2009) **104**:1251–60. doi:10.1007/s00436-009-1383-3
39. Okumura CY, Baum LG, Johnson PJ. Galectin-1 on cervical epithelial cells is a receptor for the sexually transmitted human parasite *Trichomonas vaginalis*. *Cell Microbiol* (2008) **10**:2078–90. doi:10.1111/j.1462-5822.2008.01190.x
40. Levroney EL, Aguilar HC, Fulcher JA, Kohatsu L, Pace KE, Pang M, et al. Novel innate immune functions for galectin-1: galectin-1 inhibits cell fusion by Nipah virus envelope glycoproteins and augments dendritic cell secretion of proinflammatory cytokines. *J Immunol* (2005) **175**:413–20. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.175.1.413
41. Negrete OA, Levroney EL, Aguilar HC, Bertolotti-Ciarlet A, Nazarian R, Tajyar S, et al. EphrinB2 is the entry receptor for Nipah virus, an emergent deadly paramyxovirus. *Nature* (2005) **436**:401–5. doi:10.1038/nature0383
42. Garner OB, Aguilar HC, Fulcher JA, Levroney EL, Harrison R, Wright L, et al. Endothelial galectin-1 binds to specific glycans on Nipah virus fusion protein and inhibits maturation, mobility, and function to block syncytia formation. *PLoS Pathog* (2010) **6**:e1000993. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1000993
43. Yang ML, Chen YH, Wang SW, Huang YJ, Leu CH, Yeh NC, et al. Galectin-1 binds to influenza virus and ameliorates influenza virus pathogenesis. *J Virol* (2011) **85**:10010–20. doi:10.1128/JVI.00301-11
44. Argüeso P, Guzman-Aranguez A, Mantelli F, Cao Z, Ricciuto J, Panjwani N. Association of cell surface mucins with galectin-3 contributes to the ocular surface epithelial barrier. *J Biol Chem* (2009) **284**:23037–45. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.033332
45. Debierre-Grockiego F, Niehus S, Coddeville B, Elass E, Poirier F, Weingart R, et al. Binding of *Toxoplasma gondii* glycosylphosphatidylinositols to galectin-3 is required for their recognition by macrophages. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:32744–50. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.137588
46. Danielsen EM, Hansen GH. Lipid raft organization and function in brush borders of epithelial cells. *Mol Membr Biol* (2006) **23**:71–9. doi:10.1080/09687860500445604
47. Ideo H, Seko A, Yamashita K. Galectin-4 binds to sulfated glycosphingolipids and carcinoembryonic antigen in patches on the cell surface of human colon adenocarcinoma cells. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**:4730–7. doi:10.1074/jbc.M410362200
48. Ideo H, Fukushima K, Gengyo-Ando K, Mitani S, Dejima K, Nomura K, et al. A *Caenorhabditis elegans* glycolipid-binding galectin functions in host defense against bacterial infection. *J Biol Chem* (2009) **284**:26493–501. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.038257
49. Beatty WL, Rhoades ER, Hsu DK, Liu FT, Russell DG. Association of a macrophage galactoside-binding protein with Mycobacterium-containing phagosomes. *Cell Microbiol* (2002) **4**:167–76. doi:10.1046/j.1462-5822.2002.00183.x
50. Thurston TL, Wandel MP, von Muhlinen N, Foeglein A, Randow F. Galectin 8 targets damaged vesicles for autophagy to defend cells against bacterial invasion. *Nature* (2012) **482**:414–8. doi:10.1038/nature10744
51. van den Berg TK, Honing H, Franke N, van Remoortere A, Schiphorst WE, Liu FT, et al. LacdiNAc-glycans constitute a parasite pattern for galectin-3-mediated immune recognition. *J Immunol* (2004) **173**:1902–7. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.173.3.1902
52. Linden JR, Kunkel D, Laforce-Nesbitt SS, Bliss JM. The role of galectin-3 in phagocytosis of *Candida albicans* and *Candida parapsilosis* by human neutrophils. *Cell Microbiol* (2013) **15**:1127–42. doi:10.1111/cmi.12103
53. Esteban A, Popp MW, Vyas VK, Strijbis K, Ploegh HL, Fink GR. Fungal recognition is mediated by the association of dectin-1 and galectin-3 in macrophages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) **108**:14270–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.1111415108
54. Jouault T, El Abed-El Behi M, Martínez-Esparza M, Breuilh L, Trinel PA, Chamaillard M, et al. Specific recognition of *Candida albicans* by macrophages requires galectin-3 to discriminate *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and needs association with TLR2 for signaling. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**:4679–87. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.7.4679
55. Kohatsu L, Hsu DK, Jegalian AG, Liu FT, Baum LG. Galectin-3 induces death of *Candida* species expressing specific beta-1,2-linked mannans. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**:4718–26. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.7.4718
56. Stowell SR, Arthur CM, Dias-Baruffi M, Rodrigues LC, Gourdine JP, Heimburg-Molinaro J, et al. Innate immune lectins kill bacteria expressing blood group antigen. *Nat Med* (2010) **16**:295–301. doi:10.1038/nm.2103

57. Nakamura O, Watanabe M, Ogawa T, Muramoto K, Ogawa K, Tsutsui S, et al. Galectins in the abdominal cavity of the conger eel *Conger myriaster* participate in the cellular encapsulation of parasitic nematodes by host cells. *Fish Shellfish Immunol* (2012) **33**:780–7. doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2012.07.003
58. Dennis JW, Brewer CF. Density-dependent lectin–glycan interactions as a paradigm for conditional regulation by posttranslational modifications. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2013) **12**:913–20. doi:10.1074/mcp.R112.026989
59. Springer SA, Gagneux P. Glycan evolution in response to collaboration, conflict, and constraint. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**:6904–11. doi:10.1074/jbc.R112.424523
60. Hedrick SM. The acquired immune system: a vantage from beneath. *Immunity* (2004) **21**:607–715. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2004.08.020
61. Vasta GR. Galectins as pattern recognition receptors: structure, function and evolution. *Adv Exp Med Biol* (2012) **946**:21–36. doi:10.1007/978-1-4614-0106-3_2
62. Van Breedam W, Pöhlmann S, Favoreel HW, de Groot RJ, Nauwynck HJ. Bittersweet symphony: glycan–lectin interactions in virus biology. *FEMS Microbiol Rev* (2013). doi:10.1111/1574-6976.12052

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 29 April 2014; accepted: 02 June 2014; published online: 18 June 2014.
*Citation: Baum LG, Garner OB, Schaefer K and Lee B (2014) Microbe–host interactions are positively and negatively regulated by galectin–glycan interactions. Front. Immunol. **5**:284. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00284*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

MINI REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 18 December 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00470

Heparan sulfate: a ubiquitous glycosaminoglycan with multiple roles in immunity

David Anak Simon Davis and Christopher R. Parish*

Cancer and Vascular Biology Group, Department of Immunology, The John Curtin School of Medical Research, Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia

Edited by:
Deirdre Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Fulvio D'Acquisto, Queen Mary University of London, UK
Ralph D. Sanderson, University of Alabama at Birmingham, USA

Correspondence:
Christopher R. Parish, Cancer and Vascular Biology Group, Department of Immunology, The John Curtin School of Medical Research, Australian National University, Building 131, Garran Road, Canberra, ACT 2601, Australia
e-mail: christopher.parish@anu.edu.au

Heparan sulfate (HS) is a highly acidic linear polysaccharide with a very variable structure. It is ubiquitously expressed on cell surfaces and in the extracellular matrix and basement membrane of mammalian tissues. Synthesized attached to various core proteins to form HS-proteoglycans, HS is capable of interacting with various polypeptides and exerting diverse functions. In fact, a bioinformatics analysis of mammalian proteins that express a heparin/HS-binding motif and are associated with the immune system identified 235 candidate proteins, the majority having an intracellular location. This simple analysis suggests that HS may, in fact, interact with many more components of the immune system than previously realized. Numerous studies have also directly demonstrated that HS plays multiple prominent functional roles in the immune system that are briefly reviewed in this article. In particular, the molecule has been shown to regulate leukocyte development, leukocyte migration, immune activation, and inflammatory processes.

Keywords: glycosaminoglycan, heparan sulfate, heparanase, hematopoiesis, homing, inflammation

INTRODUCTION

Heparan sulfate (HS) is a glycosaminoglycan (GAG) that is ubiquitously expressed on cell surfaces and in the extracellular matrix (ECM) and basement membrane (BM). Each HS molecule is a linear polysaccharide composed of repeating disaccharides of hexuronic acid and D-glucosamine that can exhibit immense structural diversity due to substitution to varying extents with sulfate groups and epimerization of glucuronic acid to iduronic acid, with areas of high sulfation and glucuronic acid epimerization being co-located in "hot spots" throughout the molecule (**Figure 1**). HS is structurally related to heparin, an extremely highly sulfated form of HS that is restricted to mast cells. The biosynthesis and modification of HS chains is thought to take place within the endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, and trans Golgi network, which in the end produce unique HS chains that are covalently attached to a range of core proteins to form HS-proteoglycans (HSPG) (**Figure 1**) (1, 2). After synthesis HS chains can be modified by the endoglycosidase, heparanase (3), and endosulfatases, Sulf1 and Sulf2 (4–6), to regulate HS availability and function. Although the core proteins can function independently of the HS chains they carry (7), HS predominantly dictates the ligand-binding capability and therefore the biological roles of HSPG (8). Furthermore, while different cell types may express similar core proteins, the HS chains these core proteins carry can be markedly distinctive, resulting in HSPG with highly diverse yet specialized roles in mammalian physiology (8, 9). In this mini-review, we will discuss some of the contributions of HS to the functioning of the immune system, notably leukocyte development, leukocyte migration, immune activation, and inflammatory processes.

DIFFERENT CELLULAR LOCATIONS OF HS CHAINS

In general, cell surface HSPGs includes members of the transmembrane syndecans (syndecan-1-4) and glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-linked glypicans (glypican 1-6). ECM/BM associated HSPGs are comprised of perlecan, collagen type XVIII and agrin. These HSPGs are collectively termed "full-time" HSPGs. "Part-time" HSPG include cell surface CD44 (isoform 3 is HS-linked) and extracellular betaglycan, testican, and neuropilin (8, 10). Secretory vesicle-associated serglycin is a HSPG that is exclusively expressed intracellularly, particularly in mast cells (11). Furthermore, HSPG can also be localized in the nucleus where they potentially regulate gene transcription (12–16).

PREVALENCE OF HS-BINDING PROTEINS IN THE MAMMALIAN IMMUNE SYSTEM

Due to the structural similarities between HS and heparin, the latter is often used as an experimental model for biochemical studies of HS-protein interactions and predicting potential HS-binding partners. Several heparin-binding proteins are known to carry the "consensus" heparin/HS-binding motifs XBBXBX or XBBBXXBX (B being the basic amino acids arginine, lysine, or histidine and X being one of a range of aliphatic/aromatic amino acids) (17). If correctly displayed in the secondary structure and optimally positioned within the three-dimensional conformation of polypeptides, these sequences are hypothetically capable of facilitating strong ionic interactions with negatively charged GAGs (17, 18). Based on this simple amino acid sequence criterion, we screened for protein sequences matching selected G0 terms in the Ensembl database (release 72) with a custom Python script for murine gene products that carry these motifs and are listed on the

UniProt database (www.uniprot.org) as being reported to have immunological functions. We identified a total of 235 HS-binding proteins in the mouse genome (**Table 1**), a list that includes known HS-binding proteins and many potential new ligands for HS. An intriguing feature of this analysis was that 66% of the molecules that potentially bind HS are expressed intracellularly, with only 18% being exclusively expressed on the cell surface and only 10% being in the extracellular compartment. Remarkably, only one HS-binding protein, the HS degrading enzyme heparanase, was identified that can be expressed in intracellular and extracellular compartments as well as being able to associate with plasma membranes. This finding is consistent with the multiple functional roles of the enzyme.

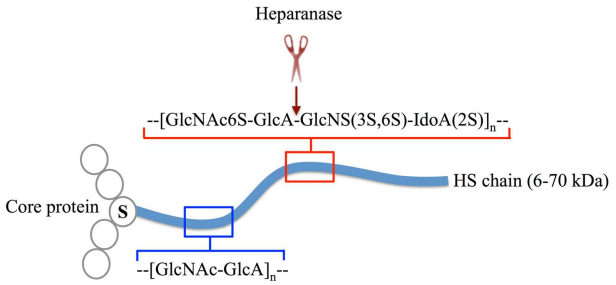


FIGURE 1 | The structure of HSPG. HS chains (blue line) are linear polysaccharides composed of repeating disaccharide subunits, which in their unmodified form are D-glucosamine and D-glucuronic acid (blue box). During synthesis, HS chains are covalently attached to core proteins (open circles) at serine (S) residues. A single HSPG molecule may carry multiple HS chains or contain other glycosaminoglycans other than HS (not shown). HS modifications include various degrees of O and N-sulfation and epimerization of D-glucuronic acid to D-iduronic acid by HS-modifying enzymes (red box) (1). The modifications occur in regions (hot spots) along the polysaccharide chain, these hot spots being separated by regions of low sulfation. Post-synthesis structural alterations are primarily mediated by the endo-β-glucuronidase, heparanase, which cleaves HS chains within highly sulfated regions (cleavage site indicated by red scissors and arrow) (3).

Despite earlier reports claiming that HS negatively regulates gene transcription primarily by repressing the activity of p300 and pCAF histone acetyltransferase (14, 15), the bioinformatics screen implies that intracellular HS plays a more elaborate role in dictating cellular responses to various stimuli. Thus, it is predicted that HS interacts with several regulators of histone-modifying enzymes, such as Jarid2 (motif: MKRRHI), Kat6a (LHHLRM, KKVKK, RRVRK), and Mll1 (LRRFRA, IKKLRA, LKKAKA, VHRIRV, KKVKR, RHLKK) alongside key molecules that are involved in signal transduction and regulation of gene transcription, notably Vav1 (VKHIKI), STAT5A (KRIKR), STAT6 (KKIKR), Bcl6 (WKKYKF), Bcl11a (KHMKK), Ciita (LKRLKL), PTBP3 (VHRVKI, HRFKK), Lck (VKHYKI), IRAK1 (RRAKK), IRAK4 (HHIHR), Foxj1 (FKKRRL), Syk (RKAHH), ITK/TSK (IKHYHI), Card11 (KRFRK), Zap70 (KKLFLKR), Jak3 (IHKLKA, AKKLKF, RRIRR), and Cblb (RHFHH) and some components of the NF-κβ signaling pathway including NFKB2 (YHKMKI),

Table 1 | Hypothetical HS-interacting proteins.

Cellular location	Total	Protein
Intracellular	154	Nlrp3, Nkap, Lrp5, Lyst, Lck, Irak4, Sla2, Mx2, Syk, Oasl2, Tcf3, Myo1e, Atp7a, Cplx2, Tusc2, Ak7, Vav3, Blnk, Spta1, Skap1, Fgr, Pmaip1, Aim2, Shb, Ddx60, Dapk3, Nfkb2, Apobec3, Ripk2, Nod1, Sptb, Oas1d, Mapk14, Ptbp3, March8, Dapk1, Zfp385a, Bcl2, Mecom, Chd7, Gpam, Ap3d1, Lcp2, Arid4a, Polr3a, Tnfaip1, Kat6a, Ung, Myo9b, Bcl6, Eprs, Sp3, Bag6, Plcg1, Nbn, Pml, Klf1, Rb1, Sfxn1, Bcl11a, Farp2, Jarid2, Xrcc6, Itk, Myo1f, Nlrc5, Cyp27b1, Ikzf1, Ddx58, Pip4k2a, Ciita, Foxj1, Rnf168, Prkdc, Pms2, Mll1, Stk3, Mef2c, Ahctf1, Prkx, Rag1, Batf3, Map3k14, Ilf2, Herc6, Card11, Card9, Dlg1, Itch, Dyrk3, Tnip3, Cdk6, Irgm1, Rnf31, Apc, Unc13d, Tlr13, Tlr8, Nedd4, Msh6, Pcid2, Sh2b2, Aicda, Myh9, Pik3cd, Zap70, Vav1, Stat5a, Tgtp1, Mx1, Enpp2, Dock2, Pgm3, Unc93b1, Plcg2, Stxbp2, Ifi44l, Zfp35, Inpp5d, Oas3, Cblb, Ostm1, Bcl11b, Eps8, Prkd1, Ctnnbl1, Polr3b, Samhd1, Nlrc4, Tec, Tet2, Map3k5, Pou1f1, Ncaph2, Stat6, Smarca4, Fnip1, Jak3, Cactin, Dicer1, Atm, Ikbkg, Satb1, Eif2ak2, Stap1, Msh3, Sgpl1, Cdk13, Foxe1, Zc3h8, Spib, Maea, March1, Ank1, Mink1
Plasma membrane	42	Mpzl2, Adam10, Ntrk1, Icosl, Cxcr5, Cd97, Tlr6, Pde2a, Adam9, Tlr1, Ccr3, Treml2, Tril, Tek, Lrrc8a, Il2ra, Selp, Fas, Hfe, Cd83, Cd22, Ccbp2, Ctla4, Tlr2, Klre1, Gpr183, Ccr7, Abcc9, Hoxb4, H2-M5, Thsd1, Dcstamp, Il7r, Procr, Amica1, Chrnb2, Tnfrsf13c, Csf1r, Tlr4, Tyr, Cd93, Eda, Cd40lg
Extracellular	24	Masp1, Ccl25, Osm, Il9, Bmp4, Inhba, Pdgfb, Scg2, Hc, Fam20c, Wnt2b, Lrrc17, Gas6, C7, Il1a, Wnt5a, Cxcl12, AI182371, C4b, Cxcl5, C8b, Ccl17, Serping1, Ccl28
Intracellular, plasma membrane, and extracellular	1	Hpse
Intracellular and plasma membrane	3	Blk, Flt1, Flt3
Intracellular and extracellular	2	Isg15, Prg4
Plasma membrane and extracellular	8	Tgfb1, Vegfa, Enpp3, Ctsg, C8a, Ptpro, Adam17, Enpp1

List of murine proteins that carry "consensus" heparin/HS-binding motifs. The motifs adapted for bioinformatic screens are the standard motifs, which are primarily XBBBXXBX or XBBXBX (17) (http://gduserv.anu.edu.au/~cameron/protein.html). Short motifs are truncated versions of the standard motifs XBBBBX, BBXBB, or BBXXXBB (B = basic amino acids R, K, H; X = A, V, I, L, M, F, Y, W). Only proteins in the UniProt database (www.uniprot.org) that are known to play immunological roles are listed.

IKBKG (MRKRHV), and Nkap (RRAKK, KKAKK, KKYKK). Interestingly, in the Rag1 protein, the presence of a HS-binding motif adjacent to a site critical for DNA binding (560D, UniProt) (AKRFRY), and overlapping the site that is essential for DNA hairpin formation [971F and 972R, UniProt (19)] (RRFRK), may imply a role for HS in regulating V(D)J recombination.

It is not surprising that cytokines including IL-1α (LKKRRL), IL9 (HRVKR), TGF-β1 (VKRKRI), and chemokines such as CCL17 (KHVKK), CCL19 (RRLKK), CCL25 (ARKRLVHM), CCL28 (VKRRRI), CXCL5 (KKAKR), and CXCL12 (VKHLKI) also carry HS-binding motifs, presumably allowing HS to act as their atypical receptors. Moreover, HS-binding motifs are also present on the cognate receptors for soluble factors such as the cytokine receptors IL-2Rα (HRWRK) and IL7R (KKVKH) and the chemokine receptors CCR3 (WKFFHA), CCR7 (AHRHRA), and CXCR5 (YRRRRL), indicating new roles for HS in regulating leukocyte homeostasis and trafficking. In addition, HS may regulate the availability of crucial components in the immunological synapse as indicated by the presence of HS-binding motifs in the leader sequences of ICOSL (WKKLHV) and CTLA4 (LRRYKA). The presence of HS-binding motifs in CD22 (KKARR) and CD40L (KKLKR) also suggests additional roles for HS in cell-cell communication and T cell costimulation.

Examination of the innate immune system reveals that, although HS is already known to interact with TLR-4 (20), it appears that HS may also be recognized by other TLRs, including cell surface TLR-1, TLR-2, and TLR-6, and endosomal TLR-8 and TLR13. To be more precise, the HS-binding motifs appear to be in the extracellular domains of TLR-4 (RHIFWRR) and TLR-2 (IRRLHA) and in the cytoplasmic domains of TLR-1 (HRARH) and TLR-6 (YHKLRA and HRARH). For the endosomal TLRs, both motifs (LKKLHL and LKKKHF) are facing luminal for TLR-8, and cytoplasmic (HRLRK) and luminal (LKRLKI) for TLR13. It is possible that HS is involved in regulating downstream signaling when the motifs are present in the TLR cytoplasmic domains. In contrast, when these motifs are facing the luminal or extracellular space, HS may be a ligand or a regulatory component that modulates the interaction between a TLR and its cognate ligands. Furthermore, HS-binding motifs are also present on inflammasome components such as Nlrp3 (LKKFKM), Nlrc4 (LKKMRL, RHIHR), and Aim2 (LKRFKY), implicating a role for HS in regulating the activation of inflammatory caspases. In another aspect of innate immunity, several studies have reported that heparin and HS are able to interact with several components of the complements system, including C1 (21), C1q, C1 inhibitor, C2, C4, C4b, C4bp, C6, C8, C9, Factor B, Factor D, Factor H (22), MASP1, MASP-2 (23), and complement receptors CR3 (CD11b/CD18) (24) and CR4 (CD11c/CD18) (25). In support of these observations, we have identified the presence of HS-binding motifs in complement proteins such as C4b (FRKFHL), Hc/complement C5 (FHKYKV), C7 (KRLYLKR), C8a (WRKLRY), and C8b (KRYRH) as well as regulatory components of the complement machinery including MASP-1 (KHWRR), Serping1 (HKIRK), and CD93/complement component C1q receptor (YHKRRA), further highlighting the role of HS as a major modulator of the complement system (26).

However, it should be noted that more in-depth analyses are required to assess the validity of these predicted interactions, in particular the demonstration that the predicted HS-binding sites are correctly presented within the secondary structure and final three-dimensional conformation of the putative HS-binding proteins. Also, there are known HS-binding proteins that lack the heparin/HS-binding motifs used in this analysis, suggesting that the list of binding proteins identified in this screen may, in fact, be an under estimate. Thus, at face value, the data set implies that a wide range of HS-binding proteins participate in the immune system.

FUNCTIONAL ROLES OF HS IN IMMUNITY

Despite the previous section suggesting that there are many unknown HS-protein interactions that may control the immune system, there are a number of well-established functional roles for HS in immunity. Indeed HSPGs, through their HS chains, are involved in a broad spectrum of biological processes, profoundly influencing development (27), homeostasis (28), and the progression of many diseases (29). In the case of the immune system, HSPGs are fundamentally involved in regulating cell adhesion, cytokine and chemokine function, sensing tissue injury, and mediating inflammatory reactions. Each of these functional roles will be briefly discussed below, with specific examples given which highlight each function.

REGULATOR OF CELL ADHESION

Cell adhesion molecules are important to facilitate and regulate cell-cell signaling, migration and activation of leukocytes during development, homing, and recruitment to inflammatory sites. For example, of particular relevance to leukocytes development in the bone marrow is the receptor complex on hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) comprised of CD45 and Mac-1 (CD11b/CD18) that has been shown to bind to surface HS on bone marrow-derived stromal cells and facilitate strong adhesion (30). In a related study, the HSPG glypican-3 enhances the antagonizing effect of tissue factor pathway-inhibitor (TFPI) on CD26, the stromal-bound ectopeptidase that is involved in cleaving surface CXCL12, a typical ligand for CXCR4 on HSC. As a result, glypican-3 indirectly supports the directional homing of grafted HSC toward, and their retention in, the bone marrow (31). Similarly, in the thymus a particular subset of cortical epithelial cells known as thymic nurse cells are reported to express high levels of highly sulfated HS that is thought to aid thymocyte adhesion and facilitate T cell development (32–35).

During an inflammatory response, HS positively regulates the recruitment of inflammatory cells at three different stages based on the following observations. First, endothelial surface HS can reduce neutrophil rolling velocity via L-selectin-mediated cell adhesion (36). Second, once attached, the HS-mediated Mac-1-CD44v3 interaction enhances the binding of leukocytes to the endothelial surface to drive extravasation (37). Finally, within the endothelial ECM/BM, collagen type XVIII promotes leukocytes infiltration in again an L-selectin-dependent manner (38, 39). However, the role of HS in the adhesion of leukocytes to the endothelium can occur paradoxically, in a biphasic manner. Under physiological conditions, glycocalyx HSPGs of pulmonary endothelial cells are known to impede neutrophil adhesion (40).

Following the induction of an experimental sepsis model of acute lung injury, the localized production of TNF-α activates endothelial cells to produce heparanase, which in turn catalyzes the partial degradation of HS constituents of the glycocalyx. The loss of HS results in a significant increase in neutrophils binding (40), presumably via neutrophils L-selectin binding to residual endothelial HS and via cytokine-induced endothelial P- and E-selectin (41). Additionally, reduction (in wild-type mice) or deletion (in knockout mice) of syndecan-1 from murine endothelial cells strongly accentuates antigen-specific lymphocytes infiltration into inflammatory sites during a delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction (42).

MODULATOR OF CYTOKINE AND CHEMOKINE FUNCTION

Soluble factors, such as cytokines and chemokines, are crucial to support growth, maintain homeostasis, and orchestrate immune cell trafficking across various locations. However, some of these molecules are inactive or susceptible to degradation in their native, soluble form. Furthermore, these factors need to be timely presented at the right site to exert their anticipated functions. HSPGs have been implicated in modulating various aspects of cytokine and chemokine function (43, 44).

HS-proteoglycans interact with various cytokines primarily on target cells or act as atypical cytokine receptors on cytokine presenting cell. The former situation enables HPSGs to regulate the availability and influence the interaction between cytokines and their cognate receptors on target cells. For example, the binding of cell surface HS to cytokines such as IL-7 and IFN-γ proved critical to protect them against proteolysis (45, 46). Furthermore, the lack of HSPG expression on the mouse pro-B cell surface severely impairs IL-7-dependent maturation toward pre-B cells suggesting that in this situation HS acts as a primary IL-7 receptor. In addition, HSPG can contribute to IL-7 biological activity by presenting IL-7 on stromal cells to promote lymphopoiesis in the bone marrow (47). In the thymus, however, the ability of stromal cell HSPGs to bind IL-7 and aid thymocytes development is dispensable (48). Depending on the degree of sulfation, cell surface HSPG has also been shown to potentiate the IFN-γ-IFN-γ-receptor interaction (49). Importantly, HSPG also facilitate cytokine localization in specific niches, forming depots where they can be made available to target cells. For instance, perlecan binds IL-2, sequestering it from the circulation and subsequently depositing the cytokine in the marginal zone and red pulp of the murine spleen to modulate murine T cells homeostasis (50). HSPGs also facilitate the storing of IL-2 within the vascular smooth muscle wall where cytokine availability is regulated through heparanase-mediated ECM degradation (51).

The ability to bind and present a chemokine to target cells is insufficient to drive cell migration, the hallmark of chemokine function. HSPGs are not only capable of binding and assisting in inducing conformational changes in bound chemokines (52, 53), but also contribute to the establishment of immobilized (haptotactic) chemokine gradients in tissues (54). For example, HSPG facilitate the oligomerization of bound RANTES/CCL5, CXCL8, MCP-1, and MIP-1, thereby allowing better recognition by their cognate G-protein-linked transmembrane receptors (55). In addition to the sequestration of CXCL2 (56), HSPG also mediate transcytosis of CXCL8 across the endothelium, presenting both chemokines on the luminal side and establishing haptotactic gradients that aid neutrophils recruitment during inflammation (36). In a separate study, the migration of tissue dendritic cells (DC) to regional lymph nodes and the local positioning of DC within lymph nodes was also found to be mediated by a HS-dependent haptotactic gradient of CCL21 (57). A similar interaction is believed to facilitate lymphocytes homing through the high endothelial venules into peripheral lymphoid organs (58, 59), although it is unclear if HS also influences local positioning in specific niches. Also, shedding of HSPG, such as syndecan-1 (60) and removal of glucosamine 6-*O*-sulfate by the endosulfatase, Sulf2 (6) has been implicated in regulating the interaction between HS and various chemokines. Furthermore, the inactivation of HS-modifying enzymes can modify neutrophil binding to the endothelium, Ndst1 (HS *N*-deacetylase/*N*-sulfotransferase) deletion severely impairing (36), while Hs2st (HS 2-*O*-sulfotransferase) deletion significantly augmenting (61), neutrophil binding. These studies support the concept of regulating HS function by altering the availability of enzymes that are involved in HS biosynthesis.

A SENSOR OF TISSUE INJURY

Tissue injury may induce cell necrosis, an event that is often associated with the release of various endogenous damage-associated molecular pattern (DAMP)-containing molecules that are potent inducers of inflammatory responses and initiators of tissue repair mechanisms (62). Both surface bound HSPG and soluble HS participate in sensing tissue injury and also in repair mechanisms. For example, endothelial cell surface HS mediates the oligomerization of the receptor for advanced glycation endproducts (RAGE) (63) and together form a receptor complex that efficiently recognizes the chromatin protein, high-mobility group protein B1 (HMGB1) released from necrotic cells (64). As part of the tissue repair mechanism, HS on the surface of professional phagocytes also assists in the clearance of necrotic cells (65). In fact, soluble HS itself can also function as a DAMP (66) by interacting with TLR-4 on leukocytes (20). This interaction has been shown to modulate the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines by macrophages (67) and markedly induce the maturation of DC, as indicated by the up-regulation of MHC-II, CD40, ICAM-1, CD80, CD86, and reduced antigen uptake, a typical phenotype of a professional antigen presenting cells (68). Although this is beneficial in triggering immune activation following an insult (20), it is also implicated in the underlying mechanism of disease progression which can occur in experimental pancreatitis (69), sepsis-like syndrome (70), hyperacute rejection in graft-versus-host disease (GvHD) (71), and cardiac injury (72).

PHYSICAL BARRIER TO LEUKOCYTE MIGRATION

The ECM/BM associated HS is crucial to form a temporary depot of HS-binding soluble factors and to form a physical barrier that supports tissue integrity. In order to migrate, particularly through blood vessel walls, leukocytes need to break down the ECM/BM barrier and heparanase is primarily involved in this process (10, 73). For example, tissue DCs increase the availability of cell surface heparanase to aid ECM degradation before migrating into lymphatic vessels leading toward regional lymph nodes where they

induce antigen-specific responses (74). Subsequent studies have suggested that the matrix metalloproteinase, MMP-14, cooperatively works with heparanase to more efficiently degrade ECM/BM barriers (75). During inflammation, infiltrating monocytes and neutrophils also exhibit similar modes of degrading ECM/BM barriers to aid their extravasation (76, 77). It has also been demonstrated that heparanase derived from infiltrating leukocytes is primarily responsible for the destruction of the pancreatic islet β-cells that produce insulin, thereby providing a novel explanation for the underlying immunopathology of autoimmune Type 1 diabetes (78). In a separate study, leukocytes were shown to also use endogenous myeloperoxidase to produce oxidants that degrade the core protein of perlecan, releasing soluble factors and allowing leukocyte migration across ECM/BM barriers (79). Although HS can also be degraded by nitric oxide (80, 81) and reactive oxygen species (82–84), their direct relevance in the degradation of ECM/BM-associated HSPGs and therefore their contribution to leukocytes extravasation is yet to be elucidated.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The evidence presented in this mini-review further corroborates the fundamental importance of HS in the mammalian immune system. HSPGs, primarily through their HS side chains, regulate various aspects of the immune system ranging from hematopoiesis to homing of leukocytes to peripheral tissues and, most importantly, regulating the elicitation of immune responses. Perturbing HS function or availability has been proven to results in various abnormal immune phenotypes. Furthermore, based on a simple bioinformatics screen presented in this review, it is suggested that HS may in fact interact with many more components of the immune system than previously realized. A better understanding of HS function across various systems is fundamental to exploit its potential in boosting beneficial immune responses and also in finding treatments for related immunopathologies.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We acknowledge Mr. Cameron Jack from the Genome Discovery Unit (JCSMR) for his assistance in the bioinformatics screen for hypothetical HS-binding proteins.

REFERENCES

1. Kreuger J, Kjellen L. Heparan sulfate biosynthesis: regulation and variability. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2012) **60**(12):898–907. doi:10.1369/0022155412464972
2. Esko JD, Selleck SB. Order out of chaos: assembly of ligand binding sites in heparan sulfate. *Annu Rev Biochem* (2002) **71**:435–71. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.71.110601.135458
3. Peterson SB, Liu J. Unraveling the specificity of heparanase utilizing synthetic substrates. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**(19):14504–13. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.104166
4. Nagamine S, Tamba M, Ishimine H, Araki K, Shiomi K, Okada T, et al. Organ-specific sulfation patterns of heparan sulfate generated by extracellular sulfatases Sulf1 and Sulf2 in mice. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**(12):9579–90. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.290262
5. Hossain MM, Hosono-Fukao T, Tang R, Sugaya N, van Kuppevelt TH, Jenniskens GJ, et al. Direct detection of HSulf-1 and HSulf-2 activities on extracellular heparan sulfate and their inhibition by PI-88. *Glycobiology* (2010) **20**(2):175–86. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwp159
6. Uchimura K, Morimoto-Tomita M, Bistrup A, Li J, Lyon M, Gallagher J, et al. HSulf-2, an extracellular endoglucosamine-6-sulfatase, selectively mobilizes heparin-bound growth factors and chemokines: effects on VEGF, FGF-1, and SDF-1. *BMC Biochem* (2006) **7**:2. doi:10.1186/1471-2091-7-2
7. Kramer KL, Yost HJ. Heparan sulfate core proteins in cell-cell signaling. *Annu Rev Genet* (2003) **37**:461–84. doi:10.1146/annurev.genet.37.061103.090226
8. Sarrazin S, Lamanna WC, Esko JD. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) **3**(7):1–33. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a004952
9. Bernfield M, Gotte M, Park PW, Reizes O, Fitzgerald ML, Lincecum J, et al. Functions of cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Annu Rev Biochem* (1999) **68**:729–77. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.68.1.729
10. Parish CR. The role of heparan sulphate in inflammation. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2006) **6**(9):633–43. doi:10.1038/nri1918
11. Kolset SO, Pejler G. Serglycin: a structural and functional chameleon with wide impact on immune cells. *J Immunol* (2011) **187**(10):4927–33. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1100806
12. Richardson TP, Trinkaus-Randall V, Nugent MA. Regulation of heparan sulfate proteoglycan nuclear localization by fibronectin. *J Cell Sci* (2001) **114**(Pt 9):1613–23.
13. Fedarko NS, Conrad HE. A unique heparan sulfate in the nuclei of hepatocytes: structural changes with the growth state of the cells. *J Cell Biol* (1986) **102**(2):587–99. doi:10.1083/jcb.102.2.587
14. Buczek-Thomas JA, Hsia E, Rich CB, Foster JA, Nugent MA. Inhibition of histone acetyltransferase by glycosaminoglycans. *J Cell Biochem* (2008) **105**(1):108–20. doi:10.1002/jcb.21803
15. Purushothaman A, Hurst DR, Pisano C, Mizumoto S, Sugahara K, Sanderson RD. Heparanase-mediated loss of nuclear syndecan-1 enhances histone acetyltransferase (HAT) activity to promote expression of genes that drive an aggressive tumor phenotype. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**(35):30377–83. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.254789
16. Chen L, Sanderson RD. Heparanase regulates levels of syndecan-1 in the nucleus. *PLoS One* (2009) **4**(3):e4947. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0004947
17. Hileman RE, Fromm JR, Weiler JM, Linhardt RJ. Glycosaminoglycan-protein interactions: definition of consensus sites in glycosaminoglycan binding proteins. *Bioessays* (1998) **20**(2):156–67. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1521-1878(199802)20:2<156::AID-BIES8>3.3.CO;2-\#
18. Cardin AD, Weintraub HJ. Molecular modeling of protein-glycosaminoglycan interactions. *Arteriosclerosis* (1989) **9**(1):21–32. doi:10.1161/01.ATV.9.1.21
19. Lu CP, Sandoval H, Brandt VL, Rice PA, Roth DB. Amino acid residues in Rag1 crucial for DNA hairpin formation. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* (2006) **13**(11):1010–5. doi:10.1038/nsmb1154
20. Johnson GB, Brunn GJ, Kodaira Y, Platt JL. Receptor-mediated monitoring of tissue well-being via detection of soluble heparan sulfate by Toll-like receptor 4. *J Immunol* (2002) **168**(10):5233–9.
21. Wuillemin WA, te Velthuis H, Lubbers YT, de Ruig CP, Eldering E, Hack CE. Potentiation of C1 inhibitor by glycosaminoglycans: dextran sulfate species are effective inhibitors of in vitro complement activation in plasma. *J Immunol* (1997) **159**(4):1953–60.
22. Sahu A, Pangburn MK. Identification of multiple sites of interaction between heparin and the complement system. *Mol Immunol* (1993) **30**(7):679–84. doi:10.1016/0161-5890(93)90079-Q
23. Presanis JS, Hajela K, Ambrus G, Gal P, Sim RB. Differential substrate and inhibitor profiles for human MASP-1 and MASP-2. *Mol Immunol* (2004) **40**(13):921–9. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2003.10.013
24. Diamond MS, Alon R, Parkos CA, Quinn MT, Springer TA. Heparin is an adhesive ligand for the leukocyte integrin Mac-1 (CD11b/CD1). *J Cell Biol* (1995) **130**(6):1473–82. doi:10.1083/jcb.130.6.1473
25. Vorup-Jensen T, Chi L, Gjelstrup LC, Jensen UB, Jewett CA, Xie C, et al. Binding between the integrin alphaXbeta2 (CD11c/CD18) and heparin. *J Biol Chem* (2007) **282**(42):30869–77. doi:10.1074/jbc.M706114200
26. Zaferani A, Talsma D, Richter MK, Daha MR, Navis GJ, Seelen MA, et al. Heparin/heparan sulphate interactions with complement – a possible target for reduction of renal function loss? *Nephrol Dial Transplant* (2013) 1–9. doi:10.1093/ndt/gft243
27. Hacker U, Nybakken K, Perrimon N. Heparan sulphate proteoglycans: the sweet side of development. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* (2005) **6**(7):530–41. doi:10.1038/nrm1681
28. Bishop JR, Schuksz M, Esko JD. Heparan sulphate proteoglycans fine-tune mammalian physiology. *Nature* (2007) **446**(7139):1030–7. doi:10.1038/nature05817
29. Lindahl U, Kjellen L. Pathophysiology of heparan sulphate: many diseases, few drugs. *J Intern Med* (2013) **273**(6):555–71. doi:10.1111/joim.12061

30. Coombe DR, Watt SM, Parish CR. Mac-1 (CD11b/CD18) and CD45 mediate the adhesion of hematopoietic progenitor cells to stromal cell elements via recognition of stromal heparan sulfate. *Blood* (1994) **84**(3):739–52.
31. Khurana S, Margamuljana L, Joseph C, Schouteden S, Buckley SM, Verfaillie CM. Glypican-3-mediated inhibition of CD26 by TFPI: a novel mechanism in hematopoietic stem cell homing and maintenance. *Blood* (2013) **121**(14):2587–95. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-09-456715
32. Werneck CC, Oliveira-Dos-Santos AJ, Silva LC, Villa-Verde DM, Savino W, Mourao PA. Thymic epithelial cells synthesize a heparan sulfate with a highly sulfated region. *J Cell Physiol* (1999) **178**(1):51–62. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-4652(199901)178:1<51::AID-JCP7>3.3.CO;2-K
33. Werneck CC, Cruz MS, Silva LC, Villa-Verde DM, Savino W, Mourao PA. Is there a glycosaminoglycan-related heterogeneity of the thymic epithelium? *J Cell Physiol* (2000) **185**(1):68–79. doi:10.1002/1097-4652(200010)185:1<68::AID-JCP6>3.0.CO;2-D
34. Oliveira-dos-Santos AJ, Penninger JM, Rieker-Geley T, Matsumoto G, Mak TM, Wick G. Thymic heterotypic cellular complexes in gene-targeted mice with defined blocks in T cell development and adhesion molecule expression. *Eur J Immunol* (1998) **28**(9):2882–92. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1521-4141(199809)28:09<2882::AID-IMMU2882>3.0.CO;2-1
35. Oliveira-dos-Santos AJ, Rieker-Geley T, Recheis H, Wick G. Murine thymic nurse cells and rosettes: analysis of adhesion molecule expression using confocal microscopy and a simplified enrichment method. *J Histochem Cytochem* (1997) **45**(9):1293–7. doi:10.1177/002215549704500912
36. Wang L, Fuster M, Sriramarao P, Esko JD. Endothelial heparan sulfate deficiency impairs L-selectin- and chemokine-mediated neutrophil trafficking during inflammatory responses. *Nat Immunol* (2005) **6**(9):902–10. doi:10.1038/ni1233
37. Zen K, Liu DQ, Li LM, Chen CX, Guo YL, Ha B, et al. The heparan sulfate proteoglycan form of epithelial CD44v3 serves as a CD11b/CD18 counter-receptor during polymorphonuclear leukocyte transepithelial migration. *J Biol Chem* (2009) **284**(6):3768–76. doi:10.1074/jbc.M807805200
38. Kawashima H, Watanabe N, Hirose M, Sun X, Atarashi K, Kimura T, et al. Collagen XVIII, a basement membrane heparan sulfate proteoglycan, interacts with L-selectin and monocyte chemoattractant protein-1. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**(15):13069–76. doi:10.1074/jbc.M212244200
39. Celie JW, Keuning ED, Beelen RH, Drager AM, Zweegman S, Kessler FL, et al. Identification of L-selectin binding heparan sulfates attached to collagen type XVIII. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**(29):26965–73. doi:10.1074/jbc.M502188200
40. Schmidt EP, Yang Y, Janssen WJ, Gandjeva A, Perez MJ, Barthel L, et al. The pulmonary endothelial glycocalyx regulates neutrophil adhesion and lung injury during experimental sepsis. *Nat Med* (2012) **18**(8):1217–23. doi:10.1038/nm.2843
41. Giuffre L, Cordey AS, Monai N, Tardy Y, Schapira M, Spertini O. Monocyte adhesion to activated aortic endothelium: role of L-selectin and heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *J Cell Biol* (1997) **136**(4):945–56. doi:10.1083/jcb.136.4.945
42. Kharabi Masouleh B, Ten Dam GB, Wild MK, Seelige R, van der Vlag J, Rops AL, et al. Role of the heparan sulfate proteoglycan syndecan-1 (CD138) in delayed-type hypersensitivity. *J Immunol* (2009) **182**(8):4985–93. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0800574
43. Handel TM, Johnson Z, Crown SE, Lau EK, Proudfoot AE. Regulation of protein function by glycosaminoglycans – as exemplified by chemokines. *Annu Rev Biochem* (2005) **74**:385–410. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.72.121801.161747
44. Coombe DR. Biological implications of glycosaminoglycan interactions with haemopoietic cytokines. *Immunol Cell Biol* (2008) **86**(7):598–607. doi:10.1038/icb.2008.49
45. Clarke D, Katoh O, Gibbs RV, Griffiths SD, Gordon MY. Interaction of interleukin 7 (IL-7) with glycosaminoglycans and its biological relevance. *Cytokine* (1995) **7**(4):325–30. doi:10.1006/cyto.1995.0041
46. Lortat-Jacob H, Grimaud JA. Interferon-gamma C-terminal function: new working hypothesis. Heparan sulfate and heparin, new targets for IFN-gamma, protect, relax the cytokine and regulate its activity. *Cell Mol Biol* (1991) **37**(3):253–60.
47. Borghesi LA, Yamashita Y, Kincade PW. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans mediate interleukin-7-dependent B lymphopoiesis. *Blood* (1999) **93**(1):140–8.
48. Banwell CM, Partington KM, Jenkinson EJ, Anderson G. Studies on the role of IL-7 presentation by mesenchymal fibroblasts during early thymocyte development. *Eur J Immunol* (2000) **30**(8):2125–9. doi:10.1002/1521-4141(2000)30:8<2125::AID-IMMU2125>3.0.CO;2-H
49. Sadir R, Forest E, Lortat-Jacob H. The heparan sulfate binding sequence of interferon-gamma increased the on rate of the interferon-gamma-interferon-gamma receptor complex formation. *J Biol Chem* (1998) **273**(18):10919–25. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.18.10919
50. Miller JD, Stevens ET, Smith DR, Wight TN, Wrenshall LE. Perlecan: a major IL-2-binding proteoglycan in murine spleen. *Immunol Cell Biol* (2008) **86**(2):192–9. doi:10.1038/sj.icb.7100128
51. Miller JD, Clabaugh SE, Smith DR, Stevens RB, Wrenshall LE. Interleukin-2 is present in human blood vessels and released in biologically active form by heparanase. *Immunol Cell Biol* (2012) **90**(2):159–67. doi:10.1038/icb.2011.45
52. Proudfoot AE, Handel TM, Johnson Z, Lau EK, LiWang P, Clark-Lewis I, et al. Glycosaminoglycan binding and oligomerization are essential for the in vivo activity of certain chemokines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2003) **100**(4):1885–90. doi:10.1073/pnas.0334864100
53. Salanga CL, Handel TM. Chemokine oligomerization and interactions with receptors and glycosaminoglycans: the role of structural dynamics in function. *Exp Cell Res* (2011) **317**(5):590–601. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2011.01.004
54. Laguri C, Arenzana-Seisdedos F, Lortat-Jacob H. Relationships between glycosaminoglycan and receptor binding sites in chemokines-the CXCL12 example. *Carbohydr Res* (2008) **343**(12):2018–23. doi:10.1016/j.carres.2008.01.047
55. Hoogewerf AJ, Kuschert GS, Proudfoot AE, Borlat F, Clark-Lewis I, Power CA, et al. Glycosaminoglycans mediate cell surface oligomerization of chemokines. *Biochemistry* (1997) **36**(44):13570–8. doi:10.1021/bi971125s
56. Massena S, Christoffersson G, Hjertstrom E, Zcharia E, Vlodavsky I, Ausmees N, et al. A chemotactic gradient sequestered on endothelial heparan sulfate induces directional intraluminal crawling of neutrophils. *Blood* (2010) **116**(11):1924–31. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-01-266072
57. Weber M, Hauschild R, Schwarz J, Moussion C, de Vries I, Legler DF, et al. Interstitial dendritic cell guidance by haptotactic chemokine gradients. *Science* (2013) **339**(6117):328–32. doi:10.1126/science.1228456
58. Bao X, Moseman EA, Saito H, Petryniak B, Thiriot A, Hatakeyama S, et al. Endothelial heparan sulfate controls chemokine presentation in recruitment of lymphocytes and dendritic cells to lymph nodes. *Immunity* (2010) **33**(5):817–29. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2010.10.018
59. Tsuboi K, Hirakawa J, Seki E, Imai Y, Yamaguchi Y, Fukuda M, et al. Role of high endothelial venule-expressed heparan sulfate in chemokine presentation and lymphocyte homing. *J Immunol* (2013) **191**(1):448–55. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1203061
60. Hayashida K, Parks WC, Park PW. Syndecan-1 shedding facilitates the resolution of neutrophilic inflammation by removing sequestered CXC chemokines. *Blood* (2009) **114**(14):3033–43. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-02-204966
61. Axelsson J, Xu D, Kang BN, Nussbacher JK, Handel TM, Ley K, et al. Inactivation of heparan sulfate 2-O-sulfotransferase accentuates neutrophil infiltration during acute inflammation in mice. *Blood* (2012) **120**(8):1742–51. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-03-417139
62. Kono H, Rock KL. How dying cells alert the immune system to danger. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) **8**(4):279–89. doi:10.1038/nri2215
63. Xu D, Young JH, Krahn JM, Song D, Corbett KD, Chazin WJ, et al. Stable RAGE-heparan sulfate complexes are essential for signal transduction. *ACS Chem Biol* (2013) 1611–20. doi:10.1021/cb4001553
64. Xu D, Young J, Song D, Esko JD. Heparan sulfate is essential for high mobility group protein 1 (HMGB1) signaling by the receptor for advanced glycation end products (RAGE). *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**(48):41736–44. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.299685
65. Poon IK, Parish CR, Hulett MD. Histidine-rich glycoprotein functions cooperatively with cell surface heparan sulfate on phagocytes to promote necrotic cell uptake. *J Leukoc Biol* (2010) **88**(3):559–69. doi:10.1189/jlb.0210087
66. Ihrcke NS, Wrenshall LE, Lindman BJ, Platt JL. Role of heparan sulfate in immune system-blood vessel interactions. *Immunol Today* (1993) **14**(10):500–5. doi:10.1016/0167-5699(93)90265-M
67. Wrenshall LE, Stevens RB, Cerra FB, Platt JL. Modulation of macrophage and B cell function by glycosaminoglycans. *J Leukoc Biol* (1999) **66**(3):391–400.
68. Kodaira Y, Nair SK, Wrenshall LE, Gilboa E, Platt JL. Phenotypic and functional maturation of dendritic cells mediated by heparan sulfate. *J Immunol* (2000) **165**(3):1599–604.
69. Akbarshahi H, Axelsson JB, Said K, Malmstrom A, Fischer H, Andersson R. TLR4 dependent heparan sulphate-induced pancreatic inflammatory response is IRF3-mediated. *J Transl Med* (2011) **9**:219. doi:10.1186/1479-5876-9-219

70. Johnson GB, Brunn GJ, Platt JL. Cutting edge: an endogenous pathway to systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)-like reactions through Toll-like receptor 4. *J Immunol* (2004) **172**(1):20–4.
71. Brennan TV, Lin L, Huang X, Cardona DM, Li Z, Dredge K, et al. Heparan sulfate, an endogenous TLR4 agonist, promotes acute GVHD after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. *Blood* (2012) **120**(14):2899–908. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-07-368720
72. Strand ME, Herum KM, Rana ZA, Skrbic B, Askevold ET, Dahl CP, et al. Innate immune signaling induces expression and shedding of the heparan sulfate proteoglycan syndecan-4 in cardiac fibroblasts and myocytes, affecting inflammation in the pressure-overloaded heart. *FEBS J* (2013) **280**(10):2228–47. doi:10.1111/febs.12161
73. Vlodavsky I, Eldor A, Haimovitz-Friedman A, Matzner Y, Ishai-Michaeli R, Lider O, et al. Expression of heparanase by platelets and circulating cells of the immune system: possible involvement in diapedesis and extravasation. *Invasion Metastasis* (1992) **12**(2):112–27.
74. Benhamron S, Nechushtan H, Verbovetski I, Krispin A, Abboud-Jarrous G, Zcharia E, et al. Translocation of active heparanase to cell surface regulates degradation of extracellular matrix heparan sulfate upon transmigration of mature monocyte-derived dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2006) **176**(11):6417–24.
75. Benhamron S, Reiner I, Zcharia E, Atallah M, Grau A, Vlodavsky I, et al. Dissociation between mature phenotype and impaired transmigration in dendritic cells from heparanase-deficient mice. *PLoS One* (2012) **7**(5):e35602. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0035602
76. Matzner Y, Bar-Ner M, Yahalom J, Ishai-Michaeli R, Fuks Z, Vlodavsky I. Degradation of heparan sulfate in the subendothelial extracellular matrix by a readily released heparanase from human neutrophils. Possible role in invasion through basement membranes. *J Clin Invest* (1985) **76**(4):1306–13. doi:10.1172/JCI112104
77. Sasaki N, Higashi N, Taka T, Nakajima M, Irimura T. Cell surface localization of heparanase on macrophages regulates degradation of extracellular matrix heparan sulfate. *J Immunol* (2004) **172**(6):3830–5.
78. Ziolkowski AF, Popp SK, Freeman C, Parish CR, Simeonovic CJ. Heparan sulfate and heparanase play key roles in mouse beta cell survival and autoimmune diabetes. *J Clin Invest* (2012) **122**(1):132–41. doi:10.1172/JCI46177
79. Rees MD, Whitelock JM, Malle E, Chuang CY, Iozzo RV, Nilasaroya A, et al. Myeloperoxidase-derived oxidants selectively disrupt the protein core of the heparan sulfate proteoglycan perlecan. *Matrix Biol* (2010) **29**(1):63–73. doi:10.1016/j.matbio.2009.09.005
80. Vilar RE, Ghael D, Li M, Bhagat DD, Arrigo LM, Cowman MK, et al. Nitric oxide degradation of heparin and heparan sulphate. *Biochem J* (1997) **324**(Pt 2):473–9.
81. Mani K, Jonsson M, Edgren G, Belting M, Fransson LA. A novel role for nitric oxide in the endogenous degradation of heparan sulfate during recycling of glypican-1 in vascular endothelial cells. *Glycobiology* (2000) **10**(6):577–86. doi:10.1093/glycob/10.6.577
82. Rao G, Ding HG, Huang W, Le D, Maxhimer JB, Oosterhof A, et al. Reactive oxygen species mediate high glucose-induced heparanase-1 production and heparan sulphate proteoglycan degradation in human and rat endothelial cells: a potential role in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis. *Diabetologia* (2011) **54**(6):1527–38. doi:10.1007/s00125-011-2110-z
83. Singh A, Ramnath RD, Foster RR, Wylie EC, Friden V, Dasgupta I, et al. Reactive oxygen species modulate the barrier function of the human glomerular endothelial glycocalyx. *PLoS One* (2013) **8**(2):e55852. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0055852
84. Raats CJ, Bakker MA, van den Born J, Berden JH. Hydroxyl radicals depolymerize glomerular heparan sulfate in vitro and in experimental nephrotic syndrome. *J Biol Chem* (1997) **272**(42):26734–41. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.42.26734

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 14 October 2013; accepted: 05 December 2013; published online: 18 December 2013.

*Citation: Simon Davis DA and Parish CR (2013) Heparan sulfate: a ubiquitous glycosaminoglycan with multiple roles in immunity. Front. Immunol. **4**:470. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00470*

This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 31 March 2014
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00126

Molecular interactions between complement factor H and its heparin and heparan sulfate ligands

Stephen J. Perkins*, Ka Wai Fung and Sanaullah Khan

Department of Structural and Molecular Biology, University College London, London, UK

Edited by:
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Daisuke Kamimura, Osaka University, Japan
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia
Neha S. Gandhi, Curtin University, Australia

****Correspondence:***
Stephen J. Perkins, Department of Structural and Molecular Biology, University College London, Darwin Building, Gower Street, London WC1E 6BT, UK
e-mail: s.perkins@ucl.ac.uk

Complement factor H (CFH) is the major regulator of the central complement protein C3b in the alternative pathway of complement activation. A molecular view of the CFH interaction with native heparan sulfate (HS) is central for understanding the mechanism of how surface-bound CFH interacts with C3b bound to host cell surfaces. HS is composed of sulfated heparin-like S-regions that alternate with desulfated NA-regions. Solution structural studies of heparin (equivalent to the S-regions) and desulfated HS (the NA-regions) by scattering and ultracentrifugation showed that each structure was mostly extended and partially bent, but with greater bending and flexibility in the NA-regions compared to the S-regions. Their solution structures have been deposited in the Protein Data Bank. The largest HS oligosaccharides showed more bent and flexible structures than those for heparin. A folded-back domain structure for the solution structure of the 20 domains in CFH was determined likewise. CFH binds to the S-regions but less so to the NA-regions of HS. The bivalent interaction of CFH–heparin was observed by ultracentrifugation, and binding studies of CFH fragments with heparin-coated sensor chips. In common with other CFH interactions with its physiological and pathophysiological ligands, the CFH–heparin and CFH–C3b interactions have moderate micromolar dissociation constants K_D, meaning that these complexes do not fully form *in vivo*. The combination of the solution structures and binding studies indicated a two-site interaction model of CFH with heparin at cell surfaces. By this, the bivalent binding of CFH to a cell surface is co-operative. Defective interactions at either of the two independent CFH–heparin sites reduce the CFH interaction with surface-bound C3b and lead to immune disorders.

Keywords: analytical ultracentrifugation, surface plasmon resonance, X-ray scattering, complement factor H, heparin, heparan sulfate

INTRODUCTION

Complement is a major defense and clearance system of the innate immune system (1, 2). Pathogens activate complement C3 through one of three pathways, the classical, lectin, or alternative pathways. Unactivated C3 consists of 13 domains, namely eight macroglobulin domains, a linker domain, an anaphylatoxin domain (C3a) a complement C1r/CIS–UEGF–BMP1 domain (CUB), a C345 domain, and a thioester domain (TED, also known as C3d). These three pathways lead to the removal of the small C3a domain from C3, the main complement protein, to convert this to C3b. Active C3b is rapidly generated through a cascade and becomes covalently attached to cell surfaces through its TED domain (**Figure 1A**). This triggers the assembly of the membrane attack complex that lyses pathogen cells and the clearance of C3b-opsonized cells by phagocytosis. C3b formation needs regulation, because too much C3b will damage host cells, while too little C3b means that the host becomes immuno-compromised. Recent reviews refer to this balance as a "double-edged sword" (3, 4). C3u is formed by the spontaneous hydrolysis of the thioester bridge in C3, but is no longer able to bind to cell surfaces. The main C3b regulator is complement factor H (CFH; **Figure 1A**), and CFH also binds to C3u. Both C3 and CFH are relatively abundant complement proteins in plasma. The most abundant plasma proteins are human serum albumin (30–50 mg/ml) and the immunoglobulins (10–15 mg/ml). In comparison, C3 is typically found at 1.0–1.6 mg/ml (5.3–8.5 μM), while CFH is almost equimolar to C3 at around 0.116–0.81 mg/ml (0.8–5.3 μM). The large amounts of these complement proteins compared to others, such as, for example, the main coagulation proteins present at 0.1–10 μg/ml (0.1–0.3 nM), are attributable to the need for abundant reagents to combat infections. The uncontrolled release of C3b is regulated by CFH. Firstly, CFH blocks the binding of complement Factor B to C3b and that of its activated form Bb to C3b, the binding of which produces the C3 convertase that cleaves C3 to produce even more C3b. Secondly, CFH acts as a cofactor of the protease Factor I that cleaves C3b into the inert fragments C3d and C3c. CFH functions both in plasma and by binding to host cell surfaces through interactions with anionic oligosaccharides bearing clusters of negative charges.

Here, we summarize recent progress in our molecular understanding of how CFH binds to heparin and heparan sulfate (HS), thereby protecting host cell surfaces. Firstly, we describe recent

Abbreviations: aHUS, atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome; AMD, age-related macular degeneration; CFH, complement factor H; CUB, complement C1r/CIS–UEGF–BMP1 domain of C3; K_D, dissociation constant; SCR, short complement regulator; TED, thioester domain of C3.

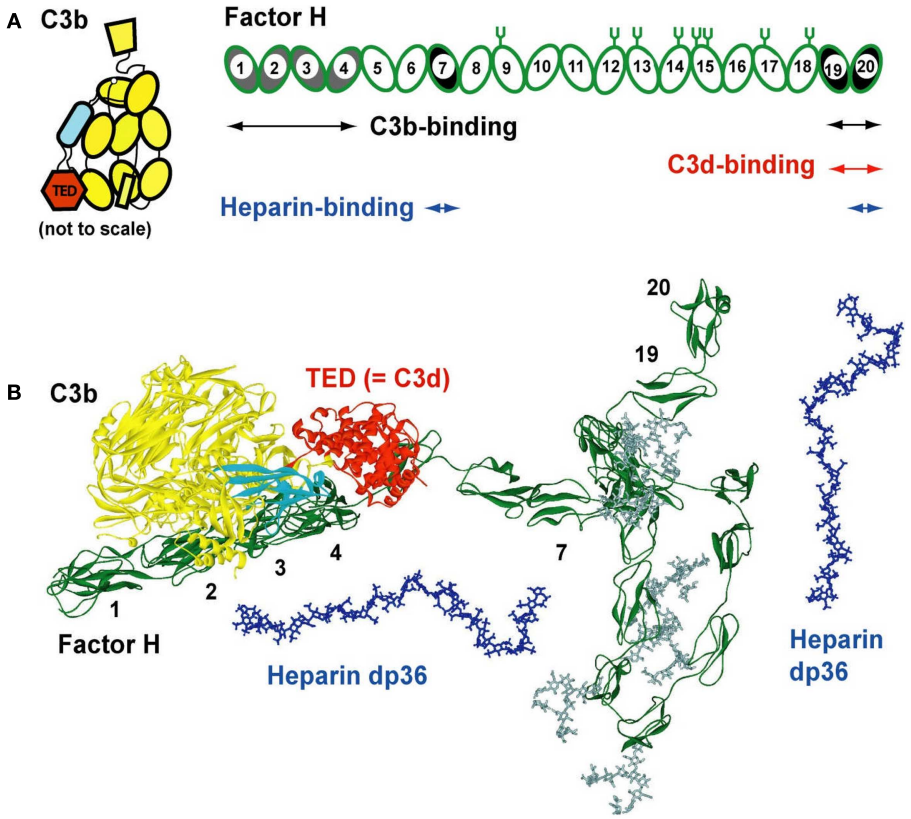


FIGURE 1 | Domain structure of factor H and its C3b and heparin ligands. **(A)** Schematic view of the 20-SCR domains of CFH. The positions of two C3b binding sites (SCR-1/4 with C3b decay acceleration and factor I activity, and at SCR-19/20), two heparin-binding sites at SCR-7 and SCR-20, and two C3d-binding sites on each of SCR-19 and SCR-20 are shown schematically. The location of eight *N*-linked glycosylation sites is shown by symbols; a ninth site at SCR-4 is not occupied. The 12 domains of C3b are shown to the left, with the TED domain ("thioester domain"; equivalent to C3d) in red and the CUB domain ("complement C1r/CIS–UEGF–BMP1") in cyan. **(B)** Comparison of molecular views for CFH with structures for its C3b and heparin dp36 ligands. All are on the same scale. A folded-back domain arrangement of a best-fit CFH structural model is shown with its longest length running from left to right (SCR-1–SCR-20). The CFH structure is from two recent studies (27, 54). The eight CFH oligosaccharides are shown in gray. The CUB and TED domains are shown in cyan and red, respectively. The SCR-1/4 domains are shown bound to C3b at the left (28). The folded-back central region of CFH with the shorter and glycosylated SCR domains is shown to the bottom right. Two solution structures of dp36 (blue) are shown proximate to SCR-7 and SCR-19/20.

three-dimensional molecular structures for heparin and HS. Their original structures came from a ^{1}H NMR study of heparin and the crystallography of small oligosaccharides bound to proteins. These first structures have now been supplemented by the use of a powerful new method based on the modeling of X-ray scattering curves and sedimentation coefficients that produced new structures for the larger fragments of heparin and HS. Secondly, we summarize the molecular structure for CFH. Intact CFH is comprised of 20 short complement regulator (SCR) domains, each of length about 61 residues, and joined together by linkers of lengths 3–8 residues (**Figure 1A**). Crystal and/or NMR structures are available for over half the CFH SCR domains. Intact CFH has not been crystallized to date, this being attributed to its comparatively large size, its ability to dimerize in at least two sites, its sizeable glycosylation in the center of CFH, and the potential flexibility of the inter-domain linkers. Instead, X-ray scattering and sedimentation coefficient modeling gave the first molecular structures for full-length CFH (**Figure 1B**). Thirdly, we describe the complexes formed between CFH and heparin. Again no crystal structures for CFH–heparin complexes are known to date. The application of analytical ultracentrifugation to the heparin complexes with CFH revealed the existence of bivalent CFH–heparin complexes. Binding experiments by surface plasmon resonance confirmed the existence of these bivalent complexes, and importantly showed that these complexes are formed co-operatively.

These structural advances have transformed our understanding of the molecular basis of the interactions of CFH with heparin and HS. They also provide new insight on the molecular mechanisms that lead to immune diseases such as age-related macular degeneration (AMD) and atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS).

BIOPHYSICAL METHODS

We summarize for immunologists the biophysical methods used for these studies. The joint use of three independent (or "orthogonal") biophysical methods is a powerful means of characterizing

the molecular interactions of heparin and HS with CFH. This combination reduces the experimental uncertainties inherent in the use of one method alone. For example, the dissociation constants K_D of an interaction can be obtained from all three methods as a quantitative test of consistency. In addition, each method has unique strengths.

(a) In analytical ultracentrifugation, sedimentation velocity experiments subject the samples to high rotor speeds. These, sediment to the bottom of the rotor cells at rates that depend on the macromolecular shape and mass according to the Svedberg equation. Modern PCs record as many as several hundred sedimentation boundaries during an experiment. The resulting sedimentation coefficient distribution $c(s)$ produces peak(s) that correspond to the macromolecule(s) present in the sample (see below). When complexes are studied, the unbound and complexed species are revealed by separate peaks (if slow exchange conditions are satisfied) that provide the individual sedimentation coefficients $s_{20,w}$ (after correction to 20°C and the density of water) and their molecular masses. The K_D values are obtained from integration of the $c(s)$ peak areas (5). The $s_{20,w}$ values report on the shape and can be compared directly with molecular models. The main advantage of this method is the ability to resolve distinct species.

(b) X-ray scattering measures the diffraction from macromolecules in random orientations in solution, from which the overall dimensions of the solution structure can be determined. Dimensions are measured using the radius of gyration R_G values from Guinier plots and the lengths from distance distribution $P(r)$ analyses. If atomic structures are available for modeling, such as the domains of a large multidomain protein, a molecular structure can be determined by constrained modeling methods. By this, the known domain structure is rearranged into thousands of possible allowed conformations, then the best-fit molecular structure is identified by curve-fitting. This is the main advantage of scattering. The resulting structure is deposited in the Protein Data Bank as a permanent record. If scattering is used for determining the K_D value, this requires knowledge of the scattering curves for the unbound structures as well as for their complex (5). The ratio of the unbound and complexed species is determined by scattering curve fits measured at different concentrations, from which the K_D value is calculated.

(c) Surface plasmon resonance uses ligands or macromolecules that are immobilized on a sensor chip. The on-rate and off-rate of a soluble "analyte" binding to the immobilized interaction partner (the "ligand") are determined. If these rates are relatively slow, the ratio of the off-rate/on-rate gives the K_D value. If these rates are relatively rapid, the overall intensity change of the response when the analyte is bound to the ligand as a function of its concentration given an alternative determination of the K_D value (6). No shape information is available by this method. However, a different sensor chip technology termed dual polarization interferometry (data not shown) provides both the K_D value and the dimensions of the bound analyte molecule.

SOLUTION STRUCTURES OF HEPARIN dp6–dp36

The disaccharide subunit (dp2) of heparin contains two residues of uronic acid and D-glucosamine linked by a (1 → 4) glycosidic bond (**Figure 2A**). The uronic acid can be either α-L-iduronic acid (α-IdoA), which accounts for up to 90% of heparin, or β-D-glucuronic acid (β-GlcA), which accounts for up to 10% of heparin. A heparin disaccharide most often contains three sulfate groups, one located on the 2-OH group of α-IdoA, and two at the 2-NH_2 group and the 6-OH group of D-glucosamine (α-GlcNS), namely [→4)-α-L-iduronic acid-(1 → 4)–α-D-glucosamine (2,6-disulfate)-(1→]. This is abbreviated as IdoA2S–GlcNS6S. In fact, heparin is most heterogenous (7). While the main structure is the repeating tri-sulfated disaccharide IdoA2S–GlcNS6S, there are four possible uronic acids in heparin, namely GlcA, GlcA2S, IdoA, and IdoA2S, with the last one being the most common. There are seven possible glucosamines, namely GlcNS, GlcNS6S, GlcNS3S, GlcNS3S6S, GlcNAc, GlcNAc6S, and rarely glycosamine with a free amine. The most common is GlcNS6S. The other disaccharide in heparin is [→4)-β-D-glucuronic acid-(1 → 4)–α-D-*N*-acetyl glucosamine-(1→], which is abbreviated as GlcA–GlcNAc. The high degree of sulfation and carboxylation makes heparin

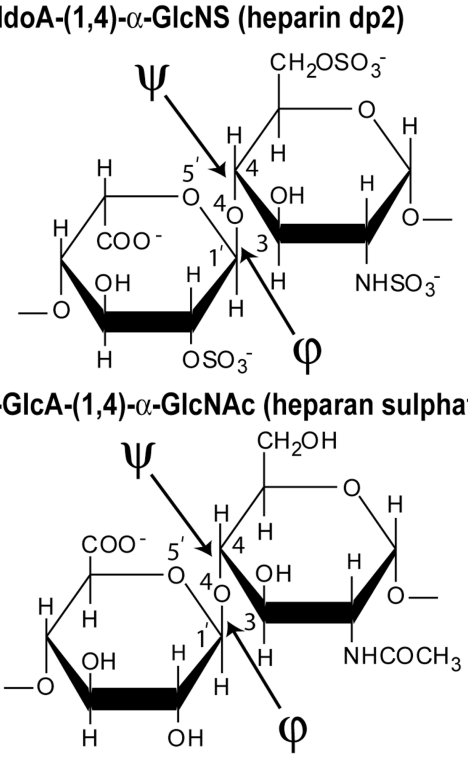


FIGURE 2 | Chemical structures of the two disaccharide repeats of heparin and HS. (A) The major repeating disaccharide unit in heparin (α-iduronic acid-2-sulfate → α-glucosamine-2,6-disulfate; α-IdoA2S and α-GlcNS6S). The molecular mass of this trisulfated disaccharide is 573 Da. The φ angle between the rings is determined from the O5′–C1′–O4–C4 atoms and the ψ angle is determined from the C1′–O4–C4–C3 atoms, indicated by two arrows. **(B)** The major repeating non-sulfated disaccharide unit of HS (β-glucuronic acid → α-*N*-acetylglucosamine; β-GlcA and α-GlcNAc). The molecular mass of this averaged disaccharide is 378 Da.

the most negatively charged macromolecule known in biology. For experimental studies, the six fragments of heparin dp6–dp36 were prepared from bovine lung heparin, starting from heparinase-I-digested heparin, followed by Biogel P-10 preparative gel permeation chromatography to separate the individual oligosaccharides (8).

Our ultracentrifugation and scattering fit procedure gave molecular structures for the six heparin fragments dp6–dp36. Conformational information on the structure of heparin had previously come from NMR studies of heparin dp12 and crystallography studies of proteins co-crystallized with small heparin fragments with sizes close to dp5. Our new structural analyses (8) proceeded in three stages:

(a) First, using analytical ultracentrifugation, sedimentation velocity runs were performed on each of the six heparin fragments dp6–dp36. Single clean peaks were seen in the $c(s)$ analyses, indicating that the purifications gave satisfactorily homogenous preparations. The six experimental sedimentation coefficients increased with size, ranging from 1.09 S for dp6 to 1.84 S for dp36. Linear molecular models were created for heparin dp10–dp40 starting from the NMR molecular structure for heparin dp12. The sedimentation coefficients $s_{20,w}$ calculated from these linear models agreed well with the experimental values.

(b) Second, X-ray scattering curves with very good signal–noise ratios were measured at the ESRF synchrotron, even for the smallest heparin, dp6. This resulted because of the high beam intensity, low scattering backgrounds, and improved detector technology. Good linear Guinier analyses and distance distribution curves resulted in R_G values that increased from 1.03–1.33 nm for heparin dp6 to 3.12–3.52 nm for heparin dp36. The comparison with the linear heparin models showed that the modeled R_G values increased linearly with heparin size, while the experimentally measured R_G values for dp18–dp36 did not increase in proportion. Therefore, the experimental R_G values showed sensitivity to bending in the heparin structures with increase in size. Other scattering parameters (i.e., the cross-sectional R_G values and the maximum dimensions) also indicated that the larger heparin structures displayed bending.

(c) Third, constrained atomistic modeling revealed the molecular structures of heparin dp6–dp36 that best fitted the X-ray scattering curves. The major conformational determinant of heparin are the two torsion angles φ and ψ of the glycosidic linkage (**Figure 2A**), defined by the O5′–C1′–O4–C4 atoms and the C1′–O4–C4–C3 atoms, respectively. Both torsion angles were randomized in steps of up to ±45°. This process generated 5,000 randomized heparin structures, starting from a linear structure. Each randomized model was compared with the experimental X-ray data by calculating the R_G value of each model and the goodness-of-fit R-factor of each curve fit. The best-fit polysaccharide structures were determined from V-shaped graphs of R-factors vs. R_G values by identifying the points with the lowest R-factors that showed the best agreement with the experimental R_G values (red circles; **Figure 3**).

In conclusion, the best-fit molecular models for heparin showed that their bending increased with heparin size (**Figure 4**). This outcome extends the earliest NMR and crystallographic results for the small heparin structures that suggested that they were mostly linear. Our heparin dp6 and dp12 solution structures are mostly extended, but those for heparin dp18, dp24, dp30, and dp36 are reduced in lengths by 16–29% compared to their linear structures (**Figure 5A**). These bent models agree with the ultracentrifugation $s_{20,w}$ values although the $s_{20,w}$ values are not sensitive to conformational bending. The original models (8) have been updated by removing minor steric overlaps between individual atoms using a constant force field termed the DREIDING minimization (9). They are available in the Protein Data Bank at http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/ or after 2009 in PDB-formatted files in the Supplementary Material of our publications. As far as is known, the heparin study was the first successful application of atomistic scattering modeling to oligosaccharides, this method having previously been used for multidomain proteins.

The best-fit models from varying only the φ and ψ angles between the sugar rings were readily identified at the minima in **Figure 3**. The quality of the dp18–dp36 scattering curve fits is better than those found with many multidomain proteins (**Figure 4**). From the fits, the solution φ and ψ values were around −60° and 130°, respectively, for the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S bond, and around 100° and 85°, respectively, for the GlcNS6S–IdoA2S bond (**Figures 6A,B**). Interestingly, comparisons with 19 crystal structures of heparin dp4–dp10 in protein complexes revealed similar φ and ψ angles (**Figures 6A,B**). When the outliers were removed, the crystallographic φ and ψ values were −79° and 132°, respectively, for the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S bond, and 84° and 100°, respectively, for the GlcNS6S–IdoA2S bond (**Figures 6A,B**). Given standard deviations of typically ±20°, these φ and ψ values suggest that the free heparin solution structures for dp18–dp36 is essentially unchanged in conformation from small heparin fragments bound to proteins in crystal structures. Thus, heparin in both its complexes or free in solution has a semi-rigid and extended conformation that is optimal for binding to proteins without major conformational changes.

The repulsion of the sulfate and carboxylate groups in heparin may influence these extended structures. The anionic sulfate and carboxylate groups of heparin form mostly ionic contacts with basic amino acids on protein surfaces. The axial orientations of these groups in heparin are thus crucial, and these repeat themselves after every four oligosaccharide rings. The dp4 fragment possesses at least six sulfate groups and two carboxylate groups. In dp4, two sulfate groups are located in opposed axial orientations in GlcNS6S, while the third sulfate and the carboxylate group are located in opposed axial orientations in IdoA2S residues (8). When crystal structures of dp3 fragments are viewed centered on either IdoA2S or GlcNS6S, these axial orientations are largely preserved and aligned with each other between IdoA2S and GlcNS6S residues (8). Our solution structures of heparin dp18–dp36 suggest that these extended arrangements and orientations seen in crystal structures are mostly preserved.

The larger heparin fragments show more pronounced bending, even though the mean φ and ψ angles are unaffected. The scattering modeling represented this bending as occasional kinks

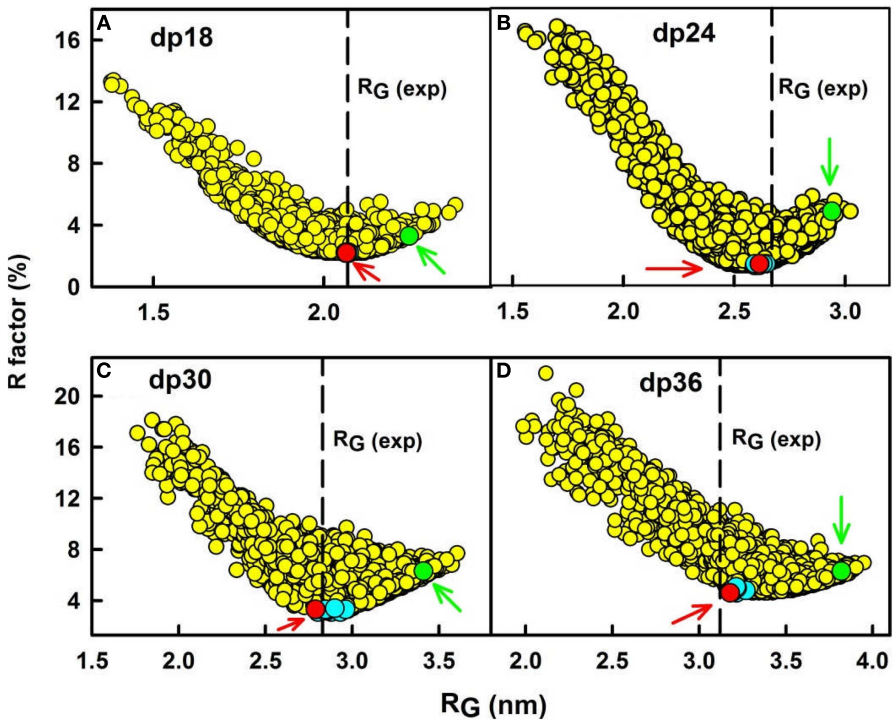


FIGURE 3 | Constrained modeling analyses of heparin dp18–dp36. **(A)** The *R*-factor values from the curve fits for 5,000 trial randomized models of heparin dp18 are compared with their R_G values. The vertical dashed line corresponds to the observed experimental R_G value. The red circle (arrowed) denotes the best-fit model, and the green circle (arrowed) denotes the linear model for heparin. Other best-fit models are shown in cyan close to the *R*-factor minimum. Here and in **Figures 4–6**, the heparin structures are corrected for minor steric overlaps (9). **(B–D)** The corresponding analyses for each of the 5,000 trial models for heparin dp24, dp30, and dp36 are shown in that order.

in the heparin structure. These bends may arise from the occasional occurrence of GlcA–GlcNAc residues in the dominant IdoA2S–GlcNS6S structure. It is more likely that kinks occur naturally within the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S structures, these having been observed in several protein–heparin crystal structures (8). Thus the observation of bending indicates that heparin is not completely rigid, and that limited flexibility in heparin is permitted.

The heparin structures clarify three different scenarios for heparin–protein interactions. As far as is known, heparin binding sites are generally found at surface-exposed positions in proteins. One scenario involves two independent and different heparin binding sites on the same protein, such as that in CFH. Because heparin is semi-rigid and extended, it is unlikely that a single large heparin molecule can undergo large conformational changes in order to bind both CFH–heparin sites simultaneously to form a 1:1 complex, thus these two sites remain independent (10). In a second scenario, heparin will mediate conformational changes in proteins in order to induce functional activity. The best-known case is that of antithrombin, in which the allosteric activation of its β-sheet structure by heparin lead to the inhibition and regulation of the blood coagulation protein Factor IXa, Factor Xa, and thrombin (11). A third scenario is the ability of heparin to enable functionally active protein dimers to form through heparin binding to single sites on each protein monomer [for example, the fibroblast growth factor family and their receptors (12, 13)]. All three scenarios are facilitated by the semi-rigid and extended structures of heparin.

SOLUTION STRUCTURES OF HEPARAN SULFATE dp6–dp24

Native HS plays key roles in the regulation of physiological and pathophysiological processes. Native HS is comprised of the same two alternating residues of uronic acid and D-glucosamine residues as in heparin, but with a reduced degree of sulfation (**Figure 2B**). HS contains a higher proportion of the GlcA–GlcNAc disaccharide compared to the sulfated IdoA2S–GlcNS6S disaccharide in heparin considered above.

The overall structure of native HS shows a distinct three-domain organization that is comprised of short S-domains with IdoA2S–GlcNS6S disaccharides, long NA-domains with GlcA–GlcNAc disaccharides, and mixed domain regions at the junctions between the S-domains and NA-domains that includes IdoA2S–GlcNS6S disaccharides. The S-domains and mixed domain regions occur as "hypervariable" regions that lead to different HS functions when HS is purified from different cell types. The S-domains correspond closely to heparin. For experimental studies of the NA-domains, the non-sulfated HS oligosaccharide fragments dp6–dp24 were prepared by digests, and this product is termed the HS fragments below, unless specified otherwise. First, exhaustive heparinase I digestion was used to minimize the content of fully sulfated heparin sequences in a crude glycosaminoglycan

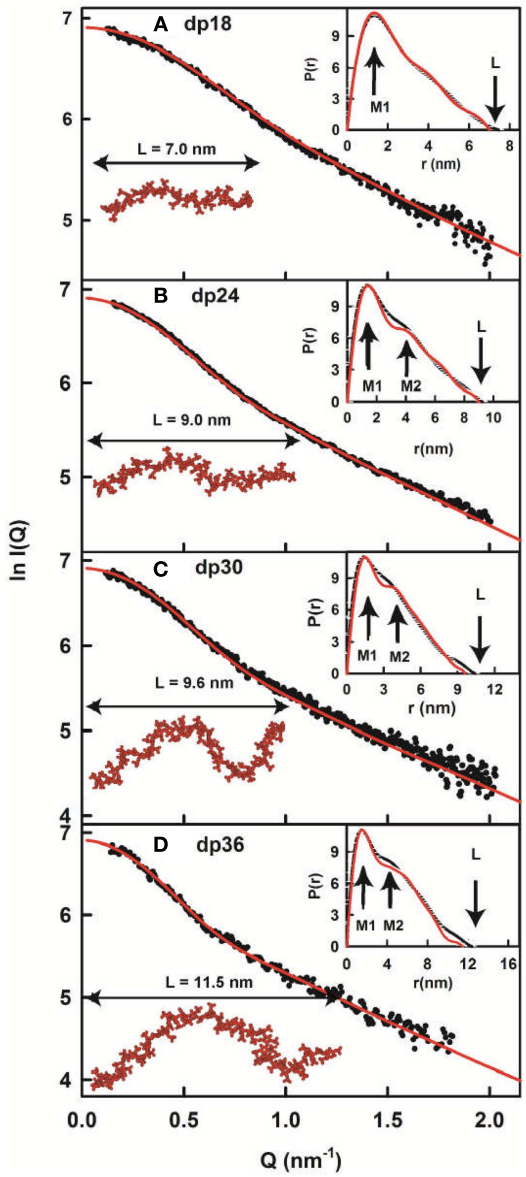


FIGURE 4 | X-ray modeling curve fits for best-fit heparin dp18–dp36 models. (A–D) Correspond to the structural fits for heparin dp18, dp24, dp30 and dp36. The experimental $I(Q)$ and $P(r)$ X-ray scattering data are represented by black circles or lines, respectively. The red lines and models correspond to the best-fit dp18–dp36 models from the searches (**Figure 3**). The maximum lengths of the models are shown for comparison with their L values in the $P(r)$ curves.

mixture. This generated the NA-regions dp6-dp24 that remained following the removal of sulphated oligosaccharides, then Biogel P-10 preparative gel permeation chromatography was performed to separate these individual GlcA–GlcNAc oligosaccharides. The HS fragments dp6–dp24 were submitted to the same ultracentrifugation–scattering-modeling strategy used above for heparin.

Analytical ultracentrifugation on each of the HS fragments dp6–dp24 revealed homogenous preparations from the single peaks seen in the $c(s)$ analyses. The experimental sedimentation coefficients $s_{20,w}$ increased with HS size from 0.82–1.05 S for dp6 to 1.26–1.35 S for dp24 as expected. This time, their values were generally reduced compared to the $s_{20,w}$ values for heparin dp6–dp36. Most of this reduction comes from the lower masses of HS dp6–dp24 compared to heparin dp6–dp24 (**Figure 2**). The remaining reduction is attributable to a more compact solution structure for the HS fragments compared to heparin, i.e., HS is not as extended as heparin. Linear molecular models were created for HS dp6–dp30 starting from a HS dp4 crystal structure. Again the experimental $s_{20,w}$ values were lower than the predicted values from the linear HS models, showing that HS does not have an extended structure (14).

X-ray scattering curves for the HS fragments dp6–dp24 gave R_G values that increased from 0.98–1.03 nm for HS dp6 to 2.82–3.00 nm for HS dp24. The comparison with the linear HS models showed that the predicted R_G values increased linearly with HS size, while the experimental R_G values starting from dp18 did not increase by as much. Thus the experimental R_G values also revealed bending in the larger HS structures. Bending was also indicated from the cross-sectional R_G values and the distance distribution curves $P(r)$ (9, 14).

The constrained scattering modeling identified molecular structures for the eight HS dp6–dp24 fragments. Totals of 5,000–12,000 conformationally randomized structures were generated by variations of the two torsion angles φ and ψ. Each model was compared one-by-one against the X-ray curve. For HS dp6–dp16, good curve fits were obtained with almost linear structures with slight bending (cf: **Figure 4**; not shown). Interestingly, the two largest HS fragments dp18 and dp24 showed a different outcome. The R-factor vs. R_G graphs (cf: **Figure 3**; not shown) for dp18 and dp24 showed that the modeled R_G value at the minimum R-factor was different from the experimental R_G value. The smaller modeled R_G value of 2.13 nm (dp18) and 2.47 nm (dp24) suggested that the HS structures were noticeably bent, while the larger experimental R_G value of 2.34 nm (dp18) and 2.82 nm (dp24) suggested that the HS structures were mostly extended. The modeled $s_{20,w}$ values for both the bent and extended structures were the same within error. This outcome suggested that conformational heterogeneity was present in HS, and that each of HS dp18 and dp24 exhibited both bent and extended structures simultaneously in solution (**Figure 5B**).

The organization of sulfated heparin-like S-domains and unsulfated NA-domains in the HS structure has been clarified by our work. The comparison of our heparin and HS structures becomes essentially that between S-domains and NA-domains (**Figure 5**). The greater bending and flexibility of HS compared to heparin is attributable to the GlcA–GlcNAc disaccharides in HS and the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S disaccharides in heparin. The available crystal structures show that the separations between the rings in GlcA–GlcNAc and IdoA2S–GlcNS6S are similar. Thus the different heparin and HS conformations must result from altered φ and ψ angles. The φ and ψ angles for heparin dp18–dp36 in solution are within 18° of those in 19 crystal structures (**Figures 6A,B**). The φ and ψ angles for HS dp6–dp24 in solution were all within 5° of those in the HS dp4 crystal structure (**Figures 6C,D**). While not significantly larger than the standard deviations, the largest

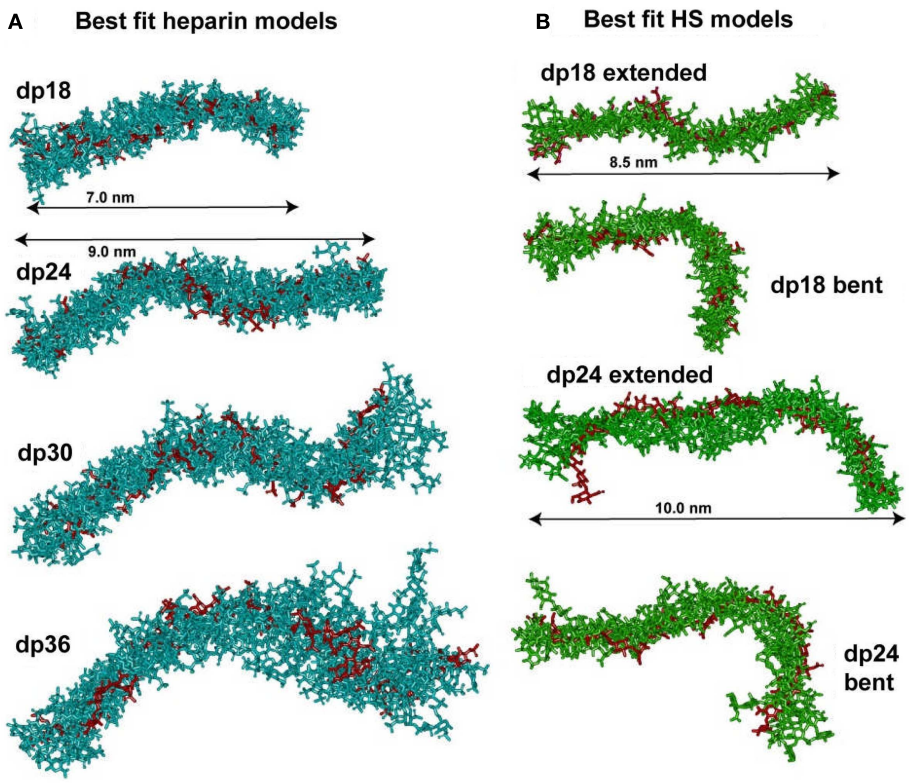


FIGURE 5 | Superimposition of the best-fit models for heparin and HS. **(A)** The nine best-fit models for each of the four heparin fragments dp18–dp36 were superimposed. Only the non-hydrogen atoms are displayed. The best-fit model is shown in red, while the others are shown in cyan. The overall lengths of heparin dp18 and dp24 are shown as 7.0 and 9.0 nm, as arrowed. **(B)** Each set of eight best-fit models for the two HS fragments dp18 and dp24 were superimposed. The best-fit model is shown in red, while the others are shown in green. The overall lengths of the extended HS dp18 and dp24 models were shown as 8.5 and 10.0 nm, as arrowed. The extended best-fit HS structures were obtained primarily from filtering on the R_G values, while the bent best-fit structures were identified by filtering on the *R*-factor values only.

differences between heparin and HS involve the two φ angles rather than the two ψ angles. The physical basis for this is most likely to arise from the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S sequences in heparin compared to the GlcA–GlcNAc sequences in HS. Unlike HS, heparin will be influenced by greater repulsions between pairs of sulfate–sulfate, sulfate–carboxylate, and carboxylate–carboxylate groups. Thus, the combination of the NA- and S-domains within native HS suggests that different native HS structures with greater or lesser bending may arise through variations of the sizes of the NA-domains and S-domains. For example, a three-part native HS structure comprised of a NA-region at its center and flanked by two S-regions would show conformational flexibility in its central region and influence its immune reactivity.

An important caveat in these molecular studies should be noted. When we first published our HS best-fit structures (15), the anomeric configurations of GlcA and GlcNAc in our HS structures should have alternated between α and β. Unfortunately, the anomeric configurations were all β in our original HS models, thus our original study was withdrawn. The HS structures were remodeled with the correct anomers and republished (14). Although we take full responsibility for our mistake, the error was traced back to a misunderstanding of the starting HS dp4 structure in the Protein Data Bank. That HS dp4 structure was written out with its reducing end at the left, when it is more conventional to write this at the right end. In addition, terminological inconsistencies exist in the Protein Data Bank that contributed to our misunderstanding. For example, the α-GlcNAc and β-GlcA anomers of HS should have been written as NDG and BDP, respectively, in the HS dp4 crystal structure, and not as NAG and GCU (PDB code 3E7J; dated 18 August 2008). Related discrepancies in carbohydrate structures have been reported by others (16, 17). It appears essential to check carbohydrate structures from the Protein Data Bank before using these in molecular modeling.

LIGAND INTERACTIONS OF COMPLEMENT FACTOR H

We first summarize the immune functions of CFH. The 20-SCR domains of CFH perform several functions by binding to various ligands. The major N-terminal and C-terminal binding sites for complement C3b in CFH are located at SCR-1/4 and SCR-19/20, and the C3d fragment of C3b binds to SCR-19/20 (**Figure 1A**) (18). A third C3b binding site specific for C3c has been proposed in the central part of CFH (18–20). These interactions lead to the regulatory breakdown of C3b by CFH. The two heparin binding sites of CFH are located close to SCR-6/8 and SCR-19/20 (18). These sites enable the binding of CFH to host cell surfaces, but not to the surfaces of pathogens, thus leading to the complement

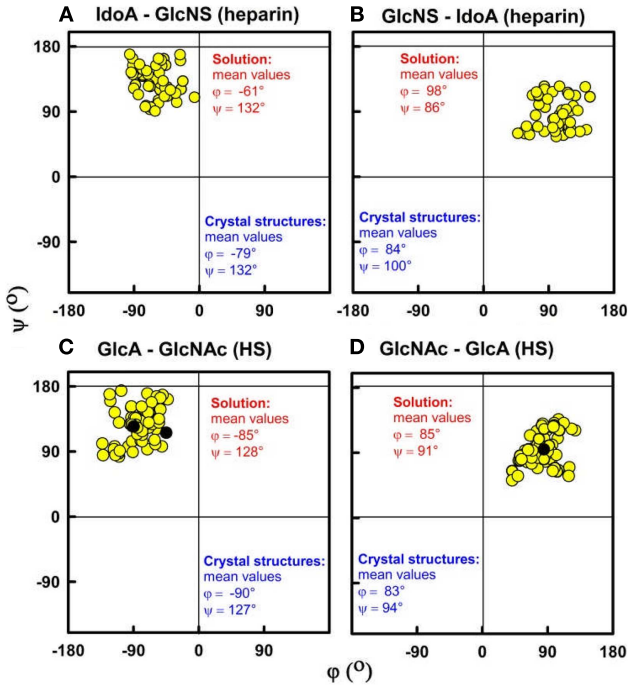


FIGURE 6 | Phi (φ) and psi (ψ) dihedral angles for heparin and HS. The four atoms that define the φ and ψ dihedral angles are shown in **Figure 2**. **(A,B)** For heparin, the IdoA2S–GlcNS6S and GlcNS6S–IdoA2S φ–ψ angle pairs from the best-fit solution structure models are shown as filled circles for each of dp18, dp24, dp30, and dp36. Their mean values are shown in red (9). The φ–ψ pairs from the corresponding crystal structures are shown in blue. **(C,D)** For HS, the GlcA–GlcNAc and GlcNAc–GlcA φ–ψ angles in the best-fit models for each fragment are shown. These correspond to structures for dp6 to dp24, and their mean values are shown in red (14).

regulatory protection of host cells. CFH also binds C-reactive protein at SCR-6/8 and SCR-16/20 (6). The binding of C-reactive protein to damaged host cells will lead to C3b regulation following CFH binding to C-reactive protein. Weak zinc binding sites are primarily located within SCR-6/8 (21); these sites lead to the precipitation of CFH–C3b complexes in the pathophysiological concentrations of zinc found in the retina (22). In addition to these ligand interactions, CFH self-associates with itself to form dimers and higher oligomers (23). Although the physiological role of CFH oligomers is not yet clear, except perhaps in facilitating the development of drusen deposits in the retina at the onset of AMD (23), CFH oligomer formation is a significant factor in the design of experiments with CFH.

For immune function, the four most notable features of CFH–ligand interactions are their moderate binding strengths, their multivalency, their dependence on ionic strength, and CFH self-association:

(i) The strength of the CFH–ligand interaction is central for complement regulation. For most macromolecular interactions, the dissociation constant K_D is similar to the physiological concentration. The K_D corresponds to the concentration at which a given complex is 50% dissociated. Given that C3 and CFH occur at 2–7 μM levels in plasma, the first compilation of all the CFH–ligand K_D values (24) unsurprisingly showed that most K_D values are also micromolar. These micromolar values mean that only partial complexes of CFH with C3b and heparin are formed during normal CFH regulatory function. In addition, these micromolar affinities mean that these CFH–ligand interactions can be easily misinterpreted in biochemical assays for reason of incomplete binding.

(ii) Complement factor H undergoes multivalent interactions with its major C3b, C3d, heparin, and CRP ligands. Multivalency means that analyses based on simple 1:1 interactions may not be adequate for accurate quantitative studies of the CFH–ligand interaction. This issue is best resolved by performing CFH fragments–ligand studies alongside studies based on full-length CFH, such as those of CFH with heparin to characterize its co-operative binding (10).

(iii) Many CFH–ligand interactions involve opposing ionic interactions between CFH and its ligands. The buffer in plasma corresponds to 137 mM NaCl/11 mM phosphate (24). Experiments that use low salt will promote these interactions, while high salt will inhibit these interactions. While the use of low (50 mM NaCl) and high (250 mM NaCl) salt levels can be useful, they may lead to undesired side-effects. For example, C3d is monomeric in 137 mM NaCl, yet forms dimers and trimer/tetramer in 50 mM NaCl buffer (25). A related case is 2 mM calcium that stabilizes C-reactive protein, thus the use of 2 mM calcium is important for its binding studies with CFH (6).

(iv) Full-length CFH is well-characterized to undergo 5–14% self-association in 137 mM NaCl/11 mM phosphate buffer. The presence of CFH oligomers will complicate experiments that require high protein concentrations.

BIVALENT AND CO-OPERATIVE BINDING OF CFH–HS

The immune function of CFH is determined by its major functional activities at its N-terminal and C-terminal SCR domains (**Figure 1**). The middle SCR domains possess shorter sequences, longer inter-domain links, and higher glycosylation levels, suggesting that these middle domains act as conformational spacers. Because there is no crystal structure for full-length CFH, the combination of X-ray and neutron scattering and sedimentation coefficient modeling produced the first molecular structures for full-length CFH (26, 27). The CFH structure determination approach is similar to those for heparin and HS fragments above. The scattering modeling was based on molecular structures for all 20-SCR domains. These were taken directly from crystal or NMR structures for small CFH fragments, or from predicted SCR structures by homology modeling based on the closest match with known crystal or NMR structures. The inter-SCR linkers are variable and not predictable in their conformation. For the scattering modeling, these linkers were conformationally randomized and used to assemble 2,000 SCR models for CFH in randomized orientations. The scattering curve fits showed that only folded-back domain structures with an overall length of 40 nm (**Figure 1B**) fitted the CFH scattering data. Its length is much reduced compared to a hypothetical linear structure for CFH, which would be 73 nm

in length. Two distinct models for CFH have been computed, which give similar and indistinguishable scattering fits. In the first one, the SCR-1/7 domains are extended in shape and SCR-8/20 are looped back (**Figure 1**) (24). In the second one, the SCR-13/20 domains are extended and SCR-1/12 are looped back (27). The first model is more easily docked with the C3b–CFH crystal structure, because this requires SCR-1/4 to be extended in shape (28).

The CFH–HS interaction forms the basis for the protection of the native HS-coated host cell surfaces via the S-domains of HS from attack by the innate immune system, directing this immune response instead against pathogenic bacteria, which lack a polyanionic oligosaccharide coating and are therefore unprotected by CFH. Polyanionic molecules such as HS and others such as the sialic acids on host cell surfaces enhance the regulatory effectiveness of CFH by 10-fold through its inhibition of complement activation (29–31). Two independent heparin binding sites are located at the SCR-6/8 and SCR-19/20 domains in CFH (**Figure 1A**). Notably, SCR-7 and SCR-20 have the two most basic charge densities in CFH (27), these basic charges being optimal for interactions with anionic S-domains. The availability of molecular structures for CFH, heparin, and HS fragments (above), and the combined application of ultracentrifugation, scattering, molecular modeling, and surface plasmon resonance (below) to study CFH–heparin complexes provided the first molecular picture of CFH binding to heparin.

The ultracentrifugation experiments of CFH mixtures with heparin dp6–dp36 (equivalent to S-domains) identified multiple different CFH–heparin complexes in the size distribution analyses $c(s)$ (10). Unbound monomeric CFH shows a peak close to 5.5 S. The peaks for heparin dp6–dp36 are between 1.1 and 1.8 S and do not overlap with that for CFH. Even though unbound CFH showed small oligomer peaks between 8 and 16 S that make up 15% of the total peak intensity, the marked differences in these peaks after adding heparin provided unequivocal evidence of complex formation (**Figure 7**). The CFH mixtures with dp6 and dp12 showed small decreases in these peaks between 8 and 16 S (not shown). However the CFH mixtures with dp18–dp36 showed large peak intensity increases of up to 63% for dp36. If CFH and heparin dp30/dp36 formed a 1:1 complex, the increased peak sizes corresponded to a K_D value of about 0.5 μM. Even with 63% CFH–heparin oligomer formation, the CFH monomer peak continued to be visible, showing that complex formation is incomplete. Ultracentrifugation also showed that heparin dp10 bound tightly to SCR-6/8 and this is consistent with a micromolar affinity (32). In addition, the small CFH oligomer peaks shifted to lower S values after adding heparin (**Figure 7**). This showed that a new type of CFH oligomer structure with more extended structures had formed with heparin. As controls, experiments with native HS material (containing both S-domains and NA-domains) showed similar peak changes, while the use of NA-domains alone showed much reduced interactions with CFH.

The scattering experiments were complementary to ultracentrifugation because of their sensitivity to aggregate formation that may be missed in the ultracentrifuge. In agreement with ultracentrifugation, little changes were seen by scattering for CFH mixtures with heparin dp6 and dp12 (10). However, large increases in both molecular weights and R_G values were seen for CFH mixtures with heparin dp18–dp36. The distance distribution analyses $P(r)$ showed that the maximum dimension of CFH increased from 34 to 40 nm in the presence of heparin dp36. Because no indefinitely sized aggregates were seen by scattering, these results agree with the formation of large CFH–heparin oligomers with specific sizes.

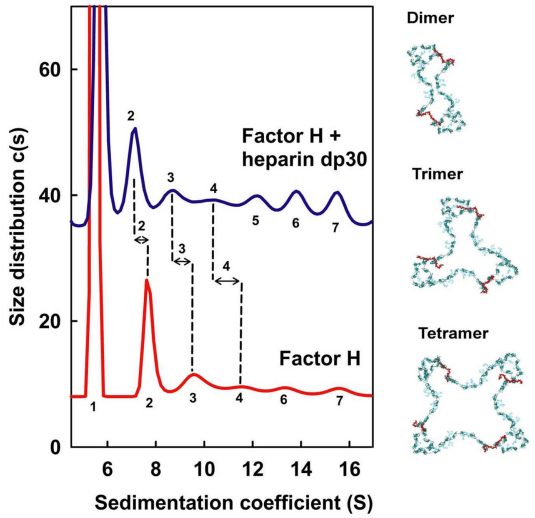


FIGURE 7 | Sedimentation velocity analyses of CFH mixtures with heparin dp30. CFH was studied alone (red) and with a 1:1 molar ratio of dp30 (blue) by sedimentation velocity in the analytical ultracentrifuge. The CFH monomer $s_{20,w}$ peak is labeled as 1, and the CFH oligomer $s_{20,w}$ peaks for the dimer, trimer, and tetramer onward are denoted by 2, 3, 4, and upwards. Peaks 2, 3, and 4 are better defined and the change in the sedimentation coefficients between CFH and CFH–dp30 is shown by the vertical dashed lines. On the right, dimer, trimer, and tetramer models for CFH are shown in blue–green, with the heparin cross-links shown in red. The dp30 heparin sizes are sufficiently long enough to cross-link the SCR-7 and SCR-20 domains between different CFH molecules, leading to the formation of dimer, trimer, and tetramer as ring-like molecular structures. Redrawn from Khan et al. (10).

To clarify the ultracentrifugation and scattering results, surface plasmon resonance experiments were performed with both full-length CFH and recombinant SCR-6/8 and SCR-16/20 in solution with heparin immobilized on the sensor chip. The binding data showed mostly fast on-rates and off-rates with the heparin surface. Curve fits of the binding responses gave K_D values of 1–3 μM for full-length CFH, and similar but significantly weaker K_D values of 4 μM for the SCR-6/8 fragment and 20 μM for the SCR-16/20 fragment (**Figure 8**). These K_D values confirm cooperativity between the two different heparin binding sites in CFH. As controls, the use of immobilized unfractionated HS containing both NA-domains and S-domains showed a K_D value of 2 μM with full-length CFH, while use of immobilized HS fragments (i.e., NA-domains) showed much weaker CFH binding. These experiments confirmed the importance of the heparin-like S-domains for this interaction.

These methods show that the immune function of CFH at host cell surfaces is well-described by a bivalent and co-operative model of CFH binding to the S-domains of HS. To visualize this model, molecular modeling of the ultracentrifugation $s_{20,w}$ data

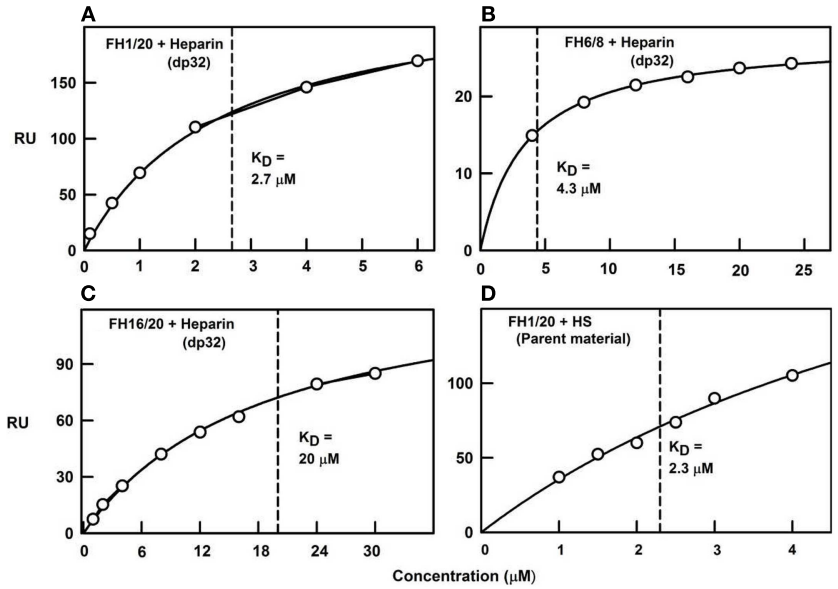


FIGURE 8 | Surface plasmon resonance of the CFH interaction with heparin and HS. The binding curve fits used to determine the K_D values are shown for four experiments using immobilized heparin over which the CFH samples were flowed. Redrawn from Khan et al. (10). **(A)** Biotinylated heparin dp32 was immobilized on a streptavidin chip, and studied using plasma CFH to give a K_D value of 2.7 μM. **(B)** CFH SCR-16/20 was used with the same dp32 chip, from which the K_D value was determined as 20 μM. **(C)** CFH SCR-6/8 was used with the same dp32 chip, from which the K_D value was determined as 4.3 μM. **(D)** Biotinylated unfractionated HS was immobilized on a streptavidin chip, and studied using plasma CFH to give a K_D value of 2.3 μM.

was performed. In the folded-back CFH solution scattering model (**Figure 1B**), the heparin binding SCR-7 and SCR-20 domains were separated by 26 nm. In contrast, the best-fit slightly bent heparin dp36 model is only 12 nm long. Thus, heparin dp36 is not long enough to cross-link the two heparin binding SCR domains in a single CFH molecule. If however the SCR-7 and SCR-20 domains in different CFH molecules were daisy-chained in alternation with heparin dp36, ring-like models for dimers, trimers, tetramers, and pentamers of CFH with heparin could be created (**Figure 7**). These CFH–heparin models explained the experimental $s_{20,w}$ values for the oligomer peaks (10) within an acceptable error of ±0.2 S (blue; **Figure 7**). Either of the two distinct models for CFH (see above) may be used to create these ring-like models. The modeling therefore explained the changes in the peak positions after adding heparin dp36. The modeling also explained why dp6 and dp12 did not form oligomers with CFH, i.e., because they were too short to cross-link CFH.

Complement factor H flexibility at its central domains is unlikely to play a role in heparin binding. Our experimental data for the heparin/HS fragments and CFH indicate that neither possesses sufficient flexibility to form one-to-one complexes. No increased $s_{20,w}$ value for the CFH monomer was seen that would indicate that CFH underwent a significant compaction in the presence of heparin (apart from relatively low changes caused by the increased mass of the CFH–heparin complex). This lack of CFH flexibility concurs with the little conformational variation seen in CFH with change in salt or pH (27). It is likely that the heavily glycosylated and smaller SCR-12/15 domains at the center of CFH maintain the structural independence of its N-terminal and C-terminal ends. The presence of these two different heparin sites at opposite sides of the CFH central region enables CFH to bind selectively, bivalently, and co-operatively to host cells showing a sufficient density of polyanions at their surfaces.

Flexibility in native HS is defined by the presence of semi-rigid S-domains and flexible NA-domains that were deduced from the scattering analyses. Our binding studies show that CFH binds to heparin-like S-domains, but less so to the non-sulfated NA-domains. If the parent HS structure shows flexibility at the NA-domains, this would enable the individual S-domains to reorientate themselves to optimize their stronger contacts with CFH. Thus CFH interacts in the same way with native HS as many other proteins do that bind to native HS through the S-domains (33).

The quantification of the CFH–HS interaction permits critical comparisons with other CFH–ligand affinities. The first full set of K_D values for CFH–ligand complexes was compiled recently (24). This summary (**Table 1**) currently shows that the strongest CFH interactions involve heparin and C3b/C3u. The affinity of CFH (concentrations of 2–5 μM in plasma) for heparin is around 1–2 μM, with the CFH binding for heparin being bivalent. These micromolar K_D values mean that the CFH–heparin complexes will not be fully formed in plasma, and the free and bound forms will be in equilibrium with each other (footnote, **Table 1**). The larger K_D values of 4 and 20 μM for the separate SCR-6/8 and SCR-16/20 fragments correspond to weaker binding to heparin at each of two independent binding sites (10). In comparison with the K_D value for intact CFH, this shows co-operative binding. The CFH interactions with C3b and C3u have low K_D values of around 1 μM. Since C3 is 5 μM in plasma, these complexes (**Figure 9A**)

Table 1 | Selected dissociation constants, K_D, for the CFH interactions with its ligands.

Interaction	K_D (μM)[a]	Method[b]	Buffer (abbreviated)[c]	Reference
CFH–HEPARIN				
CFH–heparin dp32/dp36	0.5, 2.7	SV, SPR	10 mM HEPES with 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(10)
SCR-6/8–heparin dp32	4.3	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(10)
SCR-16/20–heparin dp32	20	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(10)
CFH–C3b OR CFH–C3u				
CFH–C3b	0.59–1.6	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(18)
CFH–C3u	0.59	SV	PBS with 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(34)
SCR-1/4–C3b	11	SPR	PBS with 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(28)
SCR-1/4–C3b	9.8–13.5	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(18)
SCR-19/20–C3b	5.4	SPR	PBS with 140 mM NaCl, pH 7.3	(20)
SCR-19/20–C3b	3.5–4.5	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(18)
SCR-19/20–C3b	0.54	SPR	10 mM HEPES with 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.2	(35)
CFH–CRP				
CFH–CRP	4.2	SPR	10 mM Tris, 137 mM NaCl, 2 mM $CaCl_2$, pH 7.4	(6)
CFH SELF-ASSOCIATION				
CFH–CFH	28	SE	10 mM HEPES with 137 mM NaCl and EDTA, pH 7.4	(23)
CFH–ZINC				
CFH–zinc	~10	SAXS	10 mM HEPES, 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(21, 23)
C3b–zinc	~100	SAXS	10 mM HEPES, 137 mM NaCl, pH 7.4	(22)

[a] *If the interacting species are both at 5 μM and the K_D value is 1 μM, 64% of the complex will be formed. If the K_D value is 10-fold weaker at 10 μM, 27% of the complex will be formed.*

[b] *ED, equilibrium dialysis; SAXS, small-angle X-ray scattering; SE, sedimentation equilibrium; SPR, surface plasmon resonance; SV, sedimentation velocity.*

[c] *Buffer additives are common, especially for SPR studies. These are reported in the more detailed survey of Perkins et al. (24).*

will again be only partially formed in plasma. The K_D values of around 10 and around 4 μM for the separate SCR-1/4 and SCR-19/20 sites for C3b, respectively, are also weaker (18). The reason why the latter two K_D values are weaker compared to intact CFH is not clear, because it has not been shown experimentally that CFH binds bivalently to one molecule of C3b or C3u. A CFH–C3b complex formed through SCR-1/4 binding (**Figure 1B**) may also bind to a second molecule of C3b at its C3d (TED) domain, hence decreasing the observed K_D value (**Figure 1A**). Overall, however, the similar binding affinities of CFH for C3b/C3u and heparin indicate that these values are optimal for the effective immune role of CFH as a host cell surface regulator of C3b activity.

The other CFH–ligand interactions are weaker than those of CFH–heparin. C3d (K_D of 3–8 μM) and C-reactive protein (K_D of 4 μM) (6, 36) show weaker affinities for CFH (**Table 1**), suggesting that these interactions only become important during excess inflammation (acute phase response) when high local concentrations of C3d or C-reactive protein may occur. When either of these two ligands is bound to host cell surfaces, additional CFH binding sites are potentially available to reinforce host cell protection, similar to that suggested for CFH–heparin (**Figure 9B**). The monomer–dimer K_D value of 28 μM for CFH self-association (23) and the K_D value of about 10 μM for CFH–zinc binding and about 100 μM for C3b–zinc binding indicate even weaker affinities (22). The latter interactions are more relevant to drusen formation (retinal deposits of aggregated proteins and oxidized lipids associated with AMD) (37) than to the CFH–heparin interaction at host cell surfaces.

Other groups have reported K_D values for the CFH–heparin interaction. That of 9.2 nM was reported for CFH binding to unfractionated heparin in 50 mM Na phosphate, 100 mM NaCl buffer, pH 7.2, while that of 9 μM was reported for CFH SCR-19/20 binding to heparin dp4 in 20 mM acetate, 200 mM NaCl buffer, pH 4 (38, 39). The differences from the values in **Table 1** are attributable to the less physiological ionic strengths used in these experiments, these buffers being rather different from that of Dulbecco's phosphate buffer (137 mM NaCl and 11 mM phosphate, pH 7.4).

CONCLUSION AND FUTURE CONSIDERATIONS

The immune significance of the CFH–HS interactions has been clarified by our molecular solution structures for heparin, HS, and CFH. We provide a first molecular model of the CFH–HS interaction, i.e., a bivalent and co-operative CFH binding mechanism to heparin and HS exists that clarifies how CFH binds to host cell surfaces. At the cell surface, native HS is comprised of sulfated heparin-like S-domains interspaced by desulfated NA-domains of HS. The heparin solution structures possess semi-rigid extended conformations with notably less flexibility than those found in the flexible extended or bent desulfated HS structures. The solution structure of CFH revealed a folded-back 20-SCR domain structure in which the functional N-terminal and C-terminal domains are extended outwards from a compact core of shorter glycosylated SCR domains with longer inter-SCR linkers. Unlike the NA-domains of HS, there is no evidence for significant flexibility in full-length CFH. Consequently, the combination of

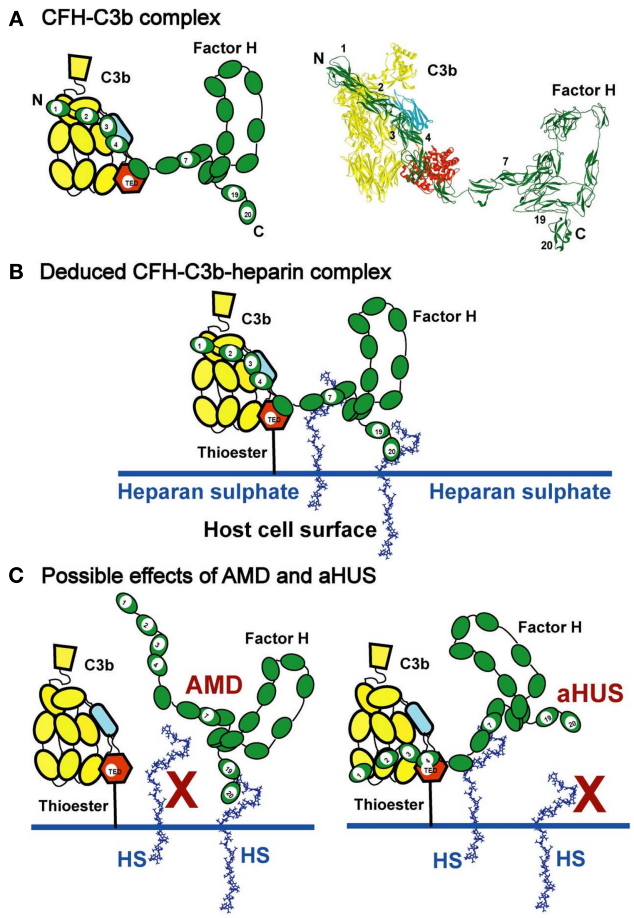


FIGURE 9 | Schematic views of CFH binding to a host cell surface. **(A)** CFH is represented by a cartoon showing the 20-SCR domains, and bound to C3b in the cleft formed between the CUB/TED domains (blue–red) and the macroglobulin, C345, and linker domains (yellow). A molecular view of this interaction is shown on the right. **(B)** CFH binds bivalently at its SCR-7 and SCR-20 domains to anionic charges on the HS-coated host cell surface (denoted as HS and represented here by heparin dp36). For simplicity, the C-terminal interaction of CFH with C3d (**Figure 1A**) is not shown. This bivalent binding positions the SCR-1/4 domains in a conformation that binds readily to C3b when C3b is covalently bound to host cell surfaces through the thioester bond. The C3b interaction with CFH results in the Factor I-mediated degradation of C3b to form C3d (the TED domain) and C3c, thereby regulating complement activation at host cell surfaces. **(C)** The potential effect of polymorphisms and mutations on C3b regulation is schematically indicated. In AMD, the association of the Tyr402His polymorphism in SCR-7 is presumed to weaken the interaction between HS and SCR-7, so the proximity of CFH in relation to SCR-1/4 of surface-bound C3b is reduced. In aHUS, mutations in SCR-19 and SCR-20 are presumed to weaken the interaction between HS and SCR-19/20, while CFH remains bound to HS through SCR-7. In both AMD and aHUS, the effect is that CFH is no longer held in an optimal position on the host cell surface to interact with C3b at the SCR-1/4 domains.

the non-flexible CFH and heparin dp18–dp36 structures *in vitro* leads to the formation of ring-like models for their complexes (**Figure 7**). *In vivo*, the views of **Figure 7** are readily transformed to suggest how a CFH monomer binds to two different S-domains on a host cell surface (**Figure 9B**). The flexibility of the NA-domains may facilitate optimal binding of the CFH and S-domains at the cell surface.

Such a bivalent CFH binding mechanism to HS has implications for immune function. In theory, the combination of two separate weak binding events with micromolar affinities becomes a much strengthened interaction if both weakly bound CFH sites bind simultaneously to HS at a cell surface. This prediction was confirmed by surface plasmon resonance studies of full-length CFH and its functional fragments to immobilized heparin on sensor chips. Such a binding interaction may position CFH SCR-1/4 away from the cell surface to facilitate their binding to surface-bound C3b for its regulation. The binding of CFH at SCR-19/20 to the cell surface may orientate CFH into a position that is optimal for its SCR-1/4 domains to bind to C3b (**Figure 9B**).

For reason of co-operativity, CFH is envisaged to bind preferentially to surfaces showing the right spatial density of anionic oligosaccharides. This implies that the moderately strong binding of CFH to host cell surfaces may differ between different cell types or degrees of sulfation. If HS binding is reduced at either SCR-7 or SCR-20 in CFH, co-operativity implies that there will be a disproportionate effect on CFH regulatory function. In CFH-associated genetic diseases such as AMD and aHUS, the CFH–heparin interaction may be affected by polymorphisms or mutations. Disease-risk polymorphisms will exert their effect over a period of decades, while disease-causing mutations will show a much earlier effect during a lifespan. The AMD-risk CFH polymorphism Y402H occurs in 33% of individuals. AMD occurs primarily in the aged population, this being responsible for over 50% of blindness in the elderly in the Western world (40). Mutations leading to aHUS occur mostly in the C-terminal SCR-19/20 domains of CFH, and aHUS is a common cause of renal failure in young children (41).

The biochemical mechanism of CFH-associated genetic disease may involve either the facilitation of CFH aggregation to form pathogenic deposits, or the biochemical loss of CFH regulatory control (42). Present evidence for either mechanism is not definitive. In terms of an aggregation mechanism, CFH has been found in drusen that are a hall-mark of AMD (43). Glycosaminoglycans have also been identified within Bruch's membrane, although their size and structure in drusen is not yet known (44). The availability of free S-domains in glycosaminoglycans with size dp18 or more may lead to the formation of ring-like CFH–heparin aggregates, e.g., if these S-domains are released from the cell surface during inflammatory attack. Polyanions also cause CFH to aggregate (45). In terms of an alternative mechanism based on reduced inflammatory regulation that may lead to disease, CFH disease-causing mutations have been summarized on the web (46). These affect each of the two CFH–heparin binding sites:

(i) Three studies of the Tyr402His polymorphism in SCR-7 show that CFH His402 binds more weakly to heparin than CFH Tyr402 (47–49). If so, the weaker binding of CFH His402 to the heparin-like S-domains of HS would compromise both the CFH interaction with C3b and the bivalent binding of CFH to cell surfaces (**Figure 9C**). This scenario is similar to that proposed for the CFH–CRP interaction (6) in that the weaker binding of CFH His402 to host cell surfaces would

predispose toward greater inflammatory damage. However, other studies reported variable outcomes depending on the heparin preparation in use and its degree of sulfation (50, 51), while another study reported that no significant difference was observable between the Tyr402 and His402 allotypes (52). In opposition to these results, the crystal structure of SCR-6/8 His402 bound to a heparin analog suggests that the S-domains bind more strongly to the His402 allotype than to the Tyr402 allotype (53).

(ii) For C-terminal CFH mutations in SCR-19/20 that lead to aHUS, these occur mostly in young individuals, often being triggered by an immune insult to the kidney such as a bacterial infection (41). aHUS is primarily caused by mutations within SCR-19/20, often those affecting heparin binding or C3d-binding properties (46). The C-terminal mutations may affect CFH function by perturbing the orientation of SCR-1/4 relative to C3b when CFH is bound to the host cell surface (**Figure 9C**).

It is not clear at present why a polymorphism at SCR-7 in CFH leads to one immune disease, while mutations at SCR-19/20 lead to a different disease altogether. Further developments to elucidate the molecular mechanism for CFH binding to native HS may lead to new therapeutic approaches for diseases such as AMD or aHUS.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank University College London, the Medical Research Council, the Biotechnology and Biological Sciences Research Council, Biolin Scientific, the Fight for Sight Charity, the Henry Smith Charity, and the Higher Education Commission of Pakistan for studentships and grant funding. We are particularly grateful to Dr. Ruodan Nan and Professor Barbara Mulloy for their help with our studies with CFH, C3, heparin, and HS.

REFERENCES

1. Walport MJ. Complement. *N Engl J Med* (2001) **344**:1058–66 1140–44. doi:10.1056/NEJM200104053441406
2. Law SKA, Reid KBM. *Complement*. 2nd ed. Oxford: IRL Press (1995).
3. Zipfel PF, Skerka C. Complement regulators and inhibitory proteins. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2009) **9**:729–40. doi:10.1038/nri2620
4. Ricklin D, Hajishengallis G, Yang K, Lambris JD. Complement: a key system for immune surveillance and homeostasis. *Nat Immunol* (2010) **11**:785–97. doi:10.1038/ni.1923
5. Okemefuna AI, Stach L, Rana S, Ziai Buetas AJ, Gor J, Perkins SJ. C-reactive protein exists in an NaCl concentration dependent pentamer-decamer equilibrium in physiological buffer. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:1041–52. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.044495
6. Okemefuna AI, Nan R, Miller A, Gor J, Perkins SJ. Complement factor H binds at two independent sites to C-reactive protein in acute-phase concentrations. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:1053–65. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.044529
7. Coombe DR, Kett WC. Heparan sulfate-protein interactions: therapeutic potential through structure-function insights. *Cell Mol Life Sci* (2005) **62**:410–24. doi:10.1007/s00018-004-4293-7
8. Khan S, Gor J, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ. Semi-rigid solution structures of heparin by constrained X-ray scattering modelling: new insight into heparin-protein complexes. *J Mol Biol* (2010) **395**:504–21. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2009.10.064
9. Khan S, Gor J, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ. Semi-rigid solution structures of heparin by constrained X-ray scattering modelling: new insight into heparin-protein complexes. *J Mol Biol* (2013) **425**:1847. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2009.10.064
10. Khan S, Nan R, Gor J, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ. Bivalent and co-operative binding of complement factor H to heparan sulphate and heparin. *Biochem J* (2012) **444**:417–28. doi:10.1042/BJ20120183
11. Langdown J, Belzar KJ, Savory WJ, Baglin TP, Huntington JA. The critical role of hinge-region expulsion in the induced-fit heparin binding mechanism of antithrombin. *J Mol Biol* (2009) **386**:1278–89. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2009.01.028
12. Pellegrini L, Burke DF, von Delft F, Mulloy B, Blundell TL. Crystal structure of fibroblast growth factor receptor ectodomain bound to ligand and heparin. *Nature* (2000) **407**:1029–34. doi:10.1038/35039551
13. Schlessinger J, Plotnikov AN, Ibrahimi OA, Eliseenkova AV, Yeh BK, Yayon A, et al. Crystal structure of a ternary FGF-FGFR-heparin complex reveals a dual role for heparin in FGFR binding and dimerization. *Mol Cell* (2000) **6**:743–50. doi:10.1016/S1097-2765(00)00073-3
14. Khan S, Fung KW, Rodriguez E, Patel R, Gor J, Mulloy B, et al. The solution structure of heparan sulphate differs from that of heparin: implications for function. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**:27737–51. doi:10.1074/jbc.M113.492223
15. Khan S, Rodriguez E, Patel R, Gor J, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ. The solution structure of heparan sulphate differs from that of heparin: implications for function. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**:24842–54. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.226027
16. Lütteke T. Analysis and validation of carbohydrate three-dimensional structures. *Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr* (2009) **65**:156–68. doi:10.1107/S0907444909001905
17. Lütteke T, von der Lieth CW. pdb-care (PDB carbohydrate residue check): a program to support annotation of complex carbohydrate structures in PDB files. *BMC Bioinformatics* (2004) **5**:69. doi:10.1186/1471-2105-5-69
18. Schmidt CQ, Herbert AP, Kavanagh D, Gandy C, Fenton CJ, Blaum BS, et al. A new map of glycosaminoglycan and C3b binding sites on factor H. *J Immunol* (2008) **181**:2610–9.
19. Sharma AK, Pangburn MK. Identification of three physically and functionally distinct binding sites for C3b in human complement factor H by deletion mutagenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1996) **93**:10996–1001. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.20.10996
20. Jokiranta TS, Hellwage J, Koistinen V, Zipfel PF, Meri S. Each of the three binding sites of factor H interacts with a distinct site on C3b. *J Biol Chem* (2000) **275**:27657–62. doi:10.1074/jbc.M002903200
21. Nan R, Farabella I, Schumacher F, Miller A, Gor J, Martin ACR, et al. Localisation of the major zinc-binding site of complement factor H to the SCR-6/8 domains: possible implications for age-related macular degeneration. *J Mol Biol* (2011) **408**:714–35. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2011.03.006
22. Nan R, Tetchner S, Rodriguez E, Pao P-J, Gor J, Lengyel I, et al. Zinc-induced self-association of complement C3b and factor H: implications for inflammation and age-related macular degeneration. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**:19197–210. doi:10.1074/jbc.M113.476143
23. Nan R, Gor J, Perkins SJ. Implications of the progressive self-association of wild-type human factor H for complement regulation and disease. *J Mol Biol* (2008) **375**:891–900. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2007.11.015
24. Perkins SJ, Nan R, Li K, Khan S, Miller A. Complement factor H-ligand interactions: self-association, multivalency and dissociation constants. *Immunobiology* (2012) **217**:281–97. doi:10.1016/j.imbio.2011.10.003
25. Li K, Okemefuna AI, Gor J, Hannan JP, Asokan R, Holers VM, et al. Solution structure of the complex formed between human complement C3d and full length complement receptor type 2. *J Mol Biol* (2008) **384**:137–50. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2008.08.084
26. Aslam M, Perkins SJ. Folded-back solution structure of monomeric factor H of human complement by synchrotron X-ray and neutron scattering, analytical ultracentrifugation and constrained molecular modelling. *J Mol Biol* (2001) **309**:1117–38. doi:10.1006/jmbi.2001.4720
27. Okemefuna AI, Nan R, Gor J, Perkins SJ. Electrostatic interactions contribute to the folded-back conformation of wild-type human factor H. *J Mol Biol* (2009) **391**:98–118. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2009.06.010
28. Wu J, Wu YQ, Ricklin D, Janssen BJ, Lambris JD, Gros P. Structure of complement fragment C3b-factor H and implications for host protection by complement regulators. *Nat Immunol* (2009) **10**:728–33. doi:10.1038/ni.1755
29. Pangburn MK. Host recognition and target differentiation by factor H, a regulator of the alternative pathway of complement. *Immunopharmacology* (2000) **49**:149–57. doi:10.1016/S0162-3109(00)80300-8
30. Meri S, Pangburn MK. Discrimination between activators and nonactivators of the alternative pathway of complement: regulation via a sialic acid/polyanion

binding site on factor H. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1990) **87**:3982–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.10.3982
31. Pangburn MK, Müller-Eberhard HJ. Complement C3 convertase: cell surface restriction of βIH control and generation of restriction on neuraminidase treated cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1978) **75**:2416–20. doi:10.1073/pnas.75.5.2416
32. Fernando AN, Furtado PB, Clark SJ, Gilbert HE, Day AJ, Sim RB, et al. Associative and structural properties of the region of complement factor H encompassing the Tyr402His disease-related polymorphism and its interactions with heparin. *J Mol Biol* (2007) **368**:564–81. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2007.02.038
33. Mulloy B, Khan S, Perkins SJ. The molecular architecture of heparin and heparan sulfate: recent developments in solution structural studies. *Pure Appl Chem* (2012) **84**:65–76. doi:10.1351/PAC-CON-11-10-27
34. Li K, Gor J, Perkins SJ. Self-association and domain rearrangements between complement C3 and C3u provide insight into the activation mechanism of C3. *Biochem J* (2010) **431**:63–72. doi:10.1042/BJ20100759
35. Kajander T, Lehtinen MJ, Hyvärinen S, Bhattacharjee A, Leung E, Isenman DE, et al. Dual interaction of factor H with C3d and glycosaminoglycans in host-nonhost discrimination by complement. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) **108**:2897–902. doi:10.1073/pnas.1017087108
36. Okemefuna AI, Li K, Nan R, Ormsby RJ, Sadlon T, Gordon DL, et al. Multimeric interactions between complement factor H and its C3d ligand provide new insight on complement regulation. *J Mol Biol* (2009) **391**:119–35. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2009.06.013
37. Lengyel I, Flinn JM, Peto T, Linkous DH, Cano K, Bird AC, et al. High concentration of zinc in sub-retinal pigment epithelial deposits. *Exp Eye Res* (2007) **84**:772–80. doi:10.1016/j.exer.2006.12.015
38. Yu H, Munoz EM, Edens RE, Linhardt RJ. Kinetic studies on the interactions of heparin and complement proteins using surface plasmon resonance. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2005) **1726**:168–76. doi:10.1016/j.bbagen.2005.08.003
39. Herbert AP, Uhrin D, Lyon M, Pangburn MK, Barlow PN. Disease-associated sequence variations congregate in a polyanion recognition patch on human factor H revealed in three-dimensional structure. *J Biol Chem* (2006) **281**:16512–20. doi:10.1074/jbc.M513611200
40. Bird AC. Therapeutic targets in age-related macular disease. *J Clin Invest* (2010) **120**:3033–41. doi:10.1172/JCI42437
41. Goodship THJ, Kavanagh D. Pulling the trigger in atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome: the role of pregnancy. *J Am Soc Nephrol* (2010) **21**:731–2. doi:10.1681/ASN.2010030308
42. Perkins SJ, Nan R, Okemefuna AI, Li K, Khan S, Miller A. Multiple interactions of complement factor H with its ligands in solution: a progress report. Current topics on complement and eye diseases (Eds. J. D. Lambris and A. Adamis). *Adv Exp Med Biol* (2010) **703**:25–47. doi:10.1007/978-1-4419-5635-4_3
43. Hageman GS, Anderson DH, Johnson LV, Hancox LS, Taiber AJ, Hardisty LI, et al. A common haplotype in the complement regulatory gene factor H (HF1/CFH) predisposes individuals to age-related macular degeneration. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2005) **102**:7227–32. doi:10.1073/pnas.0501536102
44. Kliffen M, Mooy CM, Luider TM, Huijmans JGM, Kerkvliet S, de Jong PTVM. Identification of glycosaminoglycans in age-related macular deposits. *Arch Ophthalmol* (1996) **114**:1009–14. doi:10.1001/archopht.1996.01100140217021
45. Pangburn MK, Rawal N, Cortes C, Alam MN, Ferreira VP, Atkinson MA. Polyanion-induced self-association of complement factor H. *J Immunol* (2009) **182**:1061–8.
46. Saunders RE, Abarrategui-Garrido C, Frémeaux-Bacchi V, Goicoechea de Jorge E, Goodship THJ, López Trascasa M, et al. The interactive factor H-atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome mutation database and website: update and integration of membrane cofactor protein and factor I mutations with structural models. *Hum Mutat* (2007) **28**:222–34. doi:10.1002/humu.20435
47. Herbert AP, Deakin JA, Schmidt CQ, Blaum BS, Egan C, Ferreira VP, et al. Structure shows that a glycosaminoglycan and protein recognition site in factor H is perturbed by age-related macular degeneration-linked single nucleotide polymorphism. *J Biol Chem* (2007) **282**:18960–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.M609636200
48. Skerka C, Lauer N, Weinberger AA, Keilhauer CN, Sühnel J, Smith R, et al. Defective complement control of factor H (Y402H) and FHL-1 in age-related macular degeneration. *Mol Immunol* (2007) **44**:3398–406. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2007.06.018
49. Ormsby RJ, Ranganathan S, Tong JC, Griggs KM, Dimasi DP, Hewitt AW, et al. Functional and structural implications of the complement factor H Y402H polymorphism associated with age-related macular degeneration. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* (2008) **49**:1763–70. doi:10.1167/iovs.07-1297
50. Clark SJ, Higman VA, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ, Lea SM, Sim RB, et al. H384 allotypic variant of factor H associated with age-related macular degeneration has different heparin-binding properties from the non-disease associated form. *J Biol Chem* (2006) **281**:24713–20. doi:10.1074/jbc.M605083200
51. Clark SJ, Perveen R, Hakobyan S, Morgan BP, Sim RB, Bishop PN, et al. Impaired binding of the AMD-associated complement factor H 402H allotype to Bruch's membrane in human retina. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:30192–202. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.103986
52. Yu J, Wiita P, Kawaguchi R, Honda J, Jorgensen A, Zhang K, et al. Biochemical analysis of a common human polymorphism associated with age-related macular degeneration. *Biochemistry* (2007) **46**:8451–61. doi:10.1021/bi700459a
53. Prosser BE, Johnson S, Roversi P, Herbert AP, Blaum BS, Tyrrell J, et al. Structural basis for complement factor H-linked age-related macular degeneration. *J Exp Med* (2007) **204**:2277–83. doi:10.1084/jem.20071069
54. Nan R, Ward G, Gavigan L, Miller A, Gor J, McKay AR, et al. The His402 allotype of complement Factor H show similar self-association to the Tyr402 allotype. *Molec Immunol* [abstract] (2010) **47**:2263. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2010.05.195

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 19 November 2013; accepted: 12 March 2013; published online: 31 March 2014.
*Citation: Perkins SJ, Fung KW and Khan S (2014) Molecular interactions between complement factor H and its heparin and heparan sulfate ligands. Front. Immunol. **5**:126. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00126*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

OPINION ARTICLE
published: 26 November 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00412

The proteoglycan glycomatrix: a sugar microenvironment essential for complement regulation

Simon J. Clark*[1], *Paul N. Bishop*[1] *and Anthony J. Day*[2]*

[1] *Centre for Hearing and Vision Research, Institute of Human Development, Faculty of Medicine and Human Sciences, University of Manchester, Manchester, UK*
[2] *Wellcome Trust Centre for Cell Matrix Research, Faculty of Life Sciences, University of Manchester, Manchester, UK*
**Correspondence: anthony.day@manchester.ac.uk*

Edited by:
Deirdre Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Jacob van den Born, University Medical Center Groningen, Netherlands

Keywords: proteoglycans, glycosaminoglycans, glycomatrix, complement regulation, tissue specificity

Proteoglycans (PGs) are major components of all mammalian tissues, being present ubiquitously on cell surfaces and within extracellular matrices (ECM). They play vital roles in mammalian physiology and have been implicated in many disease processes. PGs comprise a single core protein with one or more glycosaminoglycan (GAG) chains attached where these un-branched polysaccharides are composed of repeating disaccharide units that show considerable diversity in their disaccharide composition, glycosidic linkages, and levels/positions of sulfation (1, 2). GAGs, therefore, contain huge numbers of structural permutations (even in the same chain), representing a vast possible array of diverse structures that can determine the fate of local environments (3): i.e., through their modulation of protein-binding and activity. Thus, PGs constitute a tissue and region-specific microenvironment of sugar molecules, both within the ECM and at the cell-matrix interface, which acts as a local regulator of tissue function and homeostasis. As described below, it is our opinion that this proteoglycan "glycomatrix" plays a key role in the regulation of the immune system by acting as a molecular postcode that controls local immune function (4). Here we will illustrate this with examples of the effects of PGs/GAGs on the immune system in the eye, heart, kidney, and lung. In particular, we will focus on recent evidence that GAGs can positively and negatively regulate the alternative pathway of complement and suggest how the dysregulation of this aspect of innate immunity may contribute to disease processes in a tissue-specific manner.

PROTEOGLYCANS PROVIDE A DIVERSE MOLECULAR POSTCODE FOR PROTEIN REGULATION

Despite the diversity possible in GAG sequences, considerable specificity in chain composition is seen between and within different tissues (5, 6). For example, in the human eye it has been shown that specific GAG structures and PG core proteins are located in defined layers of the retina, resulting in remarkable compartmentalization even within the same organ (6, 7); this has the potential to regulate the binding/function of proteins, such as those that control angiogenesis and innate immunity. Importantly, the glycomatrix can provide a postcode that can be distinguished by different proteins [*via* their abilities to recognize distinct GAG structures (4)], whereby even members of the same protein family [e.g., the interleukin cytokines (8)], can bind differentially, i.e., at "defined" sites.

At present, because of the current limitations in GAG sequencing, there is relatively little detailed information available on the precise structures of glycomatrix postcodes found in different tissues or their protein-binding specificities. What is clear, however, is that GAGs/PGs play an important role in the recruitment and regulation of a wide range of proteins, including modulators of the innate/cellular immune system, as well as those that are involved in tissue remodeling during inflammatory/disease processes. For instance, GAGs have been found to be key elements in regulating pulmonary inflammation during lung infection through their binding of cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors, which promotes leukocyte adhesion and accumulation (9). The binding of cytokines and chemokines to PGs conceals proteolytic cleavage sites: for example, heparan sulfate (HS) limits the proteolytic digestion of interferon-gamma, which increases its activity sixfold (10). Furthermore, GAGs specifically bind matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) as well as their endogenous inhibitors, the tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs). This means that PGs are able to sequester MMPs and TIMPs in specific regions of the lung leading to direct regulation of enzyme activity; e.g., following acute lung injury or infection (9). Other examples include chondroitin 4-sulfate playing a direct role in the presentation of pro-MMP2 to MT3-MMP (where chondroitin 6-sulfate or HS do not do this), thus leading to its activation (11), while on the other hand HS can recruit and inhibit ADAM12 (12).

MODULATION OF THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM BY PROTEOGLYCANS

The PG glycomatrix can influence the innate immune system *via* recruitment of regulatory factors from the blood; e.g., the positive and negative regulators of the complement system, proderdin, and complement factor H (CFH). Properdin stabilizes the alternative pathway C3 convertase, promoting amplification of the complement cascade, leading to C3b deposition that labels targets for destruction by phagocytosis and allows formation of the membrane attack complex, which can lyse cells; this also leads to the production of pro-inflammatory mediators that attract leukocytes and cause mast cell degranulation. Conversely CFH, once recruited to a surface, can accelerate the decay of the C3 convertase and act as a co-factor for

the proteolytic deactivation of C3b, thus dampening-down a complement response. This fine balance between positive and negative regulation can be greatly influenced by the composition of a tissue's glycomatrix (13). While both properdin and CFH bind HS on renal tubular epithelial cells, they recognize distinct, non-overlapping, sequences within HS GAG chains; i.e., they do not compete for binding sites. It was reported that CFH only recognizes highly sulfated HS, while properdin is able to bind more lowly sulfated HS structures (e.g., those lacking N-sulfation) (14). Thus, this differential recognition of the glycomatrix likely allows both positive and negative regulators of the complement alternative pathway to be present together on the surface of these kidney cells, thus ensuring innate immune homeostasis (13). If this balance breaks down (e.g., due to impairment of protein/GAG interactions) it could lead to kidney damage and may explain the worsening of outcome in proteinuric patients, i.e., due to inappropriate complement activation.

The CFH protein is comprised of 20 complement control protein (CCP) domains where CCPs6–8 and CCPs19–20 mediate GAG-binding [see Ref. (15–17)]. Interestingly, our recent work has provided strong evidence that the HSPGs in the glomerular basement membrane (GBM) of the human kidney recruit CFH solely *via* its CCP19–20 surface recognition domain; this region of CFH recognizes highly sulfated HS structures (17). On the other hand, CCP6s–8 are largely responsible for CFH-binding to sites in the human eye, i.e., the retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) and the underlining Bruch's membrane, a multi-layered ECM. We believe that this is because the GAG-binding specificities of the CCP6–8 and CCP19–20 regions are distinct (15, 17) and can therefore provide tissue specificity through recognition of different GAG structures (postcodes) in different tissue locations (see **Table 1**); i.e., they can distinguish different glycomatrices.

Bruch's membrane separates the RPE and photoreceptor cells in the neurosensory retina from the choroid, a vascular bed posterior to these structures. CFH, being the only secreted regulator of the alternative pathway, is solely responsible for protecting ECM such as Bruch's membrane from complement-mediated damage (i.e., preventing complement amplification in healthy host tissues). We have found previously that CFH-binding sites in Bruch's membrane are comprised mainly of HS, but with dermatan sulfate also playing a minor role (16). Moreover, we discovered that the Y402H polymorphism in the *CFH* gene [that changes a tyrosine to histidine in CCP7 (18)] impairs the ability of CFH to bind to GAG postcodes in Bruch's membrane (16). This is likely to be important since this common polymorphism is strongly associated with the development of Age-related Macular Degeneration (AMD) (19–21), which is the most common form of blindness in the western world; individuals homozygous for the 402H form of CFH have a ∼5-fold increased risk of developing AMD (20). Our studies have demonstrated that the disease-associated 402H variant has a rather restricted specificity, requiring highly sulfated structures, as opposed to the 402Y form which is able to bind a broader range of GAG sequences (15, 22). In the glycomatrix of the Bruch's membrane the binding sites for the 402H variant of CFH are rare relative to those for 402Y (16). On this basis we hypothesize that insufficient binding of 402H within the Bruch's membrane will lead to complement over-activation and local chronic inflammation, and thereby damage the RPE, contributing to the formation of the particulate deposits, called drusen, that are the hallmarks of AMD (16, 23, 24).

As noted above, the two GAG-binding regions in CFH have different specificities where these are likely to differentially regulate the interactions of this protein with sites in the eye and kidney (17). This may explain why mutations/polymorphisms within CCPs19–20 are associated with the kidney disease, atypical Hemolytic-Uremic Syndrome (aHUS), where uncontrolled complement activation is believed to lead to inflammation and the formation of blood clots, whereas, the Y402H polymorphism is linked to AMD. Patients suffering from aHUS do not present with any ocular phenotype and similarly AMD patients rarely have associated kidney problems. This provides a striking example of the tissue-specific nature of the glycomatrix microenvironment (e.g., of the

Table 1 | Comparison of the binding properties of the two GAG-binding regions of CFH.

	CCP6–8		CCP19–20
	402Y	402H	
GAG CHAIN RECOGNITION[a]			
Hyaluronan	×	×	×
Dermatan sulfate	✓	✓	×
Chondroitin 4-sulfate	×	×	×
Chondroitin 6-sulfate	×	×	×
Heparan sulfate	✓	✓	✓
Heparin	✓	✓	✓
HEPARIN SULFATION SPECIFICITY[b]			
2-*O* desulfated	↓	↓↓	↓↓
6-*O* desulfated	↓	↓	↓↓
N-*O* desulfated	↓	↓↓↓	↓↓↓↓
TISSUE SPECIFICITY[c]			
Bruch's membrane	+++ (Broad specificity)	+ (Requires 2- and 6-O sulfation)	+ (Unknown)
RPE	+++ (Broad specificity)	+++ (Requires 2- and 6-O sulfation)	+++ (Unknown)
Kidney GBM	−	−	+++

[a] *Based on direct binding experiments where ✓ means binding and × no binding.*

[b] *Binding to selectively desulfated preparations of heparin where ↓ means small reduction in binding, ↓↓ moderate reduction in binding, ↓↓↓ large reduction in binding, and ↓↓↓↓ means no detectable binding.*

[c] *Based on the binding of fluorescently labeled protein (CCP6–8 and CCP19–20) probes to human tissue where − means no binding, + weak binding, ++ moderate binding, and +++ strong binding.*

Bruch's membrane and GBM) and how this might differentially influence disease processes.

AGE-RELATED EFFECTS ON THE GLYCOMATRIX POSTCODE?

Alterations in the biosynthesis and turnover of PGs are known to occur with age (2), therefore concomitant effects on protein recruitment and tissue function would not be surprising. For example, there is an age-related change in the fine structure of HS that affects the migration of endothelial progenitor cells (25). Here the loss of a specific tri-sulfated disaccharide from their surface HS correlates with a reduction in their migratory response to vascular endothelial growth factor; this impairs the engraftment capacity of these cells, contributing to endothelial dysfunction and age-related vascular pathology. Similarly, human aorta HS is subject to age-related increases in the level of 6-O sulfation (26); this, in turn, leads to increased binding of platelet-derived growth factor resulting in its extracellular accumulation, which is hypothesized to facilitate aberrant smooth muscle cell migration and growth, i.e., in individuals prone to developing atherosclerotic disease. Another example is the recent finding that chondroitin sulfate and keratan sulfate chains of aggrecan, a major PG component of articular cartilage, decrease in both number and length with age, affecting amongst other things the mechanical properties of this tissue (27). Given the importance of GAGs in the regulation of complement (as described above), it is plausible that age-related changes in the glycomatrix of the eye could contribute to AMD pathogenesis, such that this might explain the age-related nature of this disease (15, 24).

PROTEOGLYCANS AS TARGETS FOR THERAPEUTICS?

Given the major role played by PGs and their GAG chains in immune homeostasis, it seems plausible that they might make good therapeutic targets for immunological diseases. However, based on the above information, it will perhaps be prudent to attempt to modulate GAG-protein interactions in a tissue-dependent context. In this regard, it has recently been demonstrated that specific heparinoids, such as *N*- and *O*-sulfated K5 polysaccharides, can inhibit the binding of properdin to HS on renal tubular epithelial cells without affecting CFH, thereby controlling complement activation (13); this has the potential to prevent complement-derived tubular injury in proteinuric kidney diseases. Approaches of this type may be able to selectively inhibit the binding of pro-inflammatory proteins to particular GAG structures in a tissue/organ-specific manner and thus correct immune dysregulation in a wide range of pathological conditions.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

In our opinion, the glycomatrix created by PGs remains an under-appreciated contributor to immune regulation. However, an increasing body of evidence is providing insights into just how important these complicated glycoproteins are in providing the fine control to immunological processes in tissue microenvironments, particularly within the ECM. More work is now needed to fully elucidate the biochemical basis of protein/GAG interactions and determine their roles in pathological processes. Further advances in our knowledge of the proteoglycan glycomatrix should facilitate the development of novel, tissue-specific, therapeutics, e.g., for diseases of the immune system.

REFERENCES

1. Sarrazin S, Lamanna WC, Esko JD. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) **3**:a004952. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a004952
2. Taylor KR, Gallo RL. Glycosaminoglycans and their proteoglycans: host-associated molecular patterns for initiation and modulation of inflammation. *FASEB J* (2006) **20**:9–22. doi:10.1096/fj.05-4682rev
3. Schaefer L, Schaefer RM. Proteoglycans: from structural compounds to signaling molecules. *Cell Tissue Res* (2010) **339**:237–46. doi:10.1007/s00441-009-0821-y
4. Langford-Smith A, Keenan TDL, Clark SJ, Bishop PN, Day AJ. The role of complement in age-related macular degeneration: heparan sulphate, a ZIP code for complement factor H? *J Innate Immun* (2013) (in press).
5. Lindahl B, Eriksson L, Lindahl U. Structure of heparan sulphate from human brain, with special regard to Alzheimer's disease. *Biochem J* (1995) **306**:177–84.
6. Clark SJ, Keenan TD, Fielder HL, Collinson LJ, Holley RJ, Merry CL, et al. Mapping the differential distribution of glycosaminoglycans in the adult human retina, choroid, and sclera. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* (2011) **52**:6511–21. doi:10.1167/iovs.11-7909
7. Keenan TD, Clark SJ, Unwin RD, Ridge LA, Day AJ, Bishop PN. Mapping the differential distribution of proteoglycan core proteins in the adult human retina, choroid, and sclera. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* (2012) **53**:7528–38. doi:10.1167/iovs.12-10797
8. Coombe DR. Biological implications of glycosaminoglycan interactions with haemopoietic cytokines. *Immunol Cell Biol* (2008) **86**:598–607. doi:10.1038/icb.2008.49
9. Gill S, Wight TN, Frevert CW. Proteoglycans: key regulators of pulmonary inflammation and the innate immune response to lung infection. *Anat Rec* (2010) **293**:968–81. doi:10.1002/ar.21094
10. Lortat-Jacob H, Baltzer F, Grimaud JA. Heparin decreases the blood clearance of interferon-gamma and increases its activity by limiting the processing of its carboxy-terminal sequence. *J Biol Chem* (1996) **271**:16139–43. doi:10.1074/jbc.271.27.16139
11. Iida J, Wilhelmson KL, Ng J, Lee P, Morrison C, Tam E, et al. Cell surface chondroitin sulfate glycosaminoglycan in melanoma: role in the activation of pro-MMP2 (pro-gelatinase A). *Biochem J* (2007) **403**:553–63. doi:10.1042/BJ20061176
12. Sørensen HP, Vivès RR, Manetopoulos C, Albrechtsen R, Lydolph MC, Jacobsen J, et al. Heparan sulfate regulates ADAM12 through molecular switch mechanism. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**:31920–32. doi:10.1074/jbc.M804113200
13. Zaferani A, Vivès RR, van der Pol P, Navis GJ, Daha MR, van Kooten C, et al. Factor H and properdin recognize different epitopes on renal tubular epithelial heparan sulfate. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**:31471–81. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.380386
14. Zaferani A, Vivès RR, van der Pol P, Hakvoort JJ, Navis GJ, van Goor H, et al. Identification of tubular heparan sulfate as a docking platform for the alternative complement component properdin in proteinuric renal disease. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**:5359–67. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.167825
15. Clark SJ, Higman VA, Mulloy B, Perkins SJ, Lea SM, Sim RB, et al. His-384 allotypic variant of factor H associated with age-related macular degeneration has different heparin binding properties from the non-disease-associated form. *J Biol Chem* (2006) **281**:24713–20. doi:10.1074/jbc.M605083200
16. Clark SJ, Perveen R, Hakobyan S, Morgan BP, Sim RB, Bishop PN, et al. Impaired binding of the age-related macular degeneration-associated complement factor H 402H allotype to Bruch's membrane in human retina. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:30192–202. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.103986
17. Clark SJ, Ridge LA, Herbert AP, Hakobyan S, Mulloy B, Lennon R, et al. Tissue-specific host recognition by complement factor H is mediated by differential activities of its glycosaminoglycan-binding regions. *J Immunol* (2013) **190**:2049–57. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1201751
18. Day AJ, Willis AC, Ripoche J, Sim RB. Sequence polymorphism of human complement factor H. *Immunogenetics* (1988) **27**:211–4. doi:10.1007/BF00346588
19. Hageman GS, Anderson DH, Johnson LV, Hancox LS, Taiber AJ, Hardisty LI, et al. A common haplotype in the complement regulatory gene

factor H (HF1/CFH) predisposes individuals to age-related macular degeneration. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2005) **102**:7227–32. doi:10.1073/pnas.0501536102

20. Sofat R, Casas JP, Webster AR, Bird AC, Mann SS, Yates JR, et al. Complement factor H genetic variant and age-related macular degeneration: effect size, modifiers and relationship to disease subtype. *Int J Epidemiol* (2012) **41**:250–62. doi:10.1093/ije/dyr204
21. Ambati J, Atkinson JP, Gelfand BD. Immunology of age-related macular degeneration. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2013) **13**:438–51. doi:10.1038/nri3459
22. Prosser BE, Johnson S, Roversi P, Herbert AP, Blaum BS, Tyrrell J, et al. Structural basis for complement factor H-linked age-related macular degeneration. *J Exp Med* (2007) **204**:2277–83. doi:10.1084/jem.20071069
23. Clark SJ, Bishop PN, Day AJ. Complement factor H and age-related macular degeneration: the role of glycosaminoglycan recognition in disease pathology. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2010) **38**:1342–8. doi:10.1042/BST0381342
24. Day AJ, Clark SJ, Bishop PN. Understanding the molecular basis of age-related macular degeneration and how the identification of new mechanisms may aid the development of novel therapies. *Expert Rev Ophthalmol* (2012) **6**:123–8. doi:10.1586/eop.11.10
25. Williamson KA, Hamilton A, Reynolds JA, Sipos P, Crocker I, Stringer SE, et al. Age-related impairment of endothelial progenitor cell migration correlates with structural alterations of heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Aging Cell* (2013) **12**:139–47. doi:10.1111/acel.12031
26. Feyzi E, Saldeen T, Larsson E, Lindahl U, Salmivirta M. Age-dependent modulation of heparan sulfate structure and function. *J Biol Chem* (1998) **273**:13395–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.22.13395
27. Lee HY, Han L, Roughley PJ, Grodzinsky AJ, Ortiz C. Age-related nanostructural and nanomechanical changes of individual human cartilage aggrecan monomers and their glycosaminoglycan side chains. *J Struct Biol* (2013) **181**:264–73. doi:10.1016/j.jsb.2012.12.008

Received: 25 September 2013; accepted: 12 November 2013; published online: 26 November 2013.
*Citation: Clark SJ, Bishop PN and Day AJ (2013) The proteoglycan glycomatrix: a sugar microenvironment essential for complement regulation. Front. Immunol. **4**:412. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00412*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

MINI REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 26 December 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00471

Heparanase and autoimmune diabetes

Charmaine J. Simeonovic[1,2]*, Andrew F. Ziolkowski[1,2], Zuopeng Wu[1,2], Fui Jiun Choong[1,2], Craig Freeman[2] and Christopher R. Parish[2]

[1] *Diabetes/Transplantation Immunobiology Laboratory, The John Curtin School of Medical Research, The Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia*
[2] *Cancer and Vascular Biology Group, Department of Immunology, The John Curtin School of Medical Research, The Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia*

Edited by:
Deirdre Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Fulvio D'Acquisto, Queen Mary University of London, UK
Michael Elkin, Hadassah Hebrew University Hospital, Israel

****Correspondence:***
Charmaine J. Simeonovic, Diabetes/Transplantation Immunobiology Laboratory, Department of Immunology, The John Curtin School of Medical Research, The Australian National University, Canberra, ACT 2601, Australia
e-mail: charmaine.simeonovic@anu.edu.au

Heparanase (Hpse) is the only known mammalian endo-β-D-glucuronidase that degrades the glycosaminoglycan heparan sulfate (HS), found attached to the core proteins of heparan sulfate proteoglycans (HSPGs). Hpse plays a homeostatic role in regulating the turnover of cell-associated HS and also degrades extracellular HS in basement membranes (BMs) and the extracellular matrix (ECM), where HSPGs function as a barrier to cell migration. Secreted Hpse is harnessed by leukocytes to facilitate their migration from the blood to sites of inflammation. In the non-obese diabetic (NOD) model of autoimmune Type 1 diabetes (T1D), Hpse is also used by insulitis leukocytes to solubilize the islet BM to enable intra-islet entry of leukocytes and to degrade intracellular HS, an essential component for the survival of insulin-producing islet beta cells. Treatment of pre-diabetic adult NOD mice with the Hpse inhibitor PI-88 significantly reduced the incidence of T1D by ~50% and preserved islet HS. Hpse therefore acts as a novel immune effector mechanism in T1D. Our studies have identified T1D as a Hpse-dependent disease and Hpse inhibitors as novel therapeutics for preventing T1D progression and possibly the development of T1D vascular complications.

Keywords: heparanase, heparan sulfate, islet, diabetes, inflammation, vascular complications

INTRODUCTION

Heparanase (Hpse) is an endo-β-D-glucuronidase that degrades the glycosaminoglycan heparan sulfate (HS). Cloning studies have identified that catalytically active Hpse is encoded by a single mammalian gene (1–3). Hpse is initially produced as an inactive pre-proenzyme which undergoes post-translational processing to yield a 65 kDa proenzyme for secretion. Proteolytic cleavage of proheparanase by the cysteine protease cathepsin L leads to the formation of catalytically active Hpse, a heterodimer consisting of a 50 kDa (human) or 48 kDa (mouse) polypeptide non-covalently bound to a 8 kDa peptide (1, 2, 4–8). HS is a linear polysaccharide that consists of a repeating disaccharide composed of *N*-acetylated glucosamine (GlcNAc) and uronic acid [glucuronic acid (GlcA) or iduronic acid (IdoA)]. HS biosynthesis occurs in the Golgi compartment of cells, with the assembly of component sugar residues occurring directly onto the core proteins of heparan sulfate proteoglycans (HSPGs) (9–11). During the polymerization of HS chains, selected sugar residues are chemically modified by a suite of enzymes (*N*-deacetylase-*N*-sulfotranferase, C5 epimerase, and 2, 3, and 6-*O*-sulfotransferases), resulting in HS chains with regions that are highly sulfated and other regions of lower or no sulfation (10, 11). The sulfated regions of HS, in particular, bind to a vast array of bioactive ligands that include cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, adhesion molecules, lipases, and proteases (12, 13).

Typically, HSPGs are localized at the cell surface (e.g., syndecans 1–4, glypicans 1–6), in the extracellular matrix (ECM), in basement membranes (BMs) (e.g., perlecan, collagen type XVIII, and agrin) and have been identified in the nucleus of certain cells (14, 15). Secreted proheparanase rapidly interacts with cell surface HSPGs and the proheparanase-HSPG complex subsequently undergoes endocytosis. Similarly, Hpse can be internalized after binding to cell surface lipoprotein receptor-related proteins (LPRs) and mannose-6-phosphate receptors (MPRs) (16). Internalized proheparanase is cleaved by intracellular cathepsin L at acidic pH in late endosomes or lysosomes, to form catalytically active Hpse which can either degrade co-endocytosed HS, thereby regulating the turnover of cell-associated HS, or undergo storage within the lysosomes for subsequent secretion (6, 17–21). Optimal Hpse-mediated cleavage of glycosidic bonds in HS occurs at pH 5.5–6.0 and typically at sites adjacent to *N*- or 6-*O*-sulfated glucosamine (16, 22), e.g., the linkage of glucuronic acid to 6-*O*-sulfated glucosamine (23). HS in BMs and ECM is degraded by Hpse secreted by platelets, endothelial cells, leukocytes, and metastasizing tumor cells (12). In these settings, Hpse activity can result from (i) activation of proheparanase bound to cell surface HSPG or to cation-independent MPRs (CIMPRs) by an extracellular source of cathepsin L, e.g., produced by macrophages (24, 25); (ii) cytokine-, fatty acid-, or nucleotide-stimulated release of an intracellular pool of catalytically active Hpse (26–29) which may be subsequently captured by cell surface receptors such as CIMPRs (25); or (iii) platelet degranulation (30). This regulated release of Hpse in the local microenvironment limits the availability of Hpse activity, preserving the essential and diverse biological functions of HS.

Heparanase also exhibits non-enzymatic functions which impact on cell signaling, adhesion, and migration, as well as on gene expression. Such functions are generally expressed at neutral pH (31–33). Interaction of Hpse with cell surface receptors on

endothelial cells activates intracellular Akt, PI3K, and p38 kinase signaling to stimulate cell migration and Src kinase-mediated upregulation of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) for angiogenesis (6, 18, 34). Hpse lacking catalytic enzyme activity has been shown to increase the expression of certain growth factors (35) and to facilitate cell binding to HS in the ECM and to endothelial cells *in vitro* (32).

Intra-nuclear Hpse modulates intra-nuclear HS/HSPGs and exerts direct effects on gene transcription. Transfer of Hpse to the nucleus occurs via Hsp90 in endothelial cells following fatty acid stimulation (29). Intra-nuclear Hpse decreases the level of the HSPG syndecan-1 in the nucleus of myeloma cells (14) and cleaves nuclear HS which in turn inhibits histone acetyltransferases (36). Recently, active Hpse has been reported to directly mediate epigenetic effects by regulating histone methylation, a process that directly influences the transcription of certain immune response genes involved in T-cell migration and function, e.g., IL-2 and IFN-γ (37). Hpse was also found to bind to the promoters of micro-RNAs involved in T-cell differentiation (37) and to influence the transcription of genes encoding enzymes involved in glucose metabolism (29). Such nuclear roles for Hpse, either with or without HS-degrading activity, would be expected to impact on T cells in inflammatory responses.

HEPARANASE AND INFLAMMATION

Heparan sulfate has several important biological functions which are regulated by Hpse in inflammation. An inflammatory response is generated when leukocytes are rapidly recruited from the blood to sites of tissue injury. In the early stages of inflammation, cell surface HS on cytokine-activated or inflamed endothelial cells functions in presenting lymphocyte-attractant chemokines to leukocytes in the vascular lumen (12, 38). The subsequent immobilization of the leukocytes (e.g., T cells) at the endothelial cell surface is enhanced by the binding of chemokine-activated integrins on the leukocytes to adhesion molecules such as ICAM-1 or VCAM-1 expressed on endothelial cells. Such interactions could potentially be facilitated by the binding of T cell-bound inactive Hpse to HS expressed on the surface of endothelial cells (12, 32, 33). The chemokine-binding role for endothelial cell surface HS may also function in establishing a chemokine gradient to *direct* leukocyte migration across the endothelium (12). Having crossed the blood vessel wall, most probably by passing between endothelial cells, inflammatory leukocytes employ degradative mechanisms to traverse the sub-endothelial BM. In fact BM HS, particularly associated with the HSPG perlecan, helps the BM to act as a barrier to leukocyte migration. This barrier property is attributed to the length of HS chains (up to 400 sugar residues) and to their intrinsic capacity to interact with other BM matrix proteins, forming a cell-impenetrable scaffold (12). To overcome this obstacle, leukocytes including T cells (39, 40), nearby endothelial cells (26) and possibly platelets (40) produce Hpse to degrade BM HS and proteases to destroy BM matrix proteins. The disassembly of the BM matrix components aids the passage of leukocytes across the BM and their entry into the surrounding tissue. Similarly, Hpse is released by inflammatory leukocytes to solubilize HS in the ECM of underlying tissues and to aid their navigation to sites of inflammation (12). During the course of the degradation of extracellular HS, HS-bound cytokines and chemokines can be liberated into the local microenvironment, potentially augmenting cell recruitment and exacerbating the inflammatory response (12).

The role for Hpse as a "path-maker" required by migrating leukocytes is of particular significance for T cell-mediated autoimmune diseases. Indeed, Hpse activity represents a prime target for anti-inflammatory drug development. Experimental autoimmune encephalitis (EAE; an experimental model of multiple sclerosis) in rats was largely prevented by *in vivo* treatment with sulfated polysaccharides. This effect was attributed to the inhibition of Hpse produced by activated T cells, which in turn blocked the solubilization of the sub-endothelial BM (41, 42). In a delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) experimental model of inflammation, inhibition of endothelial cell-derived Hpse prevented the degradation of sub-endothelial BM HS and leukocyte migration (27). Hpse, possibly produced by inflammatory cells in rheumatoid arthritis in humans, may release cytokines and/or chemokines from degraded HS in the ECM of rheumatoid joints, promoting joint destruction (43). In ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, which represent chronic inflammatory disorders, Hpse is preferentially produced by inflamed gut epithelial cells to drive a local circuit of inflammation (24, 44). A role for Hpse has therefore been established in a broad range of inflammatory conditions.

HEPARANASE AND THE PATHOGENESIS OF TYPE 1 DIABETES

Type 1 diabetes is an autoimmune disease which has been extensively studied in non-obese diabetic (NOD) mice, a recognized preclinical model of T1D in humans. During T1D, the insulin-producing beta cells in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas are selectively destroyed by a T cell-mediated autoimmune response (45). The priming of autoreactive T cells to their cognate beta cell-specific autoantigens most probably occurs in the draining pancreatic lymph nodes, possibly as a consequence of both the abnormal responsiveness of effector T cells and inadequate control by regulatory T cells (46). Histological studies of NOD female mice at an early age (~6–7 weeks) revealed that leukocytes initially accumulate around the periphery of the islets, forming foci of non-destructive inflammation (insulitis). In adult pre-diabetic mice, the insulitis advances to a destructive phenotype, with peri-islet inflammatory leukocytes invading the islet cell mass (45). However, this pathology does not occur as a synchronized process throughout the pancreas, and the proportion of affected islets as well as the severity of leukocyte invasion progressively increases with time. Clinical symptoms of T1D are observed in 60–80% of female NOD mice from ~100 days of age or older, and are characterized by blood glucose levels exceeding >20 mmol/L (hyperglycemia).

In view of the established role for Hpse in leukocyte migration in other experimental models of inflammation (see above), we predicted that during T1D development, Hpse produced by islet beta cell-specific autoreactive T cells, inflammatory leukocytes, and possibly endothelial cells in the pancreatic vasculature, would be required to degrade HS in the sub-vascular endothelial BM. Thereafter, Hpse-mediated degradation of HS in the underlying pancreatic ECM would allow the inflammatory cells to migrate to individual islets and destroy the islet beta cells. Since T1D

development is a chronic disease process, we furthermore speculated that there would be an on-going need for this degradative activity. Our studies identified, however, that the requirement for Hpse extended far beyond the enzymatic activity necessary for leukocyte migration and the establishment of chronic inflammation. Indeed we discovered a critical role for Hpse at the level of the islets themselves. This local involvement of Hpse stemmed from the exceptionally high levels of HS normally associated with the islets *in situ* (8). Initially we confirmed the presence of a BM at the islet periphery (i.e., peri-islet BM) and revealed the HSPG perlecan as a previously unrecognized constituent (47). This HS +ve islet BM was predicted to act as a barrier to invading cells, analogous to the sub-endothelial BM. On further investigation of the distribution of HS in normal mouse islets *in situ*, we found that HS was expressed not only in the islet BM but at extraordinarily high levels throughout the islet cell mass (8). Immunohistochemical studies demonstrated that insulitis mononuclear cells (MNCs) in NOD mice strongly expressed cell surface Hpse (**Figure 1**; **Figure 2**, Stage 1). Furthermore, Western blotting analyses showed that the insulitis leukocytes expressed high levels of catalytically active Hpse at the time of diabetes onset in NOD mice, in contrast to the expression of inactive Hpse by peri-islet leukocytes in young pre-diabetic mice (8). Intra-islet infiltration by insulitis MNCs correlated with disruption of the islet BM (**Figure 2**, Stage 2), loss of the islet BM matrix proteins including the HSPG perlecan (47), progressive loss of intra-islet HS (**Figure 2**, Stage 3) and beta cell death (**Figure 2**, Stage 4) (8). Our studies have strongly indicated that such processes are mediated by catalytically active Hpse (**Figure 2**, Stages 2–4). This newly unveiled role for Hpse has more recently been validated using a transgenic mouse model of acute T1D and adoptively transferred Hpse-knockout effector T cells (unpublished data).

In vitro studies of beta cells isolated from normal mouse islets revealed both the unique intracellular localization of HS and its function in maintaining the viability of beta cells (8). Loss of intracellular HS correlated with beta cell death and conversely, the restoration of intracellular HS after culture of the beta cells with HS mimetics, correlated with beta cell survival. HS replacement not only preserved beta cell viability but rendered the beta cells resistant to oxidative damage induced by treatment with hydrogen peroxide [a source of reactive oxygen species (ROS)] (8). Collectively these findings led us to speculate that the intrinsic role of intracellular beta cell HS *in situ* in the pancreas is to protect the beta cells from the physiological levels of ROS generated as a consequence of their high metabolic and biosynthetic activity (8). Furthermore, we reasoned that such a mechanism could compensate for the low levels of free radical scavenger enzymes in beta cells (48).

Together, our *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies identified multiple roles for Hpse in T1D, namely promoting the migration of leukocytes from pancreatic blood vessels (i.e., across the sub-endothelial BM and through the pancreatic ECM), aiding the passage of leukocytes across the islet BM and depleting islet beta cells of the intracellular HS needed for their survival (**Figure 2**). In support of this new paradigm, *in vivo* treatment of pre-diabetic adult NOD female mice with the Hpse inhibitor/HS mimetic, PI-88, for 180 days significantly delayed T1D onset and reduced the incidence of diabetes by ~50% (8). Compared to saline-treated control NOD mice, PI-88 treatment significantly increased the proportion of pancreatic islets that were intact, significantly reduced the proportion of islets that showed destructive insulitis and better preserved the HS content of the islets (8). This hallmark study has therefore unveiled T1D disease to be largely Hpse-dependent. The extraordinarily high HS content of the beta cells, which is essential for their survival, renders them particularly vulnerable to Hpse-mediated damage. The localization of HS in the islet BM, which by convention acts as a barrier to impede leukocyte infiltration, has also been confirmed in normal human islets (49). Our studies suggest that intracellular HS maintains beta cell survival at least in part, by acting as a "free radical sink," protecting the beta cells against harmful chemical species generated endogenously. Our findings, which we have subsequently validated in *in vitro* studies of human islets and beta cells (unpublished data), therefore highlight Hpse inhibitors as a new class of therapeutic that can potentially be used to prevent T1D progression in humans.

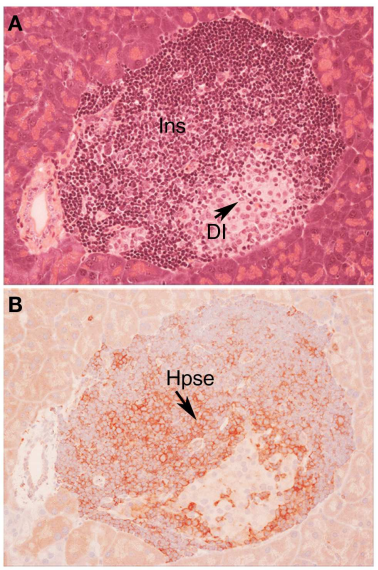


FIGURE 1 | Autoimmune T1D in NOD/Lt mice is characterized by cell surface expression of heparanase on insulitis leukocytes. Histology **(A)** and immunohistochemistry **(B)** of a pancreatic islet in a NOD/Lt female mouse at the time of T1D onset shows islet infiltration by destructive heparanase (Hpse)-expressing insulitis leukocytes **(B)** localized particularly at the insulitis-islet interface, a process which leads to loss of beta cell HS and beta cell death. **(A)** hematoxylin and eosin; **(B)** HP130 anti-heparanase mAb. Ins, insulitis mononuclear cells; DI, damaged islet tissue; Hpse, heparanase.

HEPARANASE AND DIABETIC COMPLICATIONS

The current treatment for T1D is exogenous insulin therapy. While insulin therapy keeps diabetic individuals reasonably healthy, precise control of blood glucose levels invariably fails to be achieved. As a consequence, macrovascular and microvascular diseases develop, resulting in heart disease, nephropathy, retinopathy, and neuropathy. There is compelling evidence that diabetic vascular complications are associated with the accumulation of advanced

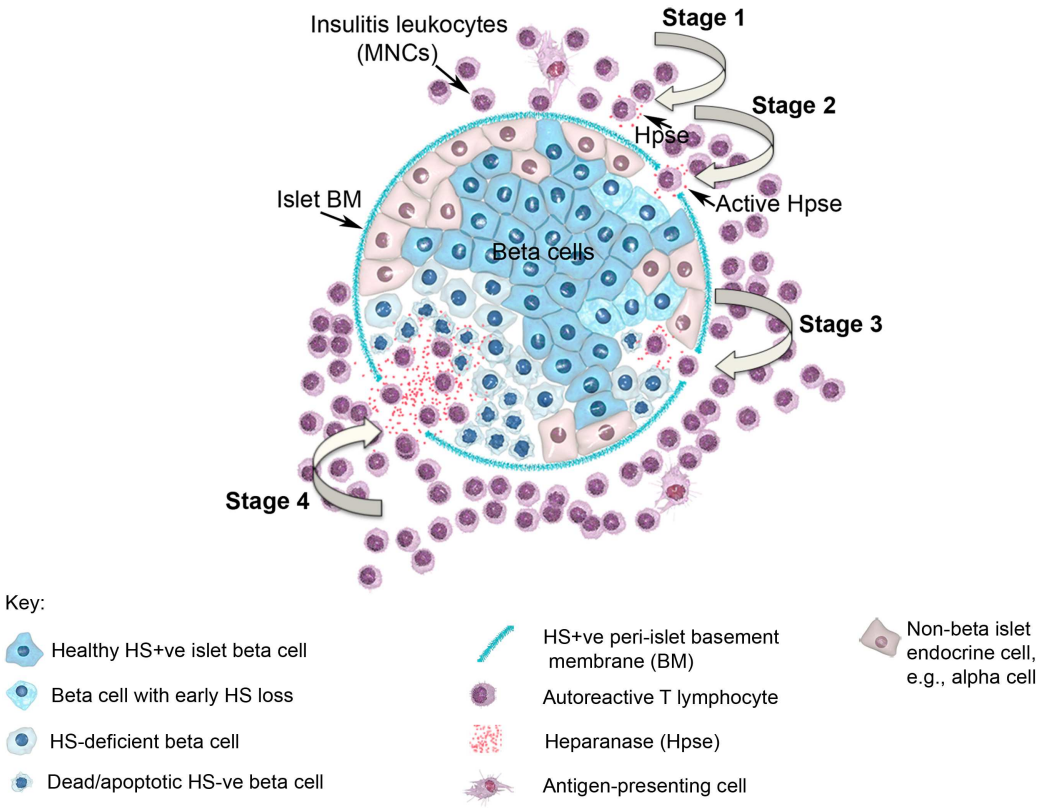


FIGURE 2 | Diagram showing a pancreatic islet and four stages of T1D disease driven by heparanase and loss of intra-islet HS. HS (intense blue color) is shown in normal beta cells and in intact peri-islet BM. In Stage 1 of the disease process, non-destructive insulitis mononuclear cells produce heparanase (red dots). Onset of destructive insulitis occurs when heparanase becomes catalytically active and degrades HS in the islet BM (Stage 2). Damage to the islet BM barrier allows activated autoreactive T cells to enter the islet cell mass where the local production of heparanase leads to degradation of intracellular HS in islet beta cells (paling blue color; Stage 3). Progression of HS depletion throughout the islet beta cell population results in increased beta cell death (palest blue color in "shriveled" beta cells; Stage 4), loss of insulin production and ultimately the development of T1D. MNC, mononuclear cell; BM, basement membrane; Hpse, heparanase.

glycation end products (AGEs) (50). Recent studies have also suggested an important role for Hpse in the development of diabetic nephropathy, a complication pertinent to both Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes. Underpinning this role, involvement of Hpse in proteinuric renal disease has also been established in experimental models of Adriamycin-induced nephropathy and passive Heymann nephritis (22, 51, 52). Diabetic nephropathy is characterized by an increase in the permeability of the glomerular BM (GBM), leading to proteinuria, as well as by tubular and interstitial fibrosis (22, 53). Hyperglycemia has been reported to regulate and, in fact, increase Hpse expression in renal epithelial cells *in vitro* (54). This finding is consistent with the increased expression of Hpse in renal glomeruli (e.g., glomerular podocytes) in human diabetic nephropathy, with significant increased levels of Hpse in the urine of diabetic patients and with a selective decrease in the expression of GBM HS (55–58). Nephropathy resulting from long-term streptozotocin-induced T1D was demonstrated in wildtype mice but not in Hpse-knockout mice (59), supporting a role for Hpse in this condition. The mechanism by which Hpse potentiates diabetic proteinuria may involve altered interactions between glomerular cells and HS-depleted GBM, the release of bioactive molecules from degraded HS, or intracellular signaling in the glomerular cells (22). Hpse is also strongly expressed in renal tubules in diabetic nephropathy and may contribute to tubular fibrosis via effects on FGF-2-signaling (53, 54, 58). An essential role for Hpse in modulating renal tubular morphology was confirmed in diabetic Hpse-knockout mice, which unlike diabetic wildtype controls, were free of histological evidence of tubular fibrosis (59). *In vitro* studies have implicated albumin overload and AGEs, rather than high glucose, in stimulating Hpse expression via the PI3K/Akt pathway in tubular endothelial cells, and in the subsequent loss of cell surface HS (60). Inhibition of both Hpse activity and the expression of tubular fibrosis markers *in vitro* by sulodexide furthermore highlights Hpse as a potential therapeutic target for preventing diabetic renal complications (53, 56).

Heparanase may also play a role in diabetic retinopathy. Increased Hpse expression has been demonstrated in high glucose-treated human retinal endothelial cells and in the retinal vascular endothelium of streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *In vitro*, increased levels of active Hpse correlated with enhanced levels of VEGF, a critical angiogenic growth factor required for neovascularization. Upregulation of VEGF in retinal endothelial cells

in vitro and in the retina of diabetic rats was inhibited by PI-88, supporting a regulatory role for Hpse, possibly by Src activation (61). At the level of leukocyte adhesion to rat retinal endothelium, an early marker of diabetic retinopathy, Hpse inhibition correlated with the decreased expression of the adhesion molecule ICAM-1 as well as VEGF, properties that implicate Hpse in both the arrest of leukocytes in the retinal vasculature and the associated local vascular dysfunction (62). Parallel studies have further demonstrated a more general role for Hpse in high glucose-induced vascular injury and have provided suggestive evidence for a role for Hpse in the pathogenesis of diabetic atherosclerosis (63–65).

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The surprising contribution of Hpse to the pathogenesis of T1D in NOD mice, together with the reported involvement of Hpse in the development of vascular complications of diabetes, highlight the potential application of safe and effective Hpse inhibitors for T1D rescue and treatment. Our studies strongly suggest that therapeutic intervention with dual activity Hpse inhibitors/HS mimetics at early stages of the disease could not only prevent the progression of T1D but potentially also fortify the HS content of any remaining beta cells. By preserving the viability and function of residual insulin-producing beta cells, physiological control of glycemia could be maintained without the need for exogenous insulin therapy. Additional benefits of this therapeutic approach would likely extend to preventing the secondary vascular complications of diabetes. Moreover, the studies reviewed here also support the potential treatment of established T1D with Hpse inhibitors to arrest the progression of diabetic vascular diseases, including nephropathy and retinopathy.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was supported by a National Health and Medical Research Council of Australia (NHMRC)/Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation (JDRF) Special Program Grant in Type 1 Diabetes (#418138), a NHMRC Project Grant (#1043284), and a research grant from the Roche Organ Transplantation Research Foundation (ROTRF)/JDRF (#477554991). We thank Anne Prins for histology, Sarah Popp for immunohistochemistry and Russell Kightley Media for graphic design work.

REFERENCES

1. Hulett MD, Freeman C, Hamdorf BJ, Baker RT, Harris MJ, Parish CR. Cloning of mammalian heparanase, an important enzyme in tumor invasion and metastasis. *Nat Med* (1999) **5**(7):803–9. doi:10.1038/10525
2. Vlodavsky I, Friedmann Y, Elkin M, Aingorn H, Atzmon R, Ishai-Michaeli R, et al. Mammalian heparanase: gene cloning, expression and function in tumor progression and metastasis. *Nat Med* (1999) **5**(7):793–802. doi:10.1038/10518
3. Kussie PH, Hulmes JD, Ludwig DL, Patel S, Navarro EC, Seddon AP, et al. Cloning and functional expression of a human heparanase gene. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (1999) **261**(1):183–7. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1999.0962
4. Abboud-Jarrous G, Rangini-Guetta Z, Aingorn H, Atzmon R, Elgavish S, Peretz T, et al. Site-directed mutagenesis, proteolytic cleavage, and activation of human proheparanase. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**(14):13568–75. doi:10.1074/jbc.M413370200
5. Fairbanks MB, Mildner AM, Leone JW, Cavey GS, Mathews WR, Drong RF, et al. Processing of the human heparanase precursor and evidence that the active enzyme is a heterodimer. *J Biol Chem* (1999) **274**(42):29587–90. doi:10.1074/jbc.274.42.29587
6. Ilan N, Elkin M, Vlodavsky I. Regulation, function and clinical significance of heparanase in cancer metastasis and angiogenesis. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* (2006) **38**(12):2018–39. doi:10.1016/j.biocel.2006.06.004
7. Miao HQ, Navarro E, Patel S, Sargent D, Koo H, Wan H, et al. Cloning, expression, and purification of mouse heparanase. *Protein Expr Purif* (2002) **26**(3):425–31. doi:10.1016/S1046-5928(02)00558-2
8. Ziolkowski AF, Popp SK, Freeman C, Parish CR, Simeonovic CJ. Heparan sulfate and heparanase play key roles in mouse beta cell survival and autoimmune diabetes. *J Clin Invest* (2012) **122**(1):132–41. doi:10.1172/JCI46177
9. Esko JD, Selleck SB. Order out of chaos: assembly of ligand binding sites in heparan sulfate. *Annu Rev Biochem* (2002) **71**:435–71. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.71.110601.135458
10. Kreuger J, Kjellen L. Heparan sulfate biosynthesis: regulation and variability. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2012) **60**(12):898–907. doi:10.1369/0022155412464972
11. Multhaupt HA, Couchman JR. Heparan sulfate biosynthesis: methods for investigation of the heparanosome. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2012) **60**(12):908–15. doi:10.1369/0022155412460056
12. Parish CR. The role of heparan sulphate in inflammation. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2006) **6**(9):633–43. doi:10.1038/nri1918
13. Sarrazin S, Lamanna WC, Esko JD. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) **3**:a004952. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a004952
14. Chen LG, Sanderson RD. Heparanase regulates levels of syndecan-1 in the nucleus. *PLoS One* (2009) **4**(3):e4947. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0004947
15. Richardson TP, Trinkaus-Randall V, Nugent MA. Regulation of heparan sulfate proteoglycan nuclear localization by fibronectin. *J Cell Sci* (2001) **114**(Pt 9):1613–23.
16. Vreys V, David G. Mammalian heparanase: what is the message? *J Cell Mol Med* (2007) **11**(3):427–52. doi:10.1111/j.1582-4934.2007.00039.x
17. Abboud-Jarrous G, Atzmon R, Peretz T, Palermo C, Gadea BB, Joyce JA, et al. Cathepsin L is responsible for processing and activation of proheparanase through multiple cleavages of a linker segment. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**(26):18167–76. doi:10.1074/jbc.M801327200
18. Gingis-Velitski S, Zetser A, Kaplan V, Ben-Zaken O, Cohen E, Levy-Adam F, et al. Heparanase uptake is mediated by cell membrane heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(42):44084–92. doi:10.1074/jbc.M402131200
19. Goldshmidt O, Nadav L, Aingorn H, Irit C, Feinstein N, Ilan N, et al. Human heparanase is localized within lysosomes in a stable form. *Exp Cell Res* (2002) **281**(1):50–62. doi:10.1006/excr.2002.5651
20. Nadav L, Eldor A, Yacoby-Zeevi O, Zamir E, Pecker I, Ilan N, et al. Activation, processing and trafficking of extracellular heparanase by primary human fibroblasts. *J Cell Sci* (2002) **115**(Pt 10):2179–87.
21. Zetser A, Levy-Adam F, Kaplan V, Gingis-Velitski S, Bashenko Y, Schubert S, et al. Processing and activation of latent heparanase occurs in lysosomes. *J Cell Sci* (2004) **117**(Pt 11):2249–58. doi:10.1242/jcs.01068
22. van den Hoven MJ, Rops AL, Vlodavsky I, Levidiotis V, Berden JH, van der Vlag J. Heparanase in glomerular diseases. *Kidney Int* (2007) **72**(5):543–8. doi:10.1038/sj.ki.5002337
23. Peterson S, Liu J. Deciphering mode of action of heparanase using structurally defined oligosaccharides. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**(41):34836–43. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.390161
24. Lerner I, Hermano E, Zcharia E, Rodkin D, Bulvik R, Doviner V, et al. Heparanase powers a chronic inflammatory circuit that promotes colitis-associated tumorigenesis in mice. *J Clin Invest* (2011) **121**(5):1709–21. doi:10.1172/JCI43792
25. Wood RJ, Hulett MD. Cell surface-expressed cation-independent mannose 6-phosphate receptor (CD222) binds enzymatically active heparanase independently of mannose 6-phosphate to promote extracellular matrix degradation. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**(7):4165–76. doi:10.1074/jbc.M708723200
26. Chen G, Wang D, Vikramadithyan R, Yagyu H, Saxena U, Pillarisetti S, et al. Inflammatory cytokines and fatty acids regulate endothelial cell heparanase expression. *Biochemistry (Mosc)* (2004) **43**(17):4971–7. doi:10.1021/bi0356552
27. Edovitsky E, Lerner I, Zcharia E, Peretz T, Vlodavsky I, Elkin M. Role of endothelial heparanase in delayed-type hypersensitivity. *Blood* (2006) **107**(9):3609–16. doi:10.1182/blood-2005-08-3301
28. Shafat I, Vlodavsky I, Ilan N. Characterization of mechanisms involved in secretion of active heparanase. *J Biol Chem* (2006) **281**(33):23804–11. doi:10.1074/jbc.M602762200

29. Wang F, Wang Y, Zhang DH, Puthanveetil P, Johnson JD, Rodrigues B. Fatty acid-induced nuclear translocation of heparanase uncouples glucose metabolism in endothelial cells. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* (2012) **32**(2):406–U568. doi:10.1161/Atvbaha.111.240770
30. Freeman C, Parish CR. Human platelet heparanase: purification, characterization and catalytic activity. *Biochem J* (1998) **330**(Pt 3):1341–50.
31. Gilat D, Hershkoviz R, Goldkorn I, Cahalon L, Korner G, Vlodavsky I, et al. Molecular behavior adapts to context: heparanase functions as an extracellular matrix-degrading enzyme or as a T cell adhesion molecule, depending on the local pH. *J Exp Med* (1995) **181**(5):1929–34. doi:10.1084/jem.181.5.1929
32. Goldshmidt O, Zcharia E, Cohen M, Aingorn H, Cohen I, Nadav L, et al. Heparanase mediates cell adhesion independent of its enzymatic activity. *FASEB J* (2003) **17**(9):1015–25. doi:10.1096/fj.02-0773com
33. Sotnikov I, Hershkoviz R, Grabovsky V, Ilan N, Cahalon L, Vlodavsky I, et al. Enzymatically quiescent heparanase augments T cell interactions with VCAM-1 and extracellular matrix components under versatile dynamic contexts. *J Immunol* (2004) **172**(9):5185–93.
34. Zetser A, Bashenko Y, Edovitsky E, Levy-Adam F, Vlodavsky I, Ilan N. Heparanase induces vascular endothelial growth factor expression: correlation with p38 phosphorylation levels and Src activation. *Cancer Res* (2006) **66**(3):1455–63. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-1811
35. Ramani VC, Yang Y, Ren Y, Nan L, Sanderson RD. Heparanase plays a dual role in driving hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) signaling by enhancing HGF expression and activity. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**(8):6490–9. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.183277
36. Buczek-Thomas JA, Hsia E, Rich CB, Foster JA, Nugent MA. Inhibition of histone acetyltransferase by glycosaminoglycans. *J Cell Biochem* (2008) **105**(1):108–20. doi:10.1002/Jcb.21803
37. He YQ, Sutcliffe EL, Bunting KL, Li J, Goodall KJ, Poon IK, et al. The endoglycosidase heparanase enters the nucleus of T lymphocytes and modulates H3 methylation at actively transcribed genes via the interplay with key chromatin modifying enzymes. *Transcription* (2012) **3**(3):130–45. doi:10.4161/trns.19998
38. Weber KS, von Hundelshausen P, Clark-Lewis I, Weber PC, Weber C. Differential immobilization and hierarchical involvement of chemokines in monocyte arrest and transmigration on inflamed endothelium in shear flow. *Eur J Immunol* (1999) **29**(2):700–12. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1521-4141(199902)29:02<700::AID-IMMU700>3.0.CO;2-1
39. Benhamron S, Nechushtan H, Verbovetski I, Krispin A, Abboud-Jarrous G, Zcharia E, et al. Translocation of active heparanase to cell surface regulates degradation of extracellular matrix heparan sulfate upon transmigration of mature monocyte-derived dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2006) **176**(11):6417–24.
40. Vlodavsky I, Eldor A, Haimovitz-Friedman A, Matzner Y, Ishai-Michaeli R, Lider O, et al. Expression of heparanase by platelets and circulating cells of the immune system: possible involvement in diapedesis and extravasation. *Invasion Metastasis* (1992) **12**(2):112–27.
41. Hershkoviz R, Mor F, Miao HQ, Vlodavsky I, Lider O. Differential effects of polysulfated polysaccharide on experimental encephalomyelitis, proliferation of autoimmune T cells, and inhibition of heparanase activity. *J Autoimmun* (1995) **8**(5):741–50. doi:10.1006/jaut.1995.0055
42. Parish CR, Hindmarsh EJ, Bartlett MR, Staykova MA, Cowden WB, Willenborg DO. Treatment of central nervous system inflammation with inhibitors of basement membrane degradation. *Immunol Cell Biol* (1998) **76**(1):104–13. doi:10.1046/J.1440-1711.1998.00722.X
43. Li RW, Freeman C, Yu D, Hindmarsh EJ, Tymms KE, Parish CR, et al. Dramatic regulation of heparanase activity and angiogenesis gene expression in synovium from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum* (2008) **58**(6):1590–600. doi:10.1002/Art.23489
44. Waterman M, Ben-Izhak O, Eliakim R, Groisman G, Vlodavsky I, Ilan N. Heparanase upregulation by colonic epithelium in inflammatory bowel disease. *Mod Pathol* (2007) **20**(1):8–14. doi:10.1038/Modpathol.3800710
45. Solomon M, Sarvetnick N. The pathogenesis of diabetes in the NOD mouse. *Adv Immunol* (2004) **84**:239–64. doi:10.1016/s0065-2776(04)84007-0
46. D'Alise AM, Auyeung V, Feuerer M, Nishio J, Fontenot J, Benoist C, et al. The defect in T-cell regulation in NOD mice is an effect on the T-cell effectors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) **105**(50):19857–62. doi:10.1073/pnas.0810713105
47. Irving-Rodgers HF, Ziolkowski AF, Parish CR, Sado Y, Ninomiya Y, Simeonovic CJ, et al. Molecular composition of the peri-islet basement membrane in NOD mice: a barrier against destructive insulitis. *Diabetologia* (2008) **51**(9):1680–8. doi:10.1007/S00125-008-1085-X
48. Tiedge M, Lortz S, Drinkgern J, Lenzen S. Relation between antioxidant enzyme gene expression and antioxidative defense status of insulin-producing cells. *Diabetes* (1997) **46**(11):1733–42. doi:10.2337/diab.46.11.1733
49. Korpos E, Kadri N, Kappelhoff R, Wegner J, Overall CM, Weber E, et al. The peri-islet basement membrane, a barrier to infiltrating leukocytes in type 1 diabetes in mouse and human. *Diabetes* (2013) **62**(2):531–42. doi:10.2337/db12-0432
50. Forbes JM, Cooper ME. Mechanisms of diabetic complications. *Physiol Rev* (2013) **93**(1):137–88. doi:10.1152/Physrev.00045.2011
51. Kramer A, van den Hoven M, Rops A, Wijnhoven T, van den Heuvel L, Lensen J, et al. Induction of glomerular heparanase expression in rats with adriamycin nephropathy is regulated by reactive oxygen species and the renin-angiotensin system. *J Am Soc Nephrol* (2006) **17**(9):2513–20. doi:10.1681/Asn.2006020184
52. Levidiotis V, Freeman C, Tikellis C, Cooper ME, Power DA. Heparanase is involved in the pathogenesis of proteinuria as a result of glomerulonephritis. *J Am Soc Nephrol* (2004) **15**(1):68–78. doi:10.1097/01.Asn.0000103229.25389.40
53. Masola V, Onisto M, Zaza G, Lupo A, Gambaro G. A new mechanism of action of sulodexide in diabetic nephropathy: inhibits heparanase-1 and prevents FGF-2-induced renal epithelial-mesenchymal transition. *J Transl Med* (2012) **10**:213. doi:10.1186/1479-5876-10-213
54. Maxhimer JB, Somenek M, Rao G, Pesce CE, Baldwin D, Gattuso P, et al. Heparanase-1 gene expression and regulation by high glucose in renal epithelial cells – a potential role in the pathogenesis of proteinuria in diabetic patients. *Diabetes* (2005) **54**(7):2172–8. doi:10.2337/Diabetes.54.7.2172
55. Rops AL, van den Hoven MJ, Veldman BA, Salemink S, Vervoort G, Elving LD, et al. Urinary heparanase activity in patients with Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* (2012) **27**(7):2853–61. doi:10.1093/ndt/gfr732
56. Shafat I, Ilan N, Zoabi S, Vlodavsky I, Nakhoul F. Heparanase levels are elevated in the urine and plasma of type 2 diabetes patients and associate with blood glucose levels. *PLoS One* (2011) **6**(2):e17312. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0017312
57. van den Hoven MJ, Rops AL, Bakker MA, Aten J, Rutjes N, Roestenberg P, et al. Increased expression of heparanase in overt diabetic nephropathy. *Kidney Int* (2006) **70**(12):2100–8. doi:10.1038/sj.ki.5001985
58. Wijnhoven TJ, van den Hoven MJ, Ding H, van Kuppevelt TH, van der Vlag J, Berden JH, et al. Heparanase induces a differential loss of heparan sulphate domains in overt diabetic nephropathy. *Diabetologia* (2008) **51**(2):372–82. doi:10.1007/s00125-007-0879-6
59. Gil N, Goldberg R, Neuman T, Garsen M, Zcharia E, Rubinstein AM, et al. Heparanase is essential for the development of diabetic nephropathy in mice. *Diabetes* (2012) **61**(1):208–16. doi:10.2337/db11-1024
60. Masola V, Gambaro G, Tibaldi E, Onisto M, Abaterusso C, Lupo A. Regulation of heparanase by albumin and advanced glycation end products in proximal tubular cells. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2011) **1813**(8):1475–82. doi:10.1016/J.Bbamcr.2011.05.004
61. Ma PP, Luo Y, Zhu XB, Li T, Hu J, Tang SB. Retinal heparanase expression in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Can J Ophthalmol* (2010) **45**(1):46–51. doi:10.3129/I09-200
62. Ma PP, Luo Y, Zhu XB, Ma HJ, Hu J, Tang SB. Phosphomannopentaose sulfate (PI-88) inhibits retinal leukostasis in diabetic rat. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2009) **380**(2):402–6. doi:10.1016/J.Bbrc.2009.01.092
63. Han JY, Mandal AK, Hiebert LM. Endothelial cell injury by high glucose and heparanase is prevented by insulin, heparin and basic fibroblast growth factor. *Cardiovasc Diabetol* (2005) **4**:doi:10.1186/1475-2840-4-12
64. Han JY, Woytowich AE, Mandal AK, Hiebert LM. Heparanase upregulation in high glucose-treated endothelial cells is prevented by insulin and heparin. *Exp Biol Med* (2007) **232**(7):927–34.
65. Rao G, Ding HG, Huang W, Le D, Maxhimer JB, Oosterhof A, et al. Reactive oxygen species mediate high glucose-induced heparanase-1 production and heparan sulphate proteoglycan degradation in human and rat endothelial cells: a potential role in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis. *Diabetologia* (2011) **54**(6):1527–38. doi:10.1007/S00125-011-2110-Z

Conflict of Interest Statement: Each author is a shareholder in the start-up biotechnology company Beta Therapeutics Pty. Ltd., established to evaluate the therapeutic efficacy of dual activity HS mimetics/heparanase inhibitors in preventing the progression of T1D in humans.

Received: 11 October 2013; accepted: 05 December 2013; published online: 26 December 2013.
*Citation: Simeonovic CJ, Ziolkowski AF, Wu Z, Choong FJ, Freeman C and Parish CR (2013) Heparanase and autoimmune diabetes. Front. Immunol. **4**:471. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00471*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 11 March 2014
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00101

Hyaluronan, a crucial regulator of inflammation

Aaron C. Petrey and Carol A. de la Motte*

Department of Pathobiology, Lerner Research Institute, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH, USA

Edited by:
Deirdre R. Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Fulvio D'Acquisto, Queen Mary University of London, UK
Anthony John Day, University of Manchester, UK

****Correspondence:***
Carol A. de la Motte, Department of Pathobiology, Lerner Research Institute, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, 9500 Euclid Avenue, Cleveland, OH 44195, USA
e-mail: delamoc@ccf.org

Hyaluronan (HA), a major component of the extracellular matrix (ECM), plays a key role in regulating inflammation. Inflammation is associated with accumulation and turnover of HA polymers by multiple cell types. Increasingly through the years, HA has become recognized as an active participant in inflammatory, angiogenic, fibrotic, and cancer promoting processes. HA and its binding proteins regulate the expression of inflammatory genes, the recruitment of inflammatory cells, the release of inflammatory cytokines, and can attenuate the course of inflammation, providing protection against tissue damage. A growing body of evidence suggests the cell responses are HA molecular weight dependent. HA fragments generated by multiple mechanisms throughout the course of inflammatory pathologies, elicit cellular responses distinct from intact HA. This review focuses on the role of HA in the promotion and resolution of inflammation.

Keywords: hyaluronan, inflammation, glycobiology, Toll-like receptors, CD44, versican, TSG-6, inter-alpha trypsin inhibitor

INTRODUCTION

The association of increased HA deposition into the extracellular matrix (ECM) after tissue injury and during inflammatory disease has been recognized for over 25 years. Increased accumulation of HA has been demonstrated: in joint tissue of rheumatoid arthritis (RA) patients (1); in lung disease, both in humans (2) and animal experimental models (3–7); in inflammatory liver disease; during vascular disease (8, 9); in rejected kidney transplants (10) as well renal tissue of patients experiencing diabetic nephropathy (11); in the intestine of patients undergoing flares of inflammatory bowel disease (IBDs) (12), and mice with experimental colitis (13). Initially, HA was considered merely an inert space filling substance that had the capacity to surround itself with water molecules thus maintaining structure and preventing dehydration. The accompanying edema that occurs with HA deposition frequently impairs organ function.

Beyond the physical properties of a structural ECM molecule, however, it has become increasingly clear that HA provides cellular cues to regulate inflammation and tissue repair. The mystery is how and why does such a ubiquitous molecule produced in abundance by all vertebrates in every body tissue, foster inflammation under particular circumstances. This review focuses on discussing what is known regarding the mechanisms through which HA recruits and activates leukocytes in pathological inflammatory settings. Discussion will center on: (1) how HA is organized into a leukocyte recruiting matrix; (2) how it is degraded into fragments that are capable of signaling inflammatory responses via specific receptors; and (3) what are the known downstream effects and consequences of such activation. Over the past 15 years specific pathways signaled by HA have been defined and these have shaped the view of HA as a regulator of innate and acquired immunity, providing us with the concept that damaged ECM provides cues to surrounding cells to drive a protective response. In a dysregulated state, for example, the excess production of a pathological matrix, or the overproduction of HA fragments, HA is likely to contribute to chronic inflammatory conditions such as in RA, inflammatory bowels disease, atherosclerosis, and diabetes.

HYALURONAN IS A SIZE-DEPENDENT MEDIATOR OF INFLAMMATION

Data during the past two decades have established the fact that many of the cellular and biochemical processes mediated by HA are dependent upon the distribution of its molecular mass. HA polymers are comprised of repeating disaccharide units of glucuronic acid and *N*-acetyl glucosamine joined by alternating (β-1,3 and β-1,4) glycocidic linkages free of a protein core. An integral component of the ECM, HA polymers are traditionally considered as solvating, structural macromolecules largely responsible for supporting tissue integrity due to substantial viscoelastic properties (14). In normal tissues, HA exists as high-molecular-weight HA (HMW-HA) often with an average molecular weight of ~10^7 Da that is capable of occupying a 1000-fold volume of water (15). HMW-HA is one of the principle components of the glycocalyx and is able to spatially exclude other molecules and cells, functioning as an anti-angiogenic factor. Several studies have shown that HMW-HA inhibits angiogenesis through reducing both the proliferation and migration of endothelial cells (7, 16, 17). At the extracellular surface HMW-HA interacts with surface receptors, prevents immune cell recognition, and blocks phagocytosis by macrophages (18, 19).

In cases of inflammation and tissue injury, HA is significantly more polydisperse and contains a variety of HA polymers with overlapping lengths and functions. Generally speaking, HA with an average molecular mass <500 kDa can be considered a fragment, although the molecular properties of such a size are quite different than those of a 50 kDa fragment. In most studies, the indicated sizes of HA represent the average molecular weight of a polydisperse distribution, and the preparations of HA used are not homogeneous with respect to size. As such, care must be taken when considering the effects of different polymer sizes.

Large HA polymers function as tissue integrity signals and serve to suppress the inflammatory response. As HMW-HA becomes depolymerized in inflammatory conditions such as RA, it loses its lubricant properties as noted in the synovial fluid of RA patients (1, 20). While it is unclear whether the generation of HA fragments is the result of HA catabolic enzymes, reactive oxygen species (ROS), a truncated product of the HA biosynthetic enzymes, or a combination of these mechanisms, it is clear that HA polymers of specific sizes contain distinct biological activities. HA exists as both a pro- and anti-inflammatory molecule *in vivo*, and these contradictory functions depend upon polymer length and which receptors the oligosaccharides engage. HMW-HA elicits protective anti-inflammatory effects that protect lung epithelial cells from apoptosis and is protective against liver injury, acting to reduce pro-inflammatory cytokines in a T-cell mediated injury model (3, 21). In regulatory T-cells, HMW-HA stimulates STAT5 signaling through CD44 crosslinking, promoting their maintenance and thereby inhibiting their proliferation. Conventional T-cell precursors stimulated with HMW-HA produce IL-10, and infusion of these cells attenuates the disease course in a murine model of colitis (22, 23).

The presence of cable-like structures comprised of HA, associated with binding proteins, has been noted in several inflammatory conditions including IBDs, atherosclerosis, diabetic nephropathy, and chronic kidney disease (24–29). HA polymers of indeterminate sizes originate from the surface of multiple cells and coalesce into large HA cables capable of spanning multiple cells and reaching several millimeters in length (30). The presence of HA cables at sites of tissue inflammation can still function as an anti-inflammatory polymer. Monocytes adhere tightly to the HA cables regardless of their activation state, and following adhesion the distribution of CD44 on the monocyte cell surface polarizes to form a "cap" while a portion of the HA cable is internalized (**Figure 1**). HA cables can function as a biological sink for monocytes and platelets, and these interactions likely modulate pro-inflammatory stimuli [see review in Ref. (31)]. The presence of HA cables is not unique to the inflammatory process, and cables are formed in response to ER stress, cycloheximide treatment, and viral infection (24, 32, 33).

HA catabolic hyaluronidase enzymes on the cell surface of platelets are capable of depolymerizing HA at neutral pH, and the subsequent fragments induce monocyte activation (34). HA fragments have also been shown to have a number of pro-inflammatory effects such as activation of macrophages and dendritic cells as well as stimulating transcription of inflammation-related genes including TNF-α, IL-12, IL-1β, and matrix metalloproteinases (35–37). However, it is important to note that some of the pro-inflammatory effects attributed to HA fragments likely result from contaminants in the HA preparations used. Caution should be taken with respect to the source and purity of HA for such studies. Polydisperse HA fragments with an average molecular weight of 200-kDa have been shown to stimulate chemokines, cytokines, growth factors, proteases, and nitric oxide by macrophages (38–44). In some cases, the signaling pathways engaged by HA fragments have been partially defined. Murine macrophages stimulated by HA fragments can activate the inhibitor of nuclear factor-κB pathway, which increases the expression of interleukin-1β and TNF-α (43). In smooth muscle cells, HA fragments promote cell-cycle progression by CD44-dependent activation of the Rac/ERK pathway, while the HMW-HA is inhibitory (45).

Although most of the work on low-molecular-weight HA fragments initially illustrated a pro-inflammatory response, a number of studies have shown that HA fragments can also be protective. In a DSS-induced murine model of colitis, intraperitoneal injection of polydisperse HA <750-kDa protects colonic epithelium in a Toll-like receptor (TLR) 4-dependent manner

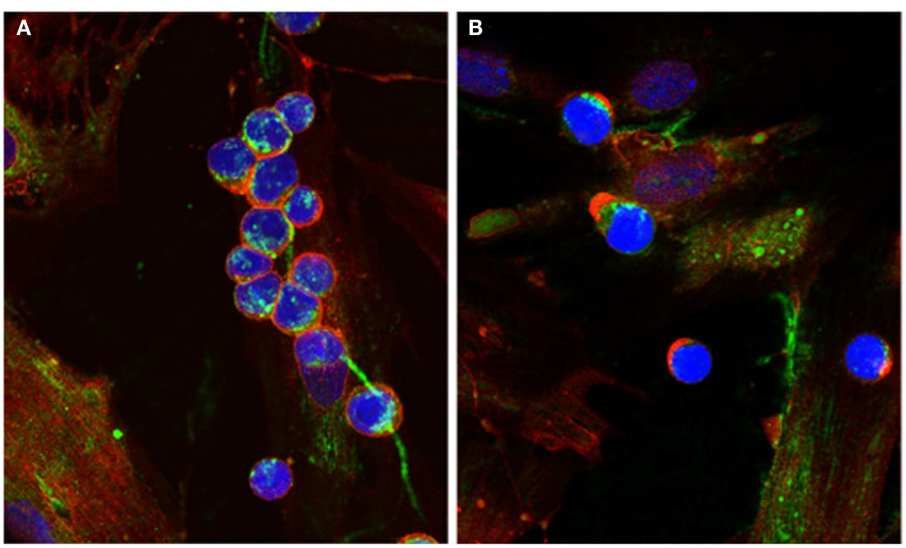


FIGURE 1 | Capping of CD44 on leukocytes. **(A)** Monocytes bind to HA cables (green) produced by M-SMC in response to poly I:C. CD44 (red) is dispersed on the monocyte surface. **(B)** After 15 min incubation at 37°C, CD44 (red) is capped to one pole on the leukocytes, HA cables appear ragged (center panel) and HA is internalized. (Nuclei are blue).

(46). Intermediate-molecular-weight HA <200 kDa stimulates the expression of human β-defensin 2 (HBD2) in human keratinocytes, through TLRs 2 and 4 (47). More recently, our laboratory has shown that HA-dependent induction of HBD2 in intestinal epithelial cells and in the colonic mucosa of mice is highly size specific. The strongest induction was observed with HA of 35-kDa average molecular weight, and was TLR 4 dependent (48).

HYALURONAN-BINDING PROTEINS AND THEIR ROLES IN INFLAMMATION

While many of the HA-binding proteins have been previously reviewed elsewhere (49), several HA-binding proteins are of particular importance with regard to inflammatory processes and will be discussed in the following section. The repeating nature of HA oligosaccharides and the specificity of protein–HA interactions likely dictate many of the mechanisms by which HA functions as either a pro- or anti-inflammatory molecule. The ECM, comprised predominantly of proteoglycans, glycoproteins, and collagens, is increasingly being viewed as having both structural and regulatory roles. Collectively, the ability of HA to function as either a pro- or anti-inflammatory molecule is dependent upon its size, microenvironment, localization, and availability of specific binding partners.

Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor (IαI) is one member in a family of serum proteoglycans secreted by the liver that function as serum protease inhibitors. It is reported to circulate in serum at concentrations between 150 and 500 μg/mL, comprises ~5% of total protease inhibitory activity of plasma, and elevated levels reported in inflammatory pathologies (50, 51). This proteoglycan is unusual as a single chondroitin sulfate chain is covalently attached to bikunin, a serine protease inhibitor, and another family of proteins termed heavy chain (HC) (HC1, HC2, HC3) are covalently linked to the chondroitin sulfate chain through an ester bond between C-terminal aspartate and the 6-hydroxyl of an *N*-acetylgalactosamine (52–54). In several inflammatory diseases, such as Crohn's disease, asthma, osteo- and rheumatoid-arthritis (OA, RA), the increase in HA production is commensurate with increased levels of IαI heavy chains covalently attached to HA. In the case of Crohn's disease, heavy chains of IαI are specifically associated with HA cable structures and are highly adhesive for naïve unactivated leukocytes, possibly in competition with inflammatory receptors (12, 55). Further, soluble HA containing HC1 and pentraxin 3 has been shown to induce apoptosis of activated, but not resting, neutrophils and macrophages (56). IαI and heavy chains are present at high levels in the synovial fluid of RA and OA patients, and HC complexes linked to HA have been shown to accumulate within inflamed tissues and correlates with disease severity (57, 58). Recently, the activity of TSG-6 in OA synovial fluid has been demonstrated as a biomarker for OA progression and the need for knee replacement (59). The transfer of HCs to HMW-HA is a reversible and dynamic event influenced by the availability of substrates, and smaller HA fragments (oligosaccharides) can act as irreversible HC acceptors and can disrupt highly adhesive properties of HC–HA (60). Studies of knockout mice lacking bikunin, which are unable to form IαI, have revealed an inhibitory role for IαI heavy chains in complement activation. Lack of IαI in mouse serum led to high levels of complement activation and was reversible upon injection of soluble IαI containing HCs (61). In humans, IαI does not appear to be a potent inhibitor of complement activation, affecting only early stages (62). In chronic inflammatory conditions such as RA, where IαI heavy chains and HA fragments accumulate to high levels and their effects may be more significant.

Tumor necrosis factor-stimulated gene 6 (TSG-6), which is capable of binding to both IαI and HA, catalyzes the transfer of HCs from the CS chain of IαI to HA by a *trans*-esterification reaction to form HC–HA, and has also been well studied in the context of ovulation (63, 64). The expression of TSG-6 is influenced by a number of factors including TNF-α, IL-1β, TGF-β, and LPS, in a highly cell type-dependent manner, and in many cases is coordinated with the synthesis of HA (65). While induced by inflammatory stimuli, TSG-6 has several protective features including enhancing the anti-plasmin activity of IαI and inhibition of MMPs and aggrecanases in cartilage (66, 67). Direct interaction between TSG-6 and the glycosaminoglycan (GAG) binding site of IL-8 has been shown to inhibit neutrophil migration by blocking the interaction of IL-8 with heparan sulfate on endothelial cell surfaces (68). The addition of TSG-6 to HA has been shown to enhance CD44-dependent lymphoid cell adhesion to HA in flow shear experiments (69). Interestingly, the Link module of TSG-6 alone can inhibit neutrophil migration and adhesion via exhibiting anti-inflammatory effects independent of HA and IαI (70). Recent studies have illustrated that: (1) the Link module of TSG-6 has binding sites for both HA and bikunin C4S; (2) TSG-6 is capable of binding non-covalently to HC1, HC2, and HC3 at affinities greater than with HA; and (3) although TSG-6 alone is capable of cross-linking HA into a dense, leukocyte-adhesive matrix, both the degree of condensation and adhesion are reversible by addition of IαI containing HC1 and HC2 (71). In a murine model of asthma, TSG-6 null mice are resistant to airway hyperresponsiveness and exhibit reduced levels of HA deposition, absence of HC–HA complexes and decreased eosinophilic inflammation (72). Some of these findings may be explained by the observation that airway smooth muscle cells stimulated with poly (I:C) and TSG-6 produce increased levels of cell-associated HA cables than treatment with poly (I:C) alone (73).

The adhesive properties of CD44+ cells to HA matrices depend upon the composition of proteins bound to HA. HC–HA complexes isolated from the synovial fluid of RA patients are highly adhesive for CD44+ leukocytes. These HA complexes likely contain several HA-binding proteins including HC3 and pentraxin-3, but were found to be free of TSG-6 (74). However, it has been recently shown that while TSG-6 enhances the interaction of HA and CD44, the *in vitro* addition of IαI, TSG-6, and HCs (HC1 and HC2) appears to counteract the enhanced binding of TSG-6–HA complex alone (69, 71). This is in conflict with prior reports, but suggests that HA-binding proteins themselves may regulate their own interaction with HA (71, 74). As suggested by Day and de la Motte, it is likely that the specific composition or organization of HA–protein complexes dictates the outcome of many cell–HA interactions (31).

Versican is a large CS-rich proteoglycan expressed at high levels by proliferating cells and mesenchymal cells and is deposited into the ECM during tissue remodeling and development. Versican is a member of the lecticans, structurally similar proteins that also

include aggrecan, neurocan, and brevican. Versican consists of an amino-terminal globular domain (G1) and a carboxy-terminal globular domain (G3), separated by several CS attachment sites (GAG-α and GAG-β) between the two globular domains. The G1 domain consists of an immunoglobulin-like fold and a pair of link modules that bind five repeat disaccharides of HA with high affinity. This interaction is further stabilized by link protein itself, which binds both HA and versican (75, 76). Initial studies of versican showed anti-adhesive properties, which now appear to be mediated by the G1 domain (77–79). The G3 domain shares homology with the selectins, containing two epidermal growth factor (EGF) repeats, a C-type lectin domain, and a complement regulatory region. Four alternative splicing isoforms of versican (known as V0, V1, V2, and V3) result in truncation of the number of potential CS attachment sites (V1 and V2), with V3 lacking them. All isoforms retain the G1 and G3 domains and therefore the ability to bind to HA. The modular nature of versican can function as a highly diverse molecular constituent of the ECM capable of binding to a variety of factors involved in inflammatory processes.

Investigation into cancer growth and metastasis has implicated versican as having a central role driven by inflammatory stimuli. Versican, in either intact or fragmented forms containing the G3 domain, can enhance tumor cell migration, growth, and angiogenesis (80–82). In an *in vitro* screen for carcinoma-derived factors capable of activating macrophages, versican was identified as a potent enhancer of metastatic growth through TLR2 and co-receptors, TLR6 and CD14 (80). Versican has been suggested to contribute to HA fragment activation of macrophages, and enhanced cancer metastasis through induction of the hyaluronidases (83, 84). Several inflammation-associated cytokines, including transforming growth factor β1, 2, 3, and platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), have been shown to increase biosynthetic levels of both versican and HA, while IL-1β, and IFN-γ have been shown to reduce levels of versican (85–91). Leukocyte trafficking and localization to regions of inflammation mediated by interaction with cell-adhesion receptors functions as a critical initiating step in the inflammatory cascade (92). Specific CS chains on versican preferentially bind to chemokines known to attract mononuclear leukocytes (93). Versican itself is capable of binding to a number of cell surface receptors present on leukocytes through interactions also mediated by CS chains, including both L- and P-selectins and CD44 (93–95). Direct binding of P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 (PSGL-1) by the G3 domain of versican has also been shown to cause aggregation of leukocytes (82).

Together, these HA-binding proteins contribute to the maintenance of tissue integrity and direct cell–ECM interactions in normal and pathological conditions. Many of the adhesive properties of HA polymers depend upon the presence of HA-binding proteins, and together with IαI, HCs, TSG-6, and versican contribute to a dynamic extracellular environment capable of directing cell adhesion and the production of inflammatory cytokines.

HYALURONAN CATABOLISM AND GENERATION OF HA FRAGMENTS

Enzymatic degradation of HA is initiated by hyaluronidases (hyaluronoglucosaminidases, or HYALs), a family of endoglycosidases that hydrolyze the β-1,4 linkages between *N*-acetyl-hexosamines and glucuronic acid found in GAGs including some activity toward chondroitin 4- and 6-sulfates, and unsulfated chondroitin (96, 97). In humans, genes for six hyaluronidase family members have been identified to date: HYAL1–4, PH-20, and HYALP1. With the exception of the pseudogene HYALP1, each member encodes for protein products, and all but Hyal-3 have been shown to participate in either HA or CS catabolism [for a review see Ref. (98)]. While Hyal-3 does not appear to have a direct role in HA catabolism, it may be involved in an indirect fashion (99, 100). In somatic tissues, Hyal-1 and Hyal-2 function as the major hyaluronidases for HA degradation. In a rat model, exogenous addition of HA indicated that some turnover takes place locally at the site of intravenous injection, but the majority of clearance occurred in the lymph nodes and liver (101). However, other studies have suggested that local turnover is the major route of HA clearance and clearance through the lymphatic system is relatively minor when compared to local turnover by skin or skeletal muscle (102). These discrepancies may exist due to the size of HA used to measure local or lymphatic clearance, as it is likely that low-molecular-weight HA within tissue can be removed from the ECM by lymphatic drainage more easily than HMW–HA. Within cells, HA turnover occurs within the lysosomal compartment by concerted action of the endo-acting hyaluronidases, the lysosomal exoglycosidases, β-glucuronidase, and β-hexosaminidase, in a pH-sensitive manner (103, 104).

Of the six family members, Hyal-1 has been best studied. It is widely expressed and is found in plasma and urine as well as in several tissues including liver, kidney, spleen, and heart and cleaves HA to tetra- and probably also hexasaccharides (105, 106). Hyal1 is a 57-kDa glycoprotein that also occurs as a proteolytically processed 45-kDa form with two chains bound by a disulfide bond. The biological significance of two forms of Hyal-1 is not known, as both are present in tissues and cells while only the 57-kDa form is present in serum (107). Defects in HYAL1 were identified as the genetic lesion in the lysosomal storage disorder mucopolysaccharidosis IX (108). Loss of Hyal-1 activity results in accumulation of HA in serum as well as within the lysosomes of skin fibroblasts and macrophages (109). Once HA is within the lysosome, the lysosomal exoglycosidases appear to share some functional redundancy with Hyal-1 for HA turnover (97). Recombinant Hyal-1 has been reported to have a strict pH optimum near 3.7, with activity decreasing by ~75% ± 0.5 pH (107). However, several proteomics studies of lysosomes have not found Hyal-1 (or Hyal-2) in their analysis. This discrepancy may be due to the method of protein detection as most of these studies rely upon the fact that the majority of lysosomal hydrolases are targeted to the lysosome by the mannose 6-phosphate (M6P) pathway [for more details, see review in Ref. (110)], and therefore have utilized immobilized M6P-receptors as a purification method (111–120). Consequently, with the exception of one study (120), proteins trafficked to the lysosome by M6P-independent mechanisms are missing from these data sets. Other *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies have shown that Hyal-1, either in culture medium or serum, is taken up by endocytosis and does reach the endosomal–lysosomal network. This compartment, however, does not contain the classical late lysosomal hydrolases β-galactosidase or *N*-acetylglucosaminidase, and likely represents a late endosome (121, 122). These data fit

well with the high levels of Hyal-1 observed in plasma and suggest that newly synthesized Hyal-1 reaches lysosomes through a secretion-recapture mechanism. The function of Hyal-1 within serum remains unclear.

Hyal-2 shares many of the features of Hyal-1: it is a 55-kDa glycoprotein widely distributed in a number of tissues, acid active, and found in two forms. Although it is frequently reported to be lysosomal, significant controversy exists around this point (123–125). Hyal-2 contains a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage that tethers it to membrane surfaces where it can serve as the receptor for the jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus (84, 126, 127). GPI-anchored Hyal-2 has hyaluronidase activity when it is on the surface of human platelets (34). In certain cell types, a soluble, intracellular form lacking the GPI anchor has also been reported (128, 129). Initial studies of soluble Hyal-2 activity indicated that the enzyme is functional only in a narrow pH range around 3.7, similar to Hyal-1. Despite having a high degree of primary sequence homology to Hyal-1, Hyal-2 cleaves HMW–HA to generate 20-kDa fragments (approximately 50 disaccharides) *in vitro* (123, 125). A study of Hyal-2 expressed in HEK293 cells indicates strong membrane co-localization of Hyal-2 and CD44 with a pH optimum of 6.0 for membrane fractionated Hyal-2. Although some HA fragments generated by Hyal-2 were internalized, the majority was released into the medium (121). This is consistent with the finding that in breast cancer cells, Hyal-2 forms a complex with CD44 and the Na^+–H^+ exchanger 1 (NHE1), and HA degradation by Hyal-2 depends upon its interaction with CD44 at the membrane surface. However, controversy exists as to whether CD44 is present on the surface of platelets (130, 131). In culture, the interaction of CD44 and NHE1 leads to extrusion of H^+ ions and a decrease in extracellular pH to 6.6 (132). Possibly, the distribution of Hyal-2 as either membrane-associated or soluble is cell-type or activation-state specific, and insertion into a lipid membrane can affect both the localization and the activity range of Hyal-2.

Degradation of HA by Hyal-1 primarily takes place within cells, and depends upon the ability of CD44 or other HA receptors to internalize HA fragments. Although significant levels of Hyal-1 are present in serum, to date it has not been shown to be functionally active in circulation. Interestingly, MPS IX patients deficient in Hyal-1 have been reported with plasma HA levels at 40 times normal (109). Thus it is unclear whether circulating Hyal-1 could potentially contribute to HA fragmentation. At this point in time, Hyal-1 appears to primarily contribute to intracellular HA turnover.

The ability of the hyaluronidases to depolymerize HA seems to be highly dependent on compartment and contribution of HA-binding proteins. The discrepancies in pH optimum reported in the literature may suggest that in a low pH environment, certain sizes of HA are easily degraded by Hyal-1 and Hyal-2 without the assistance of HA-binding proteins. It has been suggested that HMW-HA exists as a supramolecular structure capable of transitioning between secondary and tertiary structures in *in vitro* solutions (133, 134). However, other studies indicate that these interactions may not occur. Data demonstrating a lack of intra-chain interactions open to competition, and an absence of amide-carboxylate hydrogen bonds required to form a twofold helical HA chain necessary for proposed models of secondary and tertiary HA structures, together suggest that intra-molecular structures are unlikely (135, 136). The structure of HA *in vivo* is likely to be dictated by the specificity, degree, and hierarchy of protein–HA interactions, and the ability of the hyaluronidases to degrade HA probably depends upon the conformation of HA chains. The finding of Hyal-2 in complex with CD44 at the plasma membrane is suggestive that HA-binding proteins can enhance the activity of HA degrading enzymes, and CD44 binding may provide Hyal-2 with a preferable conformation of HA. While Hyal-1 and Hyal-2 have been shown to prefer to cleave HA to tetrasaccharides and 50 disaccharides, respectively, these experiments have been performed *in vitro* for long periods of time and in most cases with exogenous HA free of HA-binding proteins. Given that neither enzyme has been shown to exhibit processivity, the sizes generated by Hyal-2 at the cell surface are more likely to be polydisperse and dependent upon the availability of HA-binding proteins.

While the hyaluronidases discussed above are at present the most plausible sources of HA fragments, they are not likely to be the only contributors. Recently, KIAA1199, a gene of unknown function involved in non-syndromic hearing loss and several forms of cancer has been identified as a HA-binding protein that contributes to HA degradation in cultured skin fibroblasts (137, 138). Interestingly, the authors show that siRNA-mediated knockdown of CD44 or Hyal-2 had no effect on HA degradation. Further, Hyal-1 did not appear to be expressed in Detroit 551 skin fibroblasts, and the majority of the HA depolymerization was lost upon KIAA1199 knockdown. However, it is important to note that although KIAA1199 appears to co-localize and co-precipitate with clathrin heavy chain, the authors were only able to detect depolymerized HA within media and were unable to detect fragments within the cell (137, 138). Future studies will determine whether KIAA1199 truly is a HA degrading enzyme.

Hyaluronan has long been suggested to protect articular tissues by absorbing ROS capable of degrading components of the ECM *in vitro* (139, 140). An additional mechanism suggested in the literature that could lead to HA fragmentation is the accumulation of ROS under conditions of injury or pathological inflammation. Accumulation of ROS in chronic inflammatory conditions has been noted, and direct depolymerization of HA by ROS has been illustrated largely *in vitro*, with some exceptions (141–146). In an epithelial airway culture system, xanthine/xanthine oxidase generation of ROS led to HA degradation and tissue kallikrein-mediated EGF receptor activation (147). However, ROS species themselves are capable of stimulating Hyal-2 gene expression via p38MAPK. In lentiviral-mediated Hyal-2 knockdown of cells exposed to ROS, HA depolymerization was not observed (148). Other species, including $O_2^{\bullet -}$ and $^{\bullet}NO$ are present locally in inflammatory tissues and may recombine to produce peroxynitrite, which specifically degrades the HA, but not heparin/heparan sulfate (149–151). The contribution of ROS species to HA fragment generation will ultimately depend upon the relative ratio of these species, HA, anti-oxidants, and other substrates within the ECM. HA fragments generated directly by ROS species are functionally equivalent to enzymatic products is currently not known.

HYALURONAN SIGNALING RECEPTORS

CD44 is a type I transmembrane glycoprotein and is widely regarded as the major cell-surface HA binding protein (152). Widely studied in several contexts, CD44 interactions with HA have important roles in tumor metastasis, lymphocyte adhesion, T cell signaling, angiogenesis, and inflammation (153–156). CD44 contains a short cytoplasmic tail with multiple phosphorylation sites, a transmembrane domain, an extensively glycosylated variable region, and an amino-terminal HA binding domain containing a Link module (157–159). CD44 exhibits significant protein diversity partially due to variable splicing of exons, each encoding for a segment of the extracellular domain, and over a dozen isoforms have been discovered. Of the variable forms of CD44, the most common is termed hematopoietic or standard CD44 (CD44s, CD44H). The diversity of CD44 is further elaborated by the extent to which it is glycosylated. It contains up to two GAG attachment sites (CS or HS), and extensive *N*- and *O*-linked glycosylation alone can account for the majority of the molecular weight of CD44s. Many of the *N*-linked sites are found within the HA binding domain, and glycosylation of CD44 negatively regulates its ability to bind HA in some cell types (160). CD44 has been shown to require activation for high affinity HA binding, and one mechanism involves the enzymatic removal of terminal sialic acid from two *N*-linked glycans in the HA binding domain (161–163). Crosslinking of HA by binding proteins, such as TSG-6, can significantly alter the way in which HA is structured within the ECM and can alter the affinity of CD44 for HA (69, 158, 164).

CD44 is expressed on many cell types that contribute to inflammation including leukocytes, neutrophils, macrophages, chondrocytes, fibroblasts, epithelial, and endothelial cells. While the GAGs of CD44 can bind to cytokines, growth factors, and ECM proteins such as fibronectin, the majority of the functions of CD44 depend upon its ability to bind to HA (165). Just as the size of HA seems to dictate whether it functions as a pro- or anti-inflammatory molecule, studies have suggested CD44 shares contrasting roles. The molecular mechanisms dictating CD44s function may be driven by its affinity for HA. Several stimuli have been shown to activate or dampen the affinity of CD44 for HA. While if the transition from low- to high-affinity binding state (or vice versa) involves a conformational change has not been directly shown, it has been established that HA oligomers cause a ligand-induced conformational change and HA may have two mutually exclusive modes of binding to CD44 (159). Dimerization of CD44 may lead to activation of HA binding, and binding at the cell surface is the result of multiple weak HA–CD44 interactions, which are influenced by the size of the HA ligand (166–168). Interestingly, stability of HA binding appears to be size dependent and it is possible that stability itself may participate in signaling, which could explain the relationship between molecular weight and signaling (169). T cells are stimulated to bind HA by the cytokines IL-2 and TNF, as well as by chemokines such as MIP-1B, IL-8, and RANTES (170, 171). Monocytes can be stimulated to bind HA by a number of cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-3, IFN-γ, and LPS (163, 171–173). By contrast, some molecules including IL-4 and IL-13 inhibit CD44–HA binding (172, 174, 175). Antibodies to CD44 that interfere in HA binding attenuate inflammation in animal models of IBDs. In particular, CD44v7 has been strongly implicated in murine models of colitis as a potent inflammatory mediator. Disrupting CD44v7 isoforms with blocking antibodies induces apoptosis of mononuclear cells in both murine models of IBD as well as in monocytes isolated from inflamed mucosa of IBD patients (176–178). Mice deficient in all isoforms of CD44 develop normally, suggesting that other receptors can compensate for its loss (179). While CD44 is regarded as the primary cell-surface receptor for HA in many cell types, investigation into the mechanisms underlying HA fragment signaling has demonstrated that HA fragments are capable of signaling independently of CD44 (3, 48, 180, 181).

Toll-like receptors function as surveillance receptors, interacting with a number of microbial-derived molecules and activating the innate immune system in response to pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). Increasingly, the TLRs are also shown to sense damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) in response to injury as well (182). The idea that endogenous matrix degradation products act as regulators of cellular processes is not a new one, but with respect to GAG fragments, the role of HA is the best studied (183). HA is a component of the cellular coat on some pathogens including both groups A and C *streptococcus*, some strains of *Escherichia coli*, and *Pasteurella multocida*, and many of these pathogens also express hyaluronidases (184–186). The presence of a HA coat likely assists in evasion by the immune system, while the hyaluronidase enzymes may aid in colonization of the host. HA fragments functioning as DAMPs interact with TLRs, and thereby compete with HMW–HA to initiate receptor signaling. Studies of lysosomal storage disorders, where GAG fragments accumulate within the cell, have suggested that incomplete GAG degradation products are associated with increased activation of TLRs (187–189).

Ten TLR genes have been identified in humans to date, and both TLR4 – the primary signaling receptor for lipopolysaccharides, and TLR2 – a recognition receptor for mycoplasma and gram positive bacteria, are involved in recognition of fragmented HA (3, 35, 43, 48, 83, 190). While an increasing number of studies have shown that TLRs are involved in HA signaling, the underlying mechanisms remain unclear. In dendritic cells, data suggest that TLR4 is required for recognizing HA fragments of 4-, 6-, and 8-sugars, and recognition is independent of CD44, TLR2, or receptor for HA-mediated mobility (RHAMM) (36, 44). However, studies by Noble and colleagues have shown that macrophages isolated from either TLR2 or TLR4 knock out mice are still capable of chemokine gene expression induced by HA fragments, while macrophages from TLR2/4 double knockouts are not. Using a non-infectious bleomycin-induced lung injury model, they also demonstrated that TLR2/4 double knockout mice are protected from acute inflammation due to an impaired ability of macrophages to respond to HA fragments, but at the expense of epithelial cell repair (3).

The data presented by Noble's group showed a requirement for MyD88, a downstream effector molecule shared by the TLRs, and for HA fragment signaling; HA-TLR signaling was abolished in MyD88-deficient macrophages (3). However, a recent study indicates that HA fragments of ~200 kDa are capable of inducing type I interferons by a TLR4 MyD88-independent pathway (191). These differences observed in signaling complex requirements

may depend upon the size of HA used (135- vs. 200-kDa) or the spectrum of receptors present at the cell surface during the experiments. The specific receptor complexes and signaling pathways engaged appear to be highly cell type dependent. Taylor et al. have shown that although CD44, in some contexts, does not appear to be required for TLR4-mediated HA signaling, it can function in an enhancing role. The adapter molecules CD14 and MD-2 are required for TLR4 recognition of LPS, but CD14 is dispensable for HA signaling in cultured cells (35).

Despite a lack of biophysical evidence that TLRs bind directly to HA or other GAG fragments, interplay between these molecules as mediators of the inflammatory process is clear. Although data support CD44-independent TLR signaling by HA fragments in some cell types, it is not clear if there is competition between these receptors for HA fragment ligands or if they work in a co-operative fashion. Future studies are needed to define the signaling pathways activated by different sizes of HA fragments and the receptors utilized.

EVIDENCE FOR *IN VIVO* IMPORTANCE OF HA FRAGMENTS

In vitro studies have defined multiple signaling properties of HA fragments that occur in a cell type-specific manner and are mediated by a complicated arrangement of receptors. It is clear, however, that HA fragments possess important biological roles in innate immunity. A number of animal models have aided our understanding of how HA modulates inflammation in injury and disease. In a non-infectious lung injury model, HA fragments accumulate in lung tissue and require $CD44^+$ macrophages for clearance before the tissue can be repaired (4). HA fragments are cleared as inflammation is resolved in wild-type mice, but fragments accumulate in CD44-deficient animals. The inability to remove HA fragments from the lung epithelium results in gross inflammation and impaired clearance of apoptotic neutrophils (4). At the cell surface, HMW–HA protects lung epithelium from injury through activation of NF-κB and suppression of apoptosis. Disruption of HA–TLR interactions results in loss of the protective effect of HMW–HA, and tissue injury is exacerbated (3).

HA-binding proteins have also been implicated in resolution of lung inflammation. IαI containing HCs expressed in the liver and normally secreted into serum, enter the lung through vascular leakage during inflammation. In bleomycin-challenged mice, IαI and HA normally appear to co-localize within inflamed lungs whereas in mice lacking IαI, increased levels of HA and cellular inflammation were noted. Together this suggests that HA–HC complexes may contribute to the resolution of lung injury (61, 192). Previous studies have shown HA–HC complexes are higher affinity for CD44 (74), and it is plausible that these HA-binding proteins work together to mediate tissue homeostasis within the lung. Some HA–HC preparations do not exhibit enhanced CD44 binding, and it is likely that the properties of HA–HC depend upon its exact composition of HA-binding proteins as well as the background of the cells involved (71). HMW–HA and CD44 interactions support cell survival, and in cases of injury, fragments accumulate and contribute to induction of inflammation. Clearance of HA fragments, the uptake of apoptotic neutrophils by macrophages, and restoration of HMW–HA pro-survival signals all depend upon CD44, and HA homeostasis is required to resolve lung inflammation and initiate tissue repair.

Though not discussed within the scope of this article, inflammatory mediators can promote angiogenesis, which facilitates chronic inflammation. New blood vessels can sustain a chronic inflammatory response by supplying a source of oxygen and nutrients to inflamed tissue and through transport of new inflammatory cells to the site of inflammation. HA polymers regulate the growth of new blood vessels through interactions with endothelial cells. HMW–HA is anti-angiogenic and inhibits endothelial cell proliferation, while fragmented HA is a pro-angiogenic stimulator. Endothelial cell interactions with HA are mediated in concert by CD44 and RHAMM (6, 7). Loss of CD44 disrupts angiogenesis *in vivo*, and this effect is due to the loss of CD44 expression in endothelial cells, as wild-type leukocytes or bone marrow-derived progenitor cells were unable to rescue the diminished angiogenic response. Interestingly, the endothelial cells deficient in CD44 are still capable of binding HA and exhibit normal migration, possibly due to compensation by RHAMM in these animals. In mice treated with an anti-CD44 antibody shown to block HA binding, neovascularization is drastically impaired, and new vessels cannot properly assemble endothelium-lined tubes (5). In tissues where new vessels are formed or become leaky due to injury, IαI from serum is readily available and can alter the adhesive properties of HA. In an *in vivo* matrigel angiogenesis model, mice lacking IαI exhibit drastically reduced vessel growth (192). However, it is worth noting that HA–HC complexes purified from the amniotic membrane appear to be anti-angiogenic, perhaps suggesting a different composition or organization (193). Endothelial cell interactions with a HA matrix depend upon the CD44–HA interactions that can be enhanced by IαI, and other HA-binding proteins, during vessel formation. Disruption of cell–matrix interactions leads to disrupted tube assembly and decreased stability of newly formed vessels.

Fragmentation of HA was recognized as one of the earliest biological markers for RA, and many animal models of RA are induced by ECM components such as type II collagen or aggrecan (14, 194, 195). Large amounts of HA containing HCs from IαI are found in the synovial fluid of RA patients, and HA–HC complexes contained within the synovium are highly adhesive for infiltrating leukocytes (74). Interestingly, mice incapable of forming HA–HC complexes, or treated with an anti-CD44 antibody, are more resistant to arthritis than wild-type littermates (196–198). By contrast, in a proteoglycan-induced arthritis model, mice deficient in CD44 only exhibit moderate to no resistance (199, 200). HA complexes containing TSG-6 and IαI accumulate to high levels at inflammatory sites and may support CD44-mediated leukocyte rolling and adhesion, while potentially having anti-inflammatory effects (69, 155, 201). High levels of TSG-6 have been reported in the secretory granules of mast cells within the inflamed joint tissues of mice, and intra-articular injection or cartilage-specific expression of TSG-6 have significant protective effects (66, 202, 203). It is possible that TSG-6 mediated crosslinking of HA results in a pro-adhesive but anti-inflammatory matrix for CD44+ cells (69). In the absence of CD44, the initial phases of leukocyte recruitment within inflamed synovial vessels are altered, and leukocytes appear to roll rather than adhere (204, 205). Leukocytes deficient in CD44

do not appear to interact as tightly with these HA complexes, suggesting that reduced adhesion contributes to the delayed onset of arthritis in these animals. Importantly, wild-type mice treated with anti-CD44 antibodies cross-link cell surface CD44, which rapidly disables leukocyte rolling. Antibody cross-linking of CD44 was followed by platelet deposition on the surface of granulocytes in the vascular beds of inflamed synovial tissue, and platelet-coated granulocytes were cleared from circulation leading to resolution of inflammation (205). These studies, in which different behaviors are observed when CD44 is either absent or blocked, are indicative of important differences reported in the literature with regards to the effects of HA fragments.

More extensive studies are needed to fully understand the specific molecular interactions between HA, HA-binding proteins, and HA receptors in the initiation and resolution of inflammation. The tissue microenvironment contributes significantly in regulating the inflammatory process. Defining the mechanisms by which inflammatory and protective HA fragments are generated, and how binding proteins influence their effects, will enable us to better understand the progression of inflammatory disease and perhaps reveal new therapeutic targets.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Dr. Vince Hascall for his critical reading of the manuscript. The authors gratefully acknowledge financial support from the National Institutes of Health (NIH) (Grant P01 HL107147). The HA Matrices in Vascular Pathologies is funded in its entirety by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) (http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov).

REFERENCES

1. Dahl LB, Dahl IM, Engstrom-Laurent A, Granath K. Concentration and molecular weight of sodium hyaluronate in synovial fluid from patients with rheumatoid arthritis and other arthropathies. *Ann Rheum Dis* (1985) **44**(12):817–22. doi:10.1136/ard.44.12.817
2. Hallgren R, Samuelsson T, Laurent TC, Modig J. Accumulation of hyaluronan (hyaluronic acid) in the lung in adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Am Rev Respir Dis* (1989) **139**(3):682–7. doi:10.1164/ajrccm/139.3.682
3. Jiang D, Liang J, Fan J, Yu S, Chen S, Luo Y, et al. Regulation of lung injury and repair by Toll-like receptors and hyaluronan. *Nat Med* (2005) **11**(11):1173–9. doi:10.1038/nm1315
4. Teder P, Vandivier RW, Jiang D, Liang J, Cohn L, Pure E, et al. Resolution of lung inflammation by CD44. *Science* (2002) **296**(5565):155–8. doi:10.1126/science.1069659
5. Cao G, Savani RC, Fehrenbach M, Lyons C, Zhang L, Coukos G, et al. Involvement of endothelial CD44 during in vivo angiogenesis. *Am J Pathol* (2006) **169**(1):325–36. doi:10.2353/ajpath.2006.060206
6. Savani RC, Cao G, Pooler PM, Zaman A, Zhou Z, DeLisser HM. Differential involvement of the hyaluronan (HA) receptors CD44 and receptor for HA-mediated motility in endothelial cell function and angiogenesis. *J Biol Chem* (2001) **276**(39):36770–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.M102273200
7. Slevin M, Krupinski J, Gaffney J, Matou S, West D, Delisser H, et al. Hyaluronan-mediated angiogenesis in vascular disease: uncovering RHAMM and CD44 receptor signaling pathways. *Matrix Biol* (2007) **26**(1):58–68. doi:10.1016/j.matbio.2006.08.261
8. Waldenstrom A, Martinussen HJ, Gerdin B, Hallgren R. Accumulation of hyaluronan and tissue edema in experimental myocardial infarction. *J Clin Invest* (1991) **88**(5):1622–8. doi:10.1172/JCI115475
9. Evanko SP, Raines EW, Ross R, Gold LI, Wight TN. Proteoglycan distribution in lesions of atherosclerosis depends on lesion severity, structural characteristics, and the proximity of platelet-derived growth factor and transforming growth factor-beta. *Am J Pathol* (1998) **152**(2):533–46.
10. Wells AF, Larsson E, Tengblad A, Fellstrom B, Tufveson G, Klareskog L, et al. The localization of hyaluronan in normal and rejected human kidneys. *Transplantation* (1990) **50**(2):240–3. doi:10.1097/00007890-199008000-00014
11. Lewis A, Steadman R, Manley P, Craig K, de la Motte C, Hascall V, et al. Diabetic nephropathy, inflammation, hyaluronan and interstitial fibrosis. *Histol Histopathol* (2008) **23**(6):731–9.
12. de la Motte CA, Hascall VC, Drazba J, Bandyopadhyay SK, Strong SA. Mononuclear leukocytes bind to specific hyaluronan structures on colon mucosal smooth muscle cells treated with polyinosinic acid:polycytidylic acid: inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor is crucial to structure and function. *Am J Pathol* (2003) **163**(1):121–33. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63636-X
13. Kessler S, Rho H, West G, Fiocchi C, Drazba J, de la Motte C. Hyaluronan (HA) deposition precedes and promotes leukocyte recruitment in intestinal inflammation. *Clin Transl Sci* (2008) **1**(1):57–61. doi:10.1111/j.1752-8062.2008.00025.x
14. Balazs E, Denlinger J. Sodium hyaluronate and joint function. *J Equine Vet Sci* (1985) **5**(4):217–28. doi:10.1016/S0737-0806(85)80102-7
15. Granger HJ, Laine GA, Barnes GE, Lewis RE. Dynamics and control of transmicrovascular fluid exchange. *Edema* (1984) **8**:189–224.
16. Feinberg RN, Beebe DC. Hyaluronate in vasculogenesis. *Science* (1983) **220**(4602):1177–9. doi:10.1126/science.6857242
17. Deed R, Rooney P, Kumar P, Norton JD, Smith J, Freemont AJ, et al. Early-response gene signalling is induced by angiogenic oligosaccharides of hyaluronan in endothelial cells. Inhibition by non-angiogenic, high-molecular-weight hyaluronan. *Int J Cancer* (1997) **71**(2):251–6. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0215(19970410)71:2<251::AID-IJC21>3.0.CO;2-J
18. McBride WH, Bard JB. Hyaluronidase-sensitive halos around adherent cells. Their role in blocking lymphocyte-mediated cytolysis. *J Exp Med* (1979) **149**(2):507–15. doi:10.1084/jem.149.2.507
19. Forrester JV, Balazs EA. Inhibition of phagocytosis by high molecular weight hyaluronate. *Immunology* (1980) **40**(3):435–46.
20. Miossec P, Dinarello CA, Ziff M. Interleukin-1 lymphocyte chemotactic activity in rheumatoid arthritis synovial fluid. *Arthritis Rheum* (1986) **29**(4):461–70. doi:10.1002/art.1780290402
21. Nakamura K, Yokohama S, Yoneda M, Okamoto S, Tamaki Y, Ito T, et al. High, but not low, molecular weight hyaluronan prevents T-cell-mediated liver injury by reducing proinflammatory cytokines in mice. *J Gastroenterol* (2004) **39**(4):346–54. doi:10.1007/s00535-003-1301-x
22. Bollyky PL, Falk BA, Wu RP, Buckner JH, Wight TN, Nepom GT. Intact extracellular matrix and the maintenance of immune tolerance: high molecular weight hyaluronan promotes persistence of induced CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *J Leukoc Biol* (2009) **86**(3):567–72. doi:10.1189/jlb.0109001
23. Bollyky PL, Wu RP, Falk BA, Lord JD, Long SA, Preisinger A, et al. ECM components guide IL-10 producing regulatory T-cell (TR1) induction from effector memory T-cell precursors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2011) **108**(19):7938–43. doi:10.1073/pnas.1017360108
24. de La Motte CA, Hascall VC, Calabro A, Yen-Lieberman B, Strong SA. Mononuclear leukocytes preferentially bind via CD44 to hyaluronan on human intestinal mucosal smooth muscle cells after virus infection or treatment with poly (I.C). *J Biol Chem* (1999) **274**(43):30747–55. doi:10.1074/jbc.274.43.30747
25. Mahadevan P, Larkins RG, Fraser JR, Fosang AJ, Dunlop ME. Increased hyaluronan production in the glomeruli from diabetic rats: a link between glucose-induced prostaglandin production and reduced sulphated proteoglycan. *Diabetologia* (1995) **38**(3):298–305. doi:10.1007/BF00400634
26. Young BA, Johnson RJ, Alpers CE, Eng E, Gordon K, Floege J, et al. Cellular events in the evolution of experimental diabetic nephropathy. *Kidney Int* (1995) **47**(3):935–44. doi:10.1038/ki.1995.139
27. Sadowitz B, Seymour K, Gahtan V, Maier KG. The role of hyaluronic acid in atherosclerosis and intimal hyperplasia. *J Surg Res* (2012) **173**(2):e63–72. doi:10.1016/j.jss.2011.09.025
28. Wang A, Hascall VC. Hyaluronan structures synthesized by rat mesangial cells in response to hyperglycemia induce monocyte adhesion. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(11):10279–85. doi:10.1074/jbc.M312045200
29. Selbi W, de la Motte CA, Hascall VC, Day AJ, Bowen T, Phillips AO. Characterization of hyaluronan cable structure and function in renal proximal tubular epithelial cells. *Kidney Int* (2006) **70**(7):1287–95. doi:10.1038/sj.ki.5001760
30. Evanko SP, Potter-Perigo S, Johnson PY, Wight TN. Organization of hyaluronan and versican in the extracellular matrix of human fibroblasts treated with

the viral mimetic poly I:C. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2009) **57**(11):1041–60. doi:10.1369/jhc.2009.953802
31. Day AJ, de la Motte CA. Hyaluronan cross-linking: a protective mechanism in inflammation? *Trends Immunol* (2005) **26**(12):637–43. doi:10.1016/j.it.2005.09.009
32. Majors AK, Austin RC, de la Motte CA, Pyeritz RE, Hascall VC, Kessler SP, et al. Endoplasmic reticulum stress induces hyaluronan deposition and leukocyte adhesion. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**(47):47223–31. doi:10.1074/jbc.M304871200
33. Lauer ME, Mukhopadhyay D, Fulop C, de la Motte CA, Majors AK, Hascall VC. Primary murine airway smooth muscle cells exposed to poly (I,C) or tunicamycin synthesize a leukocyte-adhesive hyaluronan matrix. *J Biol Chem* (2009) **284**(8):5299–312. doi:10.1074/jbc.M807965200
34. de la Motte C, Nigro J, Vasanji A, Rho H, Kessler S, Bandyopadhyay S, et al. Platelet-derived hyaluronidase 2 cleaves hyaluronan into fragments that trigger monocyte-mediated production of proinflammatory cytokines. *Am J Pathol* (2009) **174**(6):2254–64. doi:10.2353/ajpath.2009.080831
35. Taylor KR, Yamasaki K, Radek KA, Di Nardo A, Goodarzi H, Golenbock D, et al. Recognition of hyaluronan released in sterile injury involves a unique receptor complex dependent on Toll-like receptor 4, CD44, and MD-2. *J Biol Chem* (2007) **282**(25):18265–75. doi:10.1074/jbc.M606352200
36. Termeer C, Benedix F, Sleeman J, Fieber C, Voith U, Ahrens T, et al. Oligosaccharides of hyaluronan activate dendritic cells via toll-like receptor 4. *J Exp Med* (2002) **195**(1):99–111. doi:10.1084/jem.20001858
37. Do Y, Nagarkatti PS, Nagarkatti M. Role of CD44 and hyaluronic acid (HA) in activation of alloreactive and antigen-specific T cells by bone marrow-derived dendritic cells. *J Immunother* (2004) **27**(1):1–12. doi:10.1097/00002371-200401000-00001
38. Horton MR, Burdick MD, Strieter RM, Bao C, Noble PW. Regulation of hyaluronan-induced chemokine gene expression by IL-10 and IFN-gamma in mouse macrophages. *J Immunol* (1998) **160**(6):3023–30.
39. Horton MR, McKee CM, Bao C, Liao F, Farber JM, Hodge-DuFour J, et al. Hyaluronan fragments synergize with interferon-gamma to induce the C-X-C chemokines mig and interferon-inducible protein-10 in mouse macrophages. *J Biol Chem* (1998) **273**(52):35088–94. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.52.35088
40. Horton MR, Olman MA, Noble PW. Hyaluronan fragments induce plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 and inhibit urokinase activity in mouse alveolar macrophages: a potential mechanism for impaired fibrinolytic activity in acute lung injury. *Chest* (1999) **116**(1 Suppl):17S.
41. Horton MR, Shapiro S, Bao C, Lowenstein CJ, Noble PW. Induction and regulation of macrophage metalloelastase by hyaluronan fragments in mouse macrophages. *J Immunol* (1999) **162**(7):4171–6.
42. Noble PW, Lake FR, Henson PM, Riches DW. Hyaluronate activation of CD44 induces insulin-like growth factor-1 expression by a tumor necrosis factor-alpha-dependent mechanism in murine macrophages. *J Clin Invest* (1993) **91**(6):2368–77. doi:10.1172/JCI116469
43. McKee CM, Penno MB, Cowman M, Burdick MD, Strieter RM, Bao C, et al. Hyaluronan (HA) fragments induce chemokine gene expression in alveolar macrophages. The role of HA size and CD44. *J Clin Invest* (1996) **98**(10):2403–13. doi:10.1172/JCI119054
44. Termeer CC, Hennies J, Voith U, Ahrens T, Weiss JM, Prehm P, et al. Oligosaccharides of hyaluronan are potent activators of dendritic cells. *J Immunol* (2000) **165**(4):1863–70.
45. Kothapalli D, Flowers J, Xu T, Pure E, Assoian RK. Differential activation of ERK and Rac mediates the proliferative and anti-proliferative effects of hyaluronan and CD44. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**(46):31823–9. doi:10.1074/jbc.M802934200
46. Zheng L, Riehl TE, Stenson WF. Regulation of colonic epithelial repair in mice by Toll-like receptors and hyaluronic acid. *Gastroenterology* (2009) **137**(6):2041–51. doi:10.1053/j.gastro.2009.08.055
47. Gariboldi S, Palazzo M, Zanobbio L, Selleri S, Sommariva M, Sfondrini L, et al. Low molecular weight hyaluronic acid increases the self-defense of skin epithelium by induction of beta-defensin 2 via TLR2 and TLR4. *J Immunol* (2008) **181**(3):2103–10.
48. Hill DR, Kessler SP, Rho HK, Cowman MK, de la Motte CA. Specific-sized hyaluronan fragments promote expression of human beta-defensin 2 in intestinal epithelium. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**(36):30610–24. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.356238
49. Day AJ, Prestwich GD. Hyaluronan-binding proteins: tying up the giant. *J Biol Chem* (2002) **277**(7):4585–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.R100036200
50. Potempa J, Kwon K, Chawla R, Travis J. Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor. Inhibition spectrum of native and derived forms. *J Biol Chem* (1989) **264**(25):15109–14.
51. Zhuo L, Hascall VC, Kimata K. Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor, a covalent protein-glycosaminoglycan-protein complex. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(37):38079–82. doi:10.1074/jbc.R300039200
52. Zhuo L, Kimata K. Structure and function of inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor heavy chains. *Connect Tissue Res* (2008) **49**(5):311–20. doi:10.1080/03008200802325458
53. Milner CM, Tongsoongnoen W, Rugg MS, Day AJ. The molecular basis of inter-alpha-inhibitor heavy chain transfer on to hyaluronan. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2007) **35**(Pt 4):672–6. doi:10.1042/BST0350672
54. Enghild JJ, Thogersen IB, Cheng F, Fransson LA, Roepstorff P, Rahbek-Nielsen H. Organization of the inter-alpha-inhibitor heavy chains on the chondroitin sulfate originating from Ser(10) of bikunin: posttranslational modification of IalphaI-derived bikunin. *Biochemistry* (1999) **38**(36):11804–13. doi:10.1021/bi9908540
55. Bandyopadhyay SK, de la Motte CA, Kessler SP, Hascall VC, Hill DR, Strong SA. Hyaluronan-mediated leukocyte adhesion and dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis are attenuated in the absence of signal transducer and activator of transcription 1. *Am J Pathol* (2008) **173**(5):1361–8. doi:10.2353/ajpath.2008.080444
56. He H, Zhang S, Tighe S, Son J, Tseng SC. Immobilized heavy chain-hyaluronic acid polarizes lipopolysaccharide-activated macrophages toward M2 phenotype. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**(36):25792–803. doi:10.1074/jbc.M113.479584
57. Mateos J, Lourido L, Fernandez-Puente P, Calamia V, Fernandez-Lopez C, Oreiro N, et al. Differential protein profiling of synovial fluid from rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis patients using LC-MALDI TOF/TOF. *J Proteomics* (2012) **75**(10):2869–78. doi:10.1016/j.jprot.2011.12.042
58. Yingsung W, Zhuo L, Morgelin M, Yoneda M, Kida D, Watanabe H, et al. Molecular heterogeneity of the SHAP-hyaluronan complex. Isolation and characterization of the complex in synovial fluid from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**(35):32710–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.M303658200
59. Wisniewski HG, Colon E, Liublinska V, Karia RJ, Stabler TV, Attur M, et al. TSG-6 activity as a novel biomarker of progression in knee osteoarthritis. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage* (2014) **22**(2):235–41. doi:10.1016/j.joca.2013.12.004
60. Lauer ME, Glant TT, Mikecz K, DeAngelis PL, Haller FM, Husni ME, et al. Irreversible heavy chain transfer to hyaluronan oligosaccharides by tumor necrosis factor-stimulated gene-6. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**(1):205–14. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.403998
61. Garantziotis S, Hollingsworth JW, Ghanayem RB, Timberlake S, Zhuo L, Kimata K, et al. Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor attenuates complement activation and complement-induced lung injury. *J Immunol* (2007) **179**(6):4187–92.
62. Okroj M, Holmquist E, Sjolander J, Corrales L, Saxne T, Wisniewski HG, et al. Heavy chains of inter alpha inhibitor (IalphaI) inhibit the human complement system at early stages of the cascade. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**(24):20100–10. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.324913
63. Jessen TE, Odum L. Role of tumour necrosis factor stimulated gene 6 (TSG-6) in the coupling of inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor to hyaluronan in human follicular fluid. *Reproduction* (2003) **125**(1):27–31. doi:10.1530/rep.0.1250027
64. Rugg MS, Willis AC, Mukhopadhyay D, Hascall VC, Fries E, Fulop C, et al. Characterization of complexes formed between TSG-6 and inter-alpha-inhibitor that act as intermediates in the covalent transfer of heavy chains onto hyaluronan. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**(27):25674–86. doi:10.1074/jbc.M501332200
65. Maier R, Wisniewski HG, Vilcek J, Lotz M. TSG-6 expression in human articular chondrocytes. Possible implications in joint inflammation and cartilage degradation. *Arthritis Rheum* (1996) **39**(4):552–9. doi:10.1002/art.1780390403
66. Bardos T, Kamath RV, Mikecz K, Glant TT. Anti-inflammatory and chondroprotective effect of TSG-6 (tumor necrosis factor-alpha-stimulated gene-6) in murine models of experimental arthritis. *Am J Pathol* (2001) **159**(5):1711–21. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63018-0
67. Mahoney DJ, Mulloy B, Forster MJ, Blundell CD, Fries E, Milner CM, et al. Characterization of the interaction between tumor necrosis factor-stimulated gene-6 and heparin: implications for the inhibition of plasmin in extracellular matrix microenvironments. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**(29):27044–55. doi:10.1074/jbc.M502068200
68. Dyer DP, Thomson JM, Hermant A, Jowitt TA, Handel TM, Proudfoot AE, et al. TSG-6 inhibits neutrophil migration via direct interaction with the

chemokine CXCL8. *J Immunol* (2014) **192**(5):2177–85. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300194
69. Lesley J, Gal I, Mahoney DJ, Cordell MR, Rugg MS, Hyman R, et al. TSG-6 modulates the interaction between hyaluronan and cell surface CD44. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(24):25745–54. doi:10.1074/jbc.M313319200
70. Getting SJ, Mahoney DJ, Cao T, Rugg MS, Fries E, Milner CM, et al. The link module from human TSG-6 inhibits neutrophil migration in a hyaluronan- and inter-alpha -inhibitor-independent manner. *J Biol Chem* (2002) **277**(52):51068–76. doi:10.1074/jbc.M205121200
71. Baranova NS, Foulcer SJ, Briggs DC, Tilakaratna V, Enghild JJ, Milner CM, et al. Inter-alpha-inhibitor impairs TSG-6-induced hyaluronan cross-linking. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**(41):29642–53. doi:10.1074/jbc.M113.477422
72. Swaidani S, Cheng G, Lauer ME, Sharma M, Mikecz K, Hascall VC, et al. TSG-6 protein is crucial for the development of pulmonary hyaluronan deposition, eosinophilia, and airway hyperresponsiveness in a murine model of asthma. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**(1):412–22. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.389874
73. Lauer ME, Cheng G, Swaidani S, Aronica MA, Weigel PH, Hascall VC. Tumor necrosis factor-stimulated gene-6 (TSG-6) amplifies hyaluronan synthesis by airway smooth muscle cells. *J Biol Chem* (2013) **288**(1):423–31. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.389882
74. Zhuo L, Kanamori A, Kannagi R, Itano N, Wu J, Hamaguchi M, et al. SHAP potentiates the CD44-mediated leukocyte adhesion to the hyaluronan substratum. *J Biol Chem* (2006) **281**(29):20303–14. doi:10.1074/jbc.M506703200
75. Hardingham TE. The role of link-protein in the structure of cartilage proteoglycan aggregates. *Biochem J* (1979) **177**(1):237–47.
76. McQuillan DJ, Findlay DM, Hocking AM, Yanagishita M, Midura RJ, Hascall VC. Proteoglycans synthesized by an osteoblast-like cell line (UMR 106-01). *Biochem J* (1991) **277**(Pt 1):199–206.
77. Ang LC, Zhang Y, Cao L, Yang BL, Young B, Kiani C, et al. Versican enhances locomotion of astrocytoma cells and reduces cell adhesion through its G1 domain. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* (1999) **58**(6):597–605. doi:10.1097/00005072-199906000-00004
78. Yamagata M, Saga S, Kato M, Bernfield M, Kimata K. Selective distributions of proteoglycans and their ligands in pericellular matrix of cultured fibroblasts. Implications for their roles in cell-substratum adhesion. *J Cell Sci* (1993) **106**(Pt 1):55–65.
79. Yamagata M, Suzuki S, Akiyama SK, Yamada KM, Kimata K. Regulation of cell-substrate adhesion by proteoglycans immobilized on extracellular substrates. *J Biol Chem* (1989) **264**(14):8012–8.
80. Kim S, Takahashi H, Lin WW, Descargues P, Grivennikov S, Kim Y, et al. Carcinoma-produced factors activate myeloid cells through TLR2 to stimulate metastasis. *Nature* (2009) **457**(7225):102–6. doi:10.1038/nature07623
81. Mantovani A. Cancer: inflaming metastasis. *Nature* (2009) **457**(7225):36–7. doi:10.1038/457036b
82. Zheng PS, Wen J, Ang LC, Sheng W, Viloria-Petit A, Wang Y, et al. Versican/PG-M G3 domain promotes tumor growth and angiogenesis. *FASEB J* (2004) **18**(6):754–6.
83. Scheibner KA, Lutz MA, Boodoo S, Fenton MJ, Powell JD, Horton MR. Hyaluronan fragments act as an endogenous danger signal by engaging TLR2. *J Immunol* (2006) **177**(2):1272–81.
84. Lokeshwar VB, Cerwinka WH, Isoyama T, Lokeshwar BL. HYAL1 hyaluronidase in prostate cancer: a tumor promoter and suppressor. *Cancer Res* (2005) **65**(17):7782–9. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-1022
85. Suzuki M, Asplund T, Yamashita H, Heldin CH, Heldin P. Stimulation of hyaluronan biosynthesis by platelet-derived growth factor-BB and transforming growth factor-beta 1 involves activation of protein kinase C. *Biochem J* (1995) **307**(Pt 3):817–21.
86. Sakko AJ, Ricciardelli C, Mayne K, Suwiwat S, LeBaron RG, Marshall VR, et al. Modulation of prostate cancer cell attachment to matrix by versican. *Cancer Res* (2003) **63**(16):4786–91.
87. Berdiaki A, Zafiropoulos A, Fthenou E, Katonis P, Tsatsakis A, Karamanos NK, et al. Regulation of hyaluronan and versican deposition by growth factors in fibrosarcoma cell lines. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2008) **1780**(2):194–202. doi:10.1016/j.bbagen.2007.10.005
88. Norian JM, Malik M, Parker CY, Joseph D, Leppert PC, Segars JH, et al. Transforming growth factor beta3 regulates the versican variants in the extracellular matrix-rich uterine leiomyomas. *Reprod Sci* (2009) **16**(12):1153–64. doi:10.1177/1933719109343310
89. Lemire JM, Chan CK, Bressler S, Miller J, LeBaron RG, Wight TN. Interleukin-1beta selectively decreases the synthesis of versican by arterial smooth muscle cells. *J Cell Biochem* (2007) **101**(3):753–66. doi:10.1002/jcb.21235
90. Schonherr E, Kinsella MG, Wight TN. Genistein selectively inhibits platelet-derived growth factor-stimulated versican biosynthesis in monkey arterial smooth muscle cells. *Arch Biochem Biophys* (1997) **339**(2):353–61. doi:10.1006/abbi.1996.9854
91. Venkatesan N, Roughley PJ, Ludwig MS. Proteoglycan expression in bleomycin lung fibroblasts: role of transforming growth factor-beta(1) and interferon-gamma. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* (2002) **283**(4):L806–14. doi:10.1152/ajplung.00061.2002
92. Lasky LA. Selectins: interpreters of cell-specific carbohydrate information during inflammation. *Science* (1992) **258**(5084):964–9. doi:10.1126/science.1439808
93. Hirose J, Kawashima H, Yoshie O, Tashiro K, Miyasaka M. Versican interacts with chemokines and modulates cellular responses. *J Biol Chem* (2001) **276**(7):5228–34. doi:10.1074/jbc.M007542200
94. Kawashima H, Hirose M, Hirose J, Nagakubo D, Plaas AH, Miyasaka M. Binding of a large chondroitin sulfate/dermatan sulfate proteoglycan, versican, to L-selectin, P-selectin, and CD44. *J Biol Chem* (2000) **275**(45):35448–56. doi:10.1074/jbc.M003387200
95. Kawashima H, Li YF, Watanabe N, Hirose J, Hirose M, Miyasaka M. Identification and characterization of ligands for L-selectin in the kidney. I. Versican, a large chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan, is a ligand for L-selectin. *Int Immunol* (1999) **11**(3):393–405. doi:10.1093/intimm/11.3.393
96. Aronson NN Jr, Davidson EA. Lysosomal hyaluronidase from rat liver. II. Properties. *J Biol Chem* (1967) **242**(3):441–4.
97. Gushulak L, Hemming R, Martin D, Seyrantepe V, Pshezhetsky A, Triggs-Raine B. Hyaluronidase 1 and beta-hexosaminidase have redundant functions in hyaluronan and chondroitin sulfate degradation. *J Biol Chem* (2012) **287**(20):16689–97. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.350447
98. Stern R, Jedrzejas MJ. Hyaluronidases: their genomics, structures, and mechanisms of action. *Chem Rev* (2006) **106**(3):818–39. doi:10.1021/cr050247k
99. Atmuri V, Martin DC, Hemming R, Gutsol A, Byers S, Sahebjam S, et al. Hyaluronidase 3 (HYAL3) knockout mice do not display evidence of hyaluronan accumulation. *Matrix Biol* (2008) **27**(8):653–60. doi:10.1016/j.matbio.2008.07.006
100. Hemming R, Martin DC, Slominski E, Nagy JI, Halayko AJ, Pind S, et al. Mouse Hyal3 encodes a 45- to 56-kDa glycoprotein whose overexpression increases hyaluronidase 1 activity in cultured cells. *Glycobiology* (2008) **18**(4):280–9. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwn006
101. Fraser JR, Laurent TC. Turnover and metabolism of hyaluronan. *Ciba Found Symp* (1989) **143**:41–53.
102. Armstrong SE, Bell DR. Relationship between lymph and tissue hyaluronan in skin and skeletal muscle. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* (2002) **283**(6):H2485–94. doi:10.1152/ajpheart.00385.2002
103. Rome LH, Hill DF. Lysosomal degradation of glycoproteins and glycosaminoglycans. Efflux and recycling of sulphate and N-acetylhexosamines. *Biochem J* (1986) **235**(3):707–13.
104. Culty M, Nguyen HA, Underhill CB. The hyaluronan receptor (CD44) participates in the uptake and degradation of hyaluronan. *J Cell Biol* (1992) **116**(4):1055–62. doi:10.1083/jcb.116.4.1055
105. Csoka AB, Frost GI, Stern R. The six hyaluronidase-like genes in the human and mouse genomes. *Matrix Biol* (2001) **20**(8):499–508. doi:10.1016/S0945-053X(01)00172-X
106. Csoka AB, Frost GI, Wong T, Stern R. Purification and microsequencing of hyaluronidase isozymes from human urine. *FEBS Lett* (1997) **417**(3):307–10. doi:10.1016/S0014-5793(97)01309-4
107. Frost GI, Csoka AB, Wong T, Stern R. Purification, cloning, and expression of human plasma hyaluronidase. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (1997) **236**(1):10–5. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1997.6773
108. Natowicz MR, Short MP, Wang Y, Dickersin GR, Gebhardt MC, Rosenthal DI, et al. Clinical and biochemical manifestations of hyaluronidase deficiency. *N Engl J Med* (1996) **335**(14):1029–33. doi:10.1056/NEJM199610033351405
109. Triggs-Raine B, Salo TJ, Zhang H, Wicklow BA, Natowicz MR. Mutations in HYAL1, a member of a tandemly distributed multigene family encoding disparate hyaluronidase activities, cause a newly described lysosomal disorder,

mucopolysaccharidosis IX. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (1999) **96**(11):6296–300. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.11.6296
110. Dahms NM, Lobel P, Kornfeld S. Mannose 6-phosphate receptors and lysosomal enzyme targeting. *J Biol Chem* (1989) **264**(21):12115–8.
111. Chataway TK, Whittle AM, Lewis MD, Bindloss CA, Davey RC, Moritz RL, et al. Two-dimensional mapping and microsequencing of lysosomal proteins from human placenta. *Placenta* (1998) **19**(8):643–54. doi:10.1016/S0143-4004(98)90026-1
112. Journet A, Chapel A, Kieffer S, Louwagie M, Luche S, Garin J. Towards a human repertoire of monocytic lysosomal proteins. *Electrophoresis* (2000) **21**(16):3411–9. doi:10.1002/1522-2683(20001001)21:16<3411::AID-ELPS3411>3.0.CO;2-M
113. Journet A, Chapel A, Kieffer S, Roux F, Garin J. Proteomic analysis of human lysosomes: application to monocytic and breast cancer cells. *Proteomics* (2002) **2**(8):1026–40. doi:10.1002/1615-9861(200208)2:8<1026::AID-PROT1026>3.0.CO;2-I
114. Kollmann K, Mutenda KE, Balleininger M, Eckermann E, von Figura K, Schmidt B, et al. Identification of novel lysosomal matrix proteins by proteome analysis. *Proteomics* (2005) **5**(15):3966–78. doi:10.1002/pmic.200401247
115. Qian M, Sleat DE, Zheng H, Moore D, Lobel P. Proteomics analysis of serum from mutant mice reveals lysosomal proteins selectively transported by each of the two mannose 6-phosphate receptors. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2008) **7**(1):58–70. doi:10.1074/mcp.M700217-MCP200
116. Sleat DE, Jadot M, Lobel P. Lysosomal proteomics and disease. *Proteomics Clin Appl* (2007) **1**(9):1134–46. doi:10.1002/prca.200700250
117. Sleat DE, Lackland H, Wang Y, Sohar I, Xiao G, Li H, et al. The human brain mannose 6-phosphate glycoproteome: a complex mixture composed of multiple isoforms of many soluble lysosomal proteins. *Proteomics* (2005) **5**(6):1520–32. doi:10.1002/pmic.200590026
118. Sleat DE, Wang Y, Sohar I, Lackland H, Li Y, Li H, et al. Identification and validation of mannose 6-phosphate glycoproteins in human plasma reveal a wide range of lysosomal and non-lysosomal proteins. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2006) **5**(10):1942–56. doi:10.1074/mcp.M600030-MCP200
119. Sleat DE, Zheng H, Qian M, Lobel P. Identification of sites of mannose 6-phosphorylation on lysosomal proteins. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2006) **5**(4):686–701. doi:10.1074/mcp.M500343-MCP200
120. Zhang H, Fan X, Bagshaw RD, Zhang L, Mahuran DJ, Callahan JW. Lysosomal membranes from beige mice contain higher than normal levels of endoplasmic reticulum proteins. *J Proteome Res* (2007) **6**(1):240–9. doi:10.1021/pr060407o
121. Harada H, Takahashi M. CD44-dependent intracellular and extracellular catabolism of hyaluronic acid by hyaluronidase-1 and -2. *J Biol Chem* (2007) **282**(8):5597–607. doi:10.1074/jbc.M608358200
122. Gasingirwa MC, Thirion J, Mertens-Strijthagen J, Wattiaux-De Coninck S, Flamion B, Wattiaux R, et al. Endocytosis of hyaluronidase-1 by the liver. *Biochem J* (2010) **430**(2):305–13. doi:10.1042/BJ20100711
123. Lepperdinger G, Strobl B, Kreil G. HYAL2, a human gene expressed in many cells, encodes a lysosomal hyaluronidase with a novel type of specificity. *J Biol Chem* (1998) **273**(35):22466–70. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.35.22466
124. Strobl B, Wechselberger C, Beier DR, Lepperdinger G. Structural organization and chromosomal localization of Hyal2, a gene encoding a lysosomal hyaluronidase. *Genomics* (1998) **53**(2):214–9. doi:10.1006/geno.1998.5472
125. Mullegger J, Reitinger S, Lepperdinger G. Hapten-labeled hyaluronan, a substrate to monitor hyaluronidase activity by enhanced chemiluminescence-assisted detection on filter blots. *Anal Biochem* (2001) **293**(2):291–3. doi:10.1006/abio.2001.5125
126. Rai SK, Duh FM, Vigdorovich V, Danilkovitch-Miagkova A, Lerman MI, Miller AD. Candidate tumor suppressor HYAL2 is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored cell-surface receptor for jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus, the envelope protein of which mediates oncogenic transformation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2001) **98**(8):4443–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.071572898
127. Danilkovitch-Miagkova A, Duh FM, Kuzmin I, Angeloni D, Liu SL, Miller AD, et al. Hyaluronidase 2 negatively regulates RON receptor tyrosine kinase and mediates transformation of epithelial cells by jaagsiekte sheep retrovirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2003) **100**(8):4580–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.0837136100
128. Chow G, Knudson CB, Knudson W. Human hyaluronidase-2 is localized intracellularly in articular chondrocytes and other cultured cell lines. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage* (2006) **14**(12):1312–4. doi:10.1016/j.joca.2006.02.009
129. Chow G, Knudson CB, Knudson W. Expression and cellular localization of human hyaluronidase-2 in articular chondrocytes and cultured cell lines. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage* (2006) **14**(9):849–58. doi:10.1016/j.joca.2006.02.009
130. Mott PJ, Lazarus AH. CD44 antibodies and immune thrombocytopenia in the amelioration of murine inflammatory arthritis. *PLoS One* (2013) **8**(6):e65805. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0065805
131. Koshiishi I, Shizari M, Underhill CB. CD44 can mediate the adhesion of platelets to hyaluronan. *Blood* (1994) **84**(2):390–6.
132. Bourguignon LY, Singleton PA, Diedrich F, Stern R, Gilad E. CD44 interaction with Na+-H+ exchanger (NHE1) creates acidic microenvironments leading to hyaluronidase-2 and cathepsin B activation and breast tumor cell invasion. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(26):26991–7007. doi:10.1074/jbc.M311838200
133. Scott JE, Heatley F. Biological properties of hyaluronan in aqueous solution are controlled and sequestered by reversible tertiary structures, defined by NMR spectroscopy. *Biomacromolecules* (2002) **3**(3):547–53. doi:10.1021/bm010170j
134. Scott JE, Heatley F. Hyaluronan forms specific stable tertiary structures in aqueous solution: a 13C NMR study. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (1999) **96**(9):4850–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.9.4850
135. Gribbon P, Heng BC, Hardingham TE. The analysis of intermolecular interactions in concentrated hyaluronan solutions suggest no evidence for chain-chain association. *Biochem J* (2000) **350**(Pt 1):329–35. doi:10.1042/0264-6021:3500329
136. Blundell CD, Deangelis PL, Almond A. Hyaluronan: the absence of amide-carboxylate hydrogen bonds and the chain conformation in aqueous solution are incompatible with stable secondary and tertiary structure models. *Biochem J* (2006) **396**(3):487–98. doi:10.1042/BJ20060085
137. Yoshida H, Nagaoka A, Kusaka-Kikushima A, Tobiishi M, Kawabata K, Sayo T, et al. KIAA1199, a deafness gene of unknown function, is a new hyaluronan binding protein involved in hyaluronan depolymerization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2013) **110**(14):5612–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.1215432110
138. Yoshida H, Nagaoka A, Nakamura S, Sugiyama Y, Okada Y, Inoue S. Murine homologue of the human KIAA1199 is implicated in hyaluronan binding and depolymerization. *FEBS Open Bio* (2013) **3**:352–6. doi:10.1016/j.fob.2013.08.003
139. Sato H, Takahashi T, Ide H, Fukushima T, Tabata M, Sekine F, et al. Antioxidant activity of synovial fluid, hyaluronic acid, and two subcomponents of hyaluronic acid. Synovial fluid scavenging effect is enhanced in rheumatoid arthritis patients. *Arthritis Rheum* (1988) **31**(1):63–71. doi:10.1002/art.1780310110
140. Bates EJ, Harper GS, Lowther DA, Preston BN. Effect of oxygen-derived reactive species on cartilage proteoglycan-hyaluronate aggregates. *Biochem Int* (1984) **8**(5):629–37.
141. Chapple ILC. Reactive oxygen species and antioxidants in inflammatory diseases. *J Clin Periodontol* (1997) **24**(5):287–96. doi:10.1111/j.1600-051X.1997.tb00760.x
142. Agren UM, Tammi RH, Tammi MI. Reactive oxygen species contribute to epidermal hyaluronan catabolism in human skin organ culture. *Free Radic Biol Med* (1997) **23**(7):996–1001. doi:10.1016/S0891-5849(97)00098-1
143. Hawkins CL, Davies MJ. Degradation of hyaluronic acid, poly- and monosaccharides, and model compounds by hypochlorite: evidence for radical intermediates and fragmentation. *Free Radic Biol Med* (1998) **24**(9):1396–410. doi:10.1016/S0891-5849(98)00009-4
144. Orvisky E, Soltes L, Stancikova M. High-molecular-weight hyaluronan – a valuable tool in testing the antioxidative activity of amphiphilic drugs stobadine and vinpocetine. *J Pharm Biomed Anal* (1997) **16**(3):419–24. doi:10.1016/S0731-7085(97)00077-0
145. Soltes L, Lath D, Mendichi R, Bystricky P. Radical degradation of high molecular weight hyaluronan: inhibition of the reaction by ibuprofen enantiomers. *Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol* (2001) **23**(2):65–71. doi:10.1358/mf.2001.23.2.627927
146. Yamazaki K, Fukuda K, Matsukawa M, Hara F, Yoshida K, Akagi M, et al. Reactive oxygen species depolymerize hyaluronan: involvement of the hydroxyl radical. *Pathophysiology* (2003) **9**(4):215–20. doi:10.1016/S0928-4680(03)00024-5
147. Casalino-Matsuda SM, Monzon ME, Conner GE, Salathe M, Forteza RM. Role of hyaluronan and reactive oxygen species in tissue kallikrein-mediated

epidermal growth factor receptor activation in human airways. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**(20):21606–16. doi:10.1074/jbc.M309950200
148. Monzon ME, Fregien N, Schmid N, Falcon NS, Campos M, Casalino-Matsuda SM, et al. Reactive oxygen species and hyaluronidase 2 regulate airway epithelial hyaluronan fragmentation. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**(34):26126–34. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.135194
149. Li M, Rosenfeld L, Vilar RE, Cowman MK. Degradation of hyaluronan by peroxynitrite. *Arch Biochem Biophys* (1997) **341**(2):245–50. doi:10.1006/abbi.1997.9970
150. Corsaro MM, Pietraforte D, Di Lorenzo AS, Minetti M, Marino G. Reaction of peroxynitrite with hyaluronan and related saccharides. *Free Radic Res* (2004) **38**(4):343–53. doi:10.1080/10715760310001653833
151. Stankovska M, Hrabarova E, Valachova K, Molnarova M, Gemeiner P, Soltes L. The degradative action of peroxynitrite on high-molecular-weight hyaluronan. *Neuro Endocrinol Lett* (2006) **27**(Suppl 2):31–4.
152. Aruffo A, Stamenkovic I, Melnick M, Underhill CB, Seed B. CD44 is the principal cell surface receptor for hyaluronate. *Cell* (1990) **61**(7):1303–13. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(90)90694-A
153. DeGrendele HC, Estess P, Picker LJ, Siegelman MH. CD44 and its ligand hyaluronate mediate rolling under physiologic flow: a novel lymphocyte-endothelial cell primary adhesion pathway. *J Exp Med* (1996) **183**(3):1119–30. doi:10.1084/jem.183.3.1119
154. DeGrendele HC, Estess P, Siegelman MH. Requirement for CD44 in activated T cell extravasation into an inflammatory site. *Science* (1997) **278**(5338):672–5. doi:10.1126/science.278.5338.672
155. Cuff CA, Kothapalli D, Azonobi I, Chun S, Zhang Y, Belkin R, et al. The adhesion receptor CD44 promotes atherosclerosis by mediating inflammatory cell recruitment and vascular cell activation. *J Clin Invest* (2001) **108**(7):1031–40. doi:10.1172/JCI200112455
156. Clark RA, Alon R, Springer TA. CD44 and hyaluronan-dependent rolling interactions of lymphocytes on tonsillar stroma. *J Cell Biol* (1996) **134**(4):1075–87. doi:10.1083/jcb.134.4.1075
157. Banerji S, Day AJ, Kahmann JD, Jackson DG. Characterization of a functional hyaluronan-binding domain from the human CD44 molecule expressed in *Escherichia coli*. *Protein Expr Purif* (1998) **14**(3):371–81. doi:10.1006/prep.1998.0971
158. Banerji S, Wright AJ, Noble M, Mahoney DJ, Campbell ID, Day AJ, et al. Structures of the Cd44-hyaluronan complex provide insight into a fundamental carbohydrate-protein interaction. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* (2007) **14**(3):234–9. doi:10.1038/nsmb1201
159. Teriete P, Banerji S, Noble M, Blundell CD, Wright AJ, Pickford AR, et al. Structure of the regulatory hyaluronan binding domain in the inflammatory leukocyte homing receptor CD44. *Mol Cell* (2004) **13**(4):483–96. doi:10.1016/S1097-2765(04)00080-2
160. Katoh S, Zheng Z, Oritani K, Shimozato T, Kincade PW. Glycosylation of CD44 negatively regulates its recognition of hyaluronan. *J Exp Med* (1995) **182**(2):419–29. doi:10.1084/jem.182.2.419
161. Katoh S, Miyagi T, Taniguchi H, Matsubara Y, Kadota J, Tominaga A, et al. Cutting edge: an inducible sialidase regulates the hyaluronic acid binding ability of CD44-bearing human monocytes. *J Immunol* (1999) **162**(9):5058–61.
162. English NM, Lesley JF, Hyman R. Site-specific de-N-glycosylation of CD44 can activate hyaluronan binding, and CD44 activation states show distinct threshold densities for hyaluronan binding. *Cancer Res* (1998) **58**(16):3736–42.
163. Gee K, Kozlowski M, Kumar A. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha induces functionally active hyaluronan-adhesive CD44 by activating sialidase through p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated human monocytic cells. *J Biol Chem* (2003) **278**(39):37275–87. doi:10.1074/jbc.M302309200
164. Baranova NS, Nileback E, Haller FM, Briggs DC, Svedhem S, Day AJ, et al. The inflammation-associated protein TSG-6 cross-links hyaluronan via hyaluronan-induced TSG-6 oligomers. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**(29):25675–86. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.247395
165. Ponta H, Sleeman J, Dall P, Moll J, Sherman L, Herrlich P. CD44 isoforms in metastatic cancer. *Invasion Metastasis* (1994) **14**(1-6):82–6.
166. Sleeman J, Rudy W, Hofmann M, Moll J, Herrlich P, Ponta H. Regulated clustering of variant CD44 proteins increases their hyaluronate binding capacity. *J Cell Biol* (1996) **135**(4):1139–50. doi:10.1083/jcb.135.4.1139
167. Lesley J, English N, Charles C, Hyman R. The role of the CD44 cytoplasmic and transmembrane domains in constitutive and inducible hyaluronan binding. *Eur J Immunol* (2000) **30**(1):245–53. doi:10.1002/1521-4141(200001)30:1<245::AID-IMMU245>3.3.CO;2-O
168. Lesley J, Hascall VC, Tammi M, Hyman R. Hyaluronan binding by cell surface CD44. *J Biol Chem* (2000) **275**(35):26967–75. doi:10.1074/jbc.M002527200
169. Wolny PM, Banerji S, Gounou C, Brisson AR, Day AJ, Jackson DG, et al. Analysis of CD44-hyaluronan interactions in an artificial membrane system: insights into the distinct binding properties of high and low molecular weight hyaluronan. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**(39):30170–80. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.137562
170. Estess P, DeGrendele HC, Pascual V, Siegelman MH. Functional activation of lymphocyte CD44 in peripheral blood is a marker of autoimmune disease activity. *J Clin Invest* (1998) **102**(6):1173–82. doi:10.1172/JCI4235
171. Mohamadzadeh M, DeGrendele H, Arizpe H, Estess P, Siegelman M. Proinflammatory stimuli regulate endothelial hyaluronan expression and CD44/HA-dependent primary adhesion. *J Clin Invest* (1998) **101**(1):97–108. doi:10.1172/JCI1604
172. Legras S, Levesque JP, Charrad R, Morimoto K, Le Bousse C, Clay D, et al. CD44-mediated adhesiveness of human hematopoietic progenitors to hyaluronan is modulated by cytokines. *Blood* (1997) **89**(6):1905–14.
173. DeGrendele HC, Kosfiszer M, Estess P, Siegelman MH. CD44 activation and associated primary adhesion is inducible via T cell receptor stimulation. *J Immunol* (1997) **159**(6):2549–53.
174. Maiti A, Maki G, Johnson P. TNF-alpha induction of CD44-mediated leukocyte adhesion by sulfation. *Science* (1998) **282**(5390):941–3. doi:10.1126/science.282.5390.941
175. Underhill CB, Nguyen HA, Shizari M, Culty M. CD44 positive macrophages take up hyaluronan during lung development. *Dev Biol* (1993) **155**(2):324–36. doi:10.1006/dbio.1993.1032
176. Wittig BM, Johansson B, Zoller M, Schwarzler C, Gunthert U. Abrogation of experimental colitis correlates with increased apoptosis in mice deficient for CD44 variant exon 7 (CD44v7). *J Exp Med* (2000) **191**(12):2053–64. doi:10.1084/jem.191.12.2053
177. Farkas S, Hornung M, Sattler C, Anthuber M, Gunthert U, Herfarth H, et al. Short-term treatment with anti-CD44v7 antibody, but not CD44v4, restores the gut mucosa in established chronic dextran sulphate sodium (DSS)-induced colitis in mice. *Clin Exp Immunol* (2005) **142**(2):260–7. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2249.2005.02911.x
178. Hoffmann U, Heilmann K, Hayford C, Stallmach A, Wahnschaffe U, Zeitz M, et al. CD44v7 ligation downregulates the inflammatory immune response in Crohn's disease patients by apoptosis induction in mononuclear cells from the lamina propria. *Cell Death Differ* (2007) **14**(8):1542–51. doi:10.1038/sj.cdd.4402153
179. Schmits R, Filmus J, Gerwin N, Senaldi G, Kiefer F, Kundig T, et al. CD44 regulates hematopoietic progenitor distribution, granuloma formation, and tumorigenicity. *Blood* (1997) **90**(6):2217–33.
180. Fieber C, Baumann P, Vallon R, Termeer C, Simon JC, Hofmann M, et al. Hyaluronan-oligosaccharide-induced transcription of metalloproteases. *J Cell Sci* (2004) **117**(Pt 2):359–67. doi:10.1242/jcs.00831
181. Khaldoyanidi S, Moll J, Karakhanova S, Herrlich P, Ponta H. Hyaluronate-enhanced hematopoiesis: two different receptors trigger the release of interleukin-1beta and interleukin-6 from bone marrow macrophages. *Blood* (1999) **94**(3):940–9.
182. Matzinger P. Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1994) **12**:991–1045. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.12.1.991
183. Davis GE, Bayless KJ, Davis MJ, Meininger GA. Regulation of tissue injury responses by the exposure of matricryptic sites within extracellular matrix molecules. *Am J Pathol* (2000) **156**(5):1489–98. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)65020-1
184. Lowther DA, Rogers HJ. Biosynthesis of hyaluronate. *Nature* (1955) **175**(4453):435. doi:10.1038/175435a0
185. Maclennan AP. The production of capsules, hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase by 25 strains of group C streptococci. *J Gen Microbiol* (1956) **15**(3):485–91. doi:10.1099/00221287-15-3-485
186. Carter GR. Improved hemagglutination test for identifying type A strains of *Pasteurella multocida*. *Appl Microbiol* (1972) **24**(1):162–3.

187. Simonaro CM, Ge Y, Eliyahu E, He X, Jepsen KJ, Schuchman EH. Involvement of the Toll-like receptor 4 pathway and use of TNF-alpha antagonists for treatment of the mucopolysaccharidoses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* (2010) **107**(1):222–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.0912937107
188. DiRosario J, Divers E, Wang C, Etter J, Charrier A, Jukkola P, et al. Innate and adaptive immune activation in the brain of MPS IIIB mouse model. *J Neurosci Res* (2009) **87**(4):978–90. doi:10.1002/jnr.21912
189. Metcalf JA, Linders B, Wu S, Bigg P, O'Donnell P, Sleeper MM, et al. Upregulation of elastase activity in aorta in mucopolysaccharidosis I and VII dogs may be due to increased cytokine expression. *Mol Genet Metab* (2010) **99**(4):396–407. doi:10.1016/j.ymgme.2009.12.003
190. Tesar BM, Jiang D, Liang J, Palmer SM, Noble PW, Goldstein DR. The role of hyaluronan degradation products as innate alloimmune agonists. *Am J Transplant* (2006) **6**(11):2622–35. doi:10.1111/j.1600-6143.2006.01537.x
191. Black KE, Collins SL, Hagan RS, Hamblin MJ, Chan-Li Y, Hallowell RW, et al. Hyaluronan fragments induce IFNbeta via a novel TLR4-TRIF-TBK1-IRF3-dependent pathway. *J Inflamm* (2013) **10**(1):23. doi:10.1186/1476-9255-10-23
192. Garantziotis S, Zudaire E, Trempus CS, Hollingsworth JW, Jiang D, Lancaster LH, et al. Serum inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor and matrix hyaluronan promote angiogenesis in fibrotic lung injury. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* (2008) **178**(9):939–47. doi:10.1164/rccm.200803-386OC
193. Shay E, He H, Sakurai S, Tseng SC. Inhibition of angiogenesis by HC.HA, a complex of hyaluronan and the heavy chain of inter-alpha-inhibitor, purified from human amniotic membrane. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* (2011) **52**(5):2669–78. doi:10.1167/iovs.10-5888
194. Poole AR, Witter J, Roberts N, Piccolo F, Brandt R, Paquin J, et al. Inflammation and cartilage metabolism in rheumatoid arthritis. Studies of the blood markers hyaluronic acid, orosomucoid, and keratan sulfate. *Arthritis Rheum* (1990) **33**(6):790–9. doi:10.1002/art.1780330605
195. Glant TT, Finnegan A, Mikecz K. Proteoglycan-induced arthritis: immune regulation, cellular mechanisms, and genetics. *Crit Rev Immunol* (2003) **23**(3):199–250. doi:10.1615/CritRevImmunol.v23.i3.20
196. Garg HG. *Chemistry and Biology of Hyaluronan*. Amsterdam: Elsevier (2004). 605S p.
197. Mikecz K, Brennan FR, Kim JH, Glant TT. Anti-CD44 treatment abrogates tissue oedema and leukocyte infiltration in murine arthritis. *Nat Med* (1995) **1**(6):558–63. doi:10.1038/nm0695-558
198. Nedvetzki S, Walmsley M, Alpert E, Williams RO, Feldmann M, Naor D. CD44 involvement in experimental collagen-induced arthritis (CIA). *J Autoimmun* (1999) **13**(1):39–47. doi:10.1006/jaut.1999.0294
199. Stoop R, Kotani H, McNeish JD, Otterness IG, Mikecz K. Increased resistance to collagen-induced arthritis in CD44-deficient DBA/1 mice. *Arthritis Rheum* (2001) **44**(12):2922–31. doi:10.1002/1529-0131(200112)44:12<2922::AID-ART480>3.0.CO;2-7
200. Naor D, Nedvetzki S, Assayag N, Thurmond RL, Huang JF, Turley EA. The mechanism of molecular redundancy in autoimmune inflammation in the context of CD44 deficiency. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2005) **1050**:52–63. doi:10.1196/annals.1313.007
201. Milner CM, Higman VA, Day AJ. TSG-6: a pluripotent inflammatory mediator? *Biochem Soc Trans* (2006) **34**(Pt 3):446–50. doi:10.1042/BST0340446
202. Nagyeri G, Radacs M, Ghassemi-Nejad S, Tryniszewska B, Olasz K, Hutas G, et al. TSG-6 protein, a negative regulator of inflammatory arthritis, forms a ternary complex with murine mast cell tryptases and heparin. *J Biol Chem* (2011) **286**(26):23559–69. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.222026
203. Glant TT, Kamath RV, Bardos T, Gal I, Szanto S, Murad YM, et al. Cartilage-specific constitutive expression of TSG-6 protein (product of tumor necrosis factor alpha-stimulated gene 6) provides a chondroprotective, but not antiinflammatory, effect in antigen-induced arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum* (2002) **46**(8):2207–18. doi:10.1002/art.10555
204. Stoop R, Gal I, Glant TT, McNeish JD, Mikecz K. Trafficking of CD44-deficient murine lymphocytes under normal and inflammatory conditions. *Eur J Immunol* (2002) **32**(9):2532–42. doi:10.1002/1521-4141(200209)32:9<2532::AID-IMMU2532>3.0.CO;2-A
205. Hutas G, Bajnok E, Gal I, Finnegan A, Glant TT, Mikecz K. CD44-specific antibody treatment and CD44 deficiency exert distinct effects on leukocyte recruitment in experimental arthritis. *Blood* (2008) **112**(13):4999–5006. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-04-150383

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 08 January 2014; accepted: 25 February 2014; published online: 11 March 2014.
*Citation: Petrey AC and de la Motte CA (2014) Hyaluronan, a crucial regulator of inflammation. Front. Immunol. **5**:101. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00101*
This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers in
IMMUNOLOGY

REVIEW ARTICLE
published: 20 November 2013
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00385

Human immunodeficiency virus and heparan sulfate: from attachment to entry inhibition

Bridgette J. Connell [1,2,3] ***and Hugues Lortat-Jacob*** [1,2,3] ******

[1] *University of Grenoble Alpes, Institut de Biologie Structurale, Grenoble, France*
[2] *Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, Institut de Biologie Structurale, Grenoble, France*
[3] *Commissariat à l'Énergie Atomique, Direction des Sciences du Vivant, Institut de Biologie Structurale, Grenoble, France*

Edited by:
Deirdre Coombe, Curtin University, Australia

Reviewed by:
Marco Rusnati, Univesrity of Brescia, Italy
Barbara Mulloy, King's College London, UK

****Correspondence:***
Hugues Lortat-Jacob, Institut de Biologie Structurale, 71 Avenue des Martyrs, 38000 Grenoble, France
e-mail: hugues.lortat-jacob@ibs.fr

By targeting cells that provide protection against infection, HIV-1 causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Infection starts when gp120, the viral envelope glycoprotein, binds to CD4 and to a chemokine receptor usually CCR5 or CXCR4. As many microorganisms, HIV-1 also interacts with heparan sulfate (HS), a complex group of cell surface associated anionic polysaccharides. It has been thought that this binding, occurring at a step prior to CD4 recognition, increases infectivity by pre-concentrating the virion particles at the cell surface. Early work, dating from before the identification of CCR5 and CXCR4, showed that a variety of HS mimetics bind to the gp120 V3 loop through electrostatic interactions, compete with cell surface associated HS to bind the virus and consequently, neutralize the infectivity of a number of T-cell line-adapted HIV-1 strains. However, progress made to better understand HIV-1 attachment and entry, coupled with the recent identification of additional gp120 regions mediating HS recognition, have considerably modified this view. Firstly, the V3 loop from CXCR4-using viruses is much more positively charged compared to those using CCR5. HS inhibition of cell attachment is thus restricted to CXCR4-using viruses (such as T-cell line-adapted HIV-1). Secondly, studies aiming at characterizing the gp120/HS complex revealed that HS binding was far more complex than previously thought: in addition to the V3 loop of CXCR4 tropic gp120, HS interacts with several other cryptic areas of the protein, which can be induced upon CD4 binding, and are conserved amongst CCR5 and CXCR4 viruses. In view of these data, this review will detail the present knowledge on HS binding to HIV-1, with regards to attachment and entry processes. It will discuss the perspective of targeting the gp120 co-receptor binding site with HS mimetic compounds, a strategy that recently gave rise to entry inhibitors that work in the low nanomolar range, independently of co-receptor usage.

Keywords: heparan sulfate, glycosaminoglycan, CCR5/CXCR4, gp120, V3 loop, co-receptor binding site, HIV-1, attachment and entry inhibition

INTRODUCTION

HIV-1 is the causative agent of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), a condition in humans in which progressive failure of the immune system leads to the development of severe opportunistic infections and unusual malignant disorders (1). Infection occurs through the transfer of blood, semen, vaginal fluid, or breast milk, in which HIV-1 can be present as both free virus particles and/or within infected cells. The virus infects vital cells of the immune system, including $CD4^+$ T-helper lymphocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells, all of which are key to the development and orchestration of the immune response (2). This results in the targeted depletion of $CD4^+$ T cells, the main function of which is to promote cytotoxic T-lymphocyte dependant killing of cells expressing foreign antigens and up regulate antibody production by B-lymphocytes. When $CD4^+$ T cells numbers decline below a critical level (400/μl of blood) cell-mediated immunity is compromised and the body becomes progressively more susceptible to opportunistic infections (3). The first step of the HIV-1 replication cycle, attachment and entry into host cells, occurs through specific interactions between gp120, the glycoprotein which constitutes the surface unit of HIV-1 envelope spikes (Env) and the primary cellular receptor, CD4. This promotes further contacts between gp120 and members of the chemokine receptor family, among which CCR5 and CXCR4 are the most physiologically relevant and ultimately lead to the fusion of the viral and the host cell membranes (4). HIV-1 preferentially uses CCR5 during the acute phase of infection but, later in the course of HIV-1 infection progressing to AIDS, HIV-1 variants frequently appear that become adapted to utilize CXCR4.

Before encountering permissive $CD4^+$ cells the virus may interact with several other alternative receptors, often referred as "attachment receptors" (5) such as Galactoside Ceramide (GalCer), present at the surface of epithelial cells, Mannose-Binding Lectin (MBL), Dendritic Cell Specific ICAM-3-Grabbing Non-integrin (DC-SIGN), or Heparan Sulfate Proteoglycans (HSPGs), the latter being present at the surface of virtually all cell types. Although these interactions generally do not permit infection *per se*, they can importantly affect mucosal cells

(the portal through which HIV-1 enters in the body) attachment and transport across epithelial layers, tropism, tissue invasion, or cellular entry (6, 7). This review will discuss some aspects of the HIV-1-HSPG interaction and will describe how the biochemical characterization of this interaction led to the engineering of a new class of potential attachment and entry inhibitors.

HEPARAN SULFATE PROTEOGLYCANS

Heparan sulfate proteoglycans are glycoproteins carrying one or more covalently bound heparan sulfate (HS) chains, a large anionic polysaccharide of the glycosaminoglycan (GAG) family, characterized by astonishing structural diversity and interactive properties. These complex molecules are widely distributed within tissues, and can be found at the cell surface such as the syndecans and glypicans, within the extracellular matrix such as agrin, perlecan, or type XVIII collagen, or intracellularly such as serglycin (8). Being predominantly and ubiquitously present in the extracellular milieu, these macromolecules are unsurprisingly playing essential roles in a vast number of biological processes occurring at the cell–cell and cell–matrix interface.

Over the past two decades, HSPGs have been found indeed to bind to a multitude of protein ligands, including cytokines, chemokines, morphogens, growth factors, adhesion and matrix molecules, receptors, enzymes, plasma proteins, etc. (8, 9). These interactions, which usually involve the HS chains, serve a large number of purposes. Functionally, HS has been known to affect the local concentration, the compartmentalization, the stability, the structure, and/or the activity of its ligands. Protein-HS interactions thus play critical roles, for example, in mediating the formation of chemokine gradients along which cells can migrate directionally (10–12), in providing a scaffold onto which two adjacent proteins such as growth factor-receptor complexes can interact (13), in protecting cytokines against proteolysis (14), in inducing protein conformational changes (15), in controlling or in restricting the diffusion of its ligands (16–18) thereby generating a local concentration of a given protein. As it will be described below, many microbial pathogens hijack HSPGs and take advantage of their interactive properties for their adhesion to host tissues and invasion of host cells. From a structural view point HSPGs' multiple binding activities are believed to be closely related to the extended structural variability of the HS chain. It is a long (20–150 nm) and linear polysaccharide made of a repeating units of a 1 → 4 linked disaccharide motifs, comprising a glucuronic acid (GlcA) or its C-5 epimer, an iduronic acid (IdoA), and a *N*-acetyl- or *N*-sulfated-glucosamine (GlcNac or GlcNS), either or both of which may be *O*-sulfated at different positions. Variation in length, sulfation, and glucuronate/iduronate ratio, which occur in restricted domains of usually three to six disaccharides along the chain (**Figure 1**), generates a very large polydispersity and, as such, provides distinct docking sites for the various ligands of the polysaccharide (19, 20).

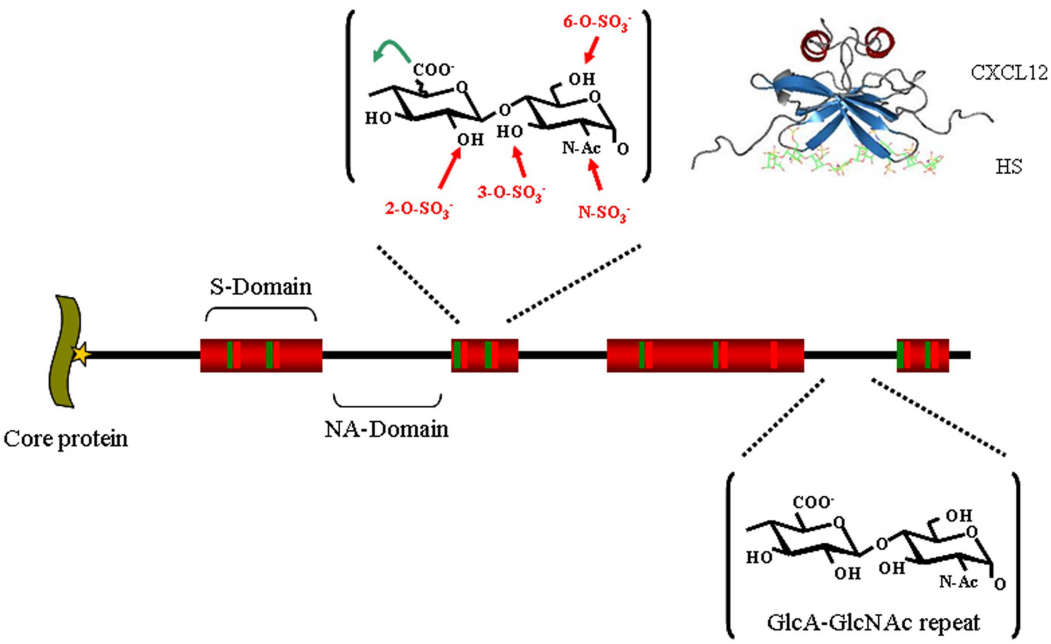


FIGURE 1 | Heparan sulfate structure. HS, whose biosynthesis is initiated by the attachment of xylose (star) to specific serine residues in HSPG core proteins, followed by the formation of a linking tetrasaccharide (xylose-galactose-galactose-glucuronic acid), is initially polymerized by an enzyme complex composed of Ext1 and Ext2 as a GlcA-GlcNAc repeat (black). In restricted regions, called S-domains (shown in red), the chain is extensively modified by a series of enzymatic reactions that remove the acetyl group from GlcNAc residues and substitute the resulting free amino groups with sulfates, epimerizes the adjacent GlcA into L-iduronic acid (IdoA) and adds sulfates on various positions: the C2 of the IdoA (and less frequently that of the GlcA), the C6 of the GlcNS (and less frequently that of the GlcNac), and finally at the C3 of GlcNS or GlcN units. Altogether, these modifications can generate (the theoretical number of) 48 different disaccharides, whose combination within the S-domain gives rise to a large diversity of structures and make up binding sites for protein ligands, as depicted for example with a model of a CXCL12-HS complex [from Ref. (21)].

HSPG AND PATHOGENS

Attachment to host tissues is a critical step for most pathogens' invasion and dissemination. It is therefore not very remarkable that due to its wide expression and large interactive properties, HS is used by many pathogens for that purpose (22–26). These include parasites, for example *Plasmodium falciparum* (27) bacteria, such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (28), *Borrelia burdorferi* (29), or *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (30), and many viruses, amongst which are found B (31), C (32), delta (33), and E (34) hepatitis viruses, Human Papillomavirus (35), Herpes viruses (36), HTLV-1 (37), or HIV-1 (38). Several lines of evidence have identified HS as an initial receptor for viral infection. Firstly, many capsid or envelope viral proteins bind to HS, secondly, elimination of cell surface HS is usually associated with increased cell resistance to infection that results from a reduction in the virus' ability to bind to the cell surface (39), thirdly, soluble HS or HS like molecules, including heparin, a chemically related GAG and dextran sulfate, inhibit viral attachment and subsequent entry in cell culture experiments (40–42). Finally, it has been described that a number of viruses undergo cell culture adaptation changes resulting in an increased binding to HS (43–46). Together this suggests that selection during cell culture of mutants that bind HS with high affinity confer a selective advantage to the viruses. It has thus been thought that HS could facilitate concentration of the viral particles at the cell surface, restricting their diffusion to the quasi-two-dimensional network of polysaccharides around the cell and as such enhances the probability of access to specific entry receptors. HS can also capture viral particles at the surface of non-permissive cells, and then mediate *in trans* infection by presenting these viruses to attachment and entry receptors on permissive cells (47). HS binding can also go well beyond the simple attachment mechanism and can play a more direct role in cellular entry. This has been demonstrated in particular for HSV, a virus whose entry into epithelial cells involves several glycoproteins of the envelope (48). While the viral envelope glycoproteins gB and gC participate in the initial cell attachment through binding to HS, the gD, which binds to herpes virus entry mediator (HVEM) or to nectin, triggers fusion between host and viral membranes, but can also promote viral entry by interacting with a specific HS motif comprising a 3-*O*-sulfated glucosamine residue (49). Interestingly, a 3-*O*-sulfonated HS octasaccharide, produced by chemical means, was shown to inhibit the HSV-1 host-cell interaction (50), suggesting the use of HS derived molecules as therapeutic tools against viral pathogens.

WHERE DOES HIV-1 MEET HS?

HIV-1 is transmitted by viral exposure at the mucosal surfaces, which can occur in the genital tract (semen, blood) the intestinal tract (semen, blood, breast milk), or through the placenta (maternal blood), or the bloodstream (blood products). Within the context of vaginal or rectal transmission, HIV-1 must first cross a normally protective mucosal epithelium to reach the underlying dendritic cells, macrophages, and T cells which all express the virus primary receptor, CD4 and at least one of its two co-receptors, CCR5 or CXCR4, and are thus the three major cellular targets of HIV-1. In these early events of transmission, before specific cell infection, HS has been shown to play important roles in viral adsorption and dissemination. In the semen first, which is the main vector for HIV-1 dissemination, and which contains both free virions and infected leukocytes, it has been found that spermatozoa can capture HIV-1 in a HS dependant manner. Such spermatozoa-attached viruses are efficiently transmitted to dendritic cells, macrophages, and T cells (51) to which access could be made possible through mucosal microabrasions or through dendritic cell projections that extend to the luminal surface of the mucosa.

The mechanisms used by free or cell associated virions to cross an otherwise healthy mucosal barrier are not well known and might differ depending on the tissue sites (for example vaginal or rectal epithelium) where infection occurs (52). HIV-1 can interact with the epithelial cells and can traverse the epithelium through transcytosis, endocytosis followed by exocytosis or by penetrating the gaps in between cells, gaining access to susceptible leukocytes that will further propagate and spread the infection (53, 54). In this context, it has been well known that epithelial cells express large amount of HSPGs which can sequester HIV particles. For example, attachment of HIV to an ectocervical epithelium-derived cell line can be inhibited both by heparinase (an enzyme that depolymerizes HS and removes it from the cell surface) or by soluble heparin. Interestingly, it has been found that cell surface bound HIV particles remain infectious for at least 6 days, and upon co-culture with $CD4^+$ cells, can be efficiently transmitted to its target cells (55). It has been also reported that HSPG significantly contributes to both attachment to the apical pole of – and transcytosis through – an endometrial epithelium-derived cell line (7). Similarly, cell-free HIV particles have been shown to transcytose (although with low efficiency) through primary genital epithelial cells, a process that was dependant on syndecan, one of the major HSPGs expressed by epithelial cells (56).

Finally, HS was recently found to be indispensable for gp120-mediated induction of TLR signaling in intestinal and genital epithelial cells. In the gp120-TLR-HS complex, HS was critical to activate the intracellular NF-kB pathway which lead to downstream synthesis of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines, and whose upregulation was associated with tight junction disruption and loss of barrier function (57). Therefore, beyond acting as an ancillary attachment receptor, HS can contribute to barrier loss and initiation of immune activation that could be the first step in the characteristic chronic immune activation of HIV-1 pathogenesis.

Primary infection can also develop from viral exposure in the oral cavity (mother to infant nursing or during oral intercourse), where the palatine tonsil is a replication site for HIV-1. Studies aiming at characterizing the expression pattern for HIV-1 ligands on human palatine tonsils have shown that HS was largely present on both the surface of the stratified squamous epithelium and on the reticulated epithelium lining the tonsillar crypts and where it is likely to provide stable binding for the virus, allowing it to penetrate beneath the luminal surface and encounter $CD4^+$ cells (58). Finally, it has also been shown that HIV-1 infection of trophoblasts is independent of CD4 but, at least partly, relies on HSPG. Mother to child vertical transmission of the virus is a major cause of HIV-1 infection in infants, and direct infection of trophoblasts, the cells that form the placental barrier, may cause this transmission (59).

HIV-1 is also trapped very efficiently by endothelial cells, which usually express large amounts of HSPG. Syndecan-3, for example,

which delineates the contour of endothelial cells in lymphoid tissue high endothelial venules, does not substitute for HIV-1 entry receptors but captures HIV-1 and presents it to passing permissive T cells, thus mediating an *in trans* mechanism of infection. Furthermore, whereas unbound viruses lose infectivity in 1 day, syndecan-attached HIV-1 remains infectious for up to 1 week (60).

Finally, HSPGs also significantly contributes to HIV-1 invasion in the brain and neurological complications that often characterize AIDS patients. Whereas HIV-1 can enter the central nervous system within infected $CD4^+$T-cell and monocytes that traffic across the blood brain barrier, several *in vitro* and *in vivo* reports described that free HIV-1 can be taken up by brain endothelial cells in a HS dependant manner, internalized and exocytosed, as a way to cross the blood brain barrier before infection and replication can occur in central nervous system cells such as microglia and astrocytes (61–63).

Although this review is devoted to HIV-1 attachment and entry, it is worth noting that, in addition to gp120, several other HIV proteins regulating various aspects of the virus life cycle also appeared to bind cellular HS after being released from HIV-infected cells. These protein-HS interactions contribute to trigger a variety of biological effects related to AIDS-associated pathologies. This includes p17, the matrix protein (64) which up-regulates cytokine production thus deregulating the functions of many immune cells; TAT, the transacting activator of transcription (65) which exerts angiogenic, cell proliferation, chemoinvasion activities and induces peripheral neuropathies, immune suppression, and tumorigenesis; and finally Vpr, the Viral protein R (66), which induces cell cycle arrest and apoptosis.

Altogether, regarding attachment and entry, these studies showed that HSPG serves a number of purposes during the early steps of HIV-1 dissemination, from capturing and presenting *in trans* free virions to replicative cells, to permitting the transfer of viral particles across epithelial or endothelial barriers (**Figure 2**). HSPG, when expressed by $CD4^+$ permissive cells may also increase infectivity by favoring *in cis* viral particle concentration at the cell surface (see below).

A number of polyanions have been investigated for their ability to inhibit HIV-1 infection in clinical trials. In addition to suramin, dextran sulfate, and heparin, which were considered for systemic use, this includes many other sulfated/acidic compounds such as carrageenan, cellulose sulfate, polystyrene sulfonate or maleic acid, naphthalene sulfonate, and cellulose acetate phthalate, developed as anti HIV-1 microbicides. Unfortunately, none of these compounds proved to be effective *in vivo* presumably due to poor availability, toxicity, sequestration by plasma proteins, induced reduction in epithelial integrity and concomitant increases in permeability to HIV-1 particles (67, 68). Their variability, in terms of molecular weights and degrees of sulfation also made them difficult to standardize.

THE CELL SURFACE LIGANDS OF gp120 AND THE ENTRY PROCESS

CD4, CCR5, AND CXCR4

Once in contact with permissive cells, i.e., cells that are CD4 and CCR5 and/or CXCR4 positive, the HIV-1 can start its replication cycle. HIV-1 entry into its target cells is initiated by a highly complex series of interactions, which first involve the binding of gp120 to its primary receptor, CD4 (69). This initial step not only enables the viral particles to attach to the cell, but also drives extensive structural alterations that primes the envelope for binding to either CCR5 or CXCR4 (70). This second interaction, which elicits further modifications in Env, triggers the activation of the gp41 fusion peptide whose insertion into the host membrane ultimately leads to the delivery of the viral contents into the host cytoplasm (**Figure 3**). The gp120 thus constitutes the central element for all interactive events occurring during the pre-entry steps and, accordingly, this molecule features several interactive regions and is structurally complex; It consists of five relatively conserved regions (C1–C5), that fold into a "core" structure organized into two distinct regions termed the "inner" and "outer" domains that are connected by a bridging segment, and five surface-exposed variable loops (V1–V5). The CD4 binding site is formed from conserved residues in discontinuous segments

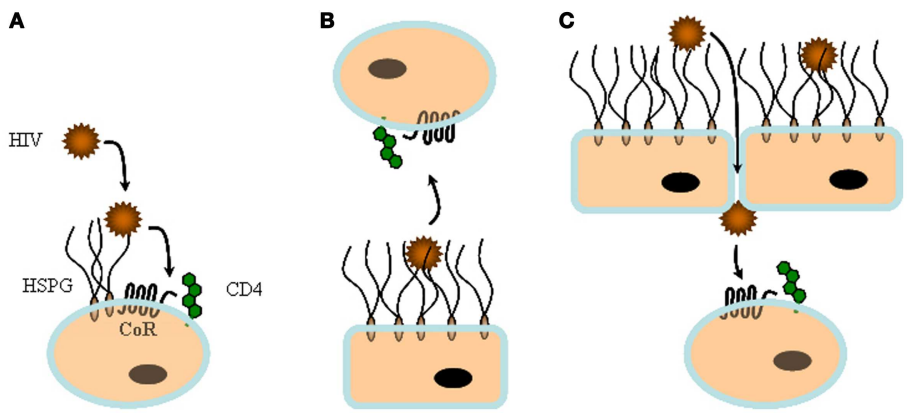


FIGURE 2 | *In cis* and *in trans* capture of HIV-1 by heparan sulfate. HS can play multiple roles during viral infection. **(A)** On top of cells that express large amount of HS, but low CD4, such as macrophages, HS can capture viral particles and facilitate *in cis* subsequent interaction with specific entry receptors. **(B)** HS from non-permissive cells such as endothelia or epithelia can sequester HIV-1 and then mediate *in trans* infection by presenting the virus to permissive cells. **(C)** HS can contribute to both attachment and transcytosis of HIV-1 through epithelia.

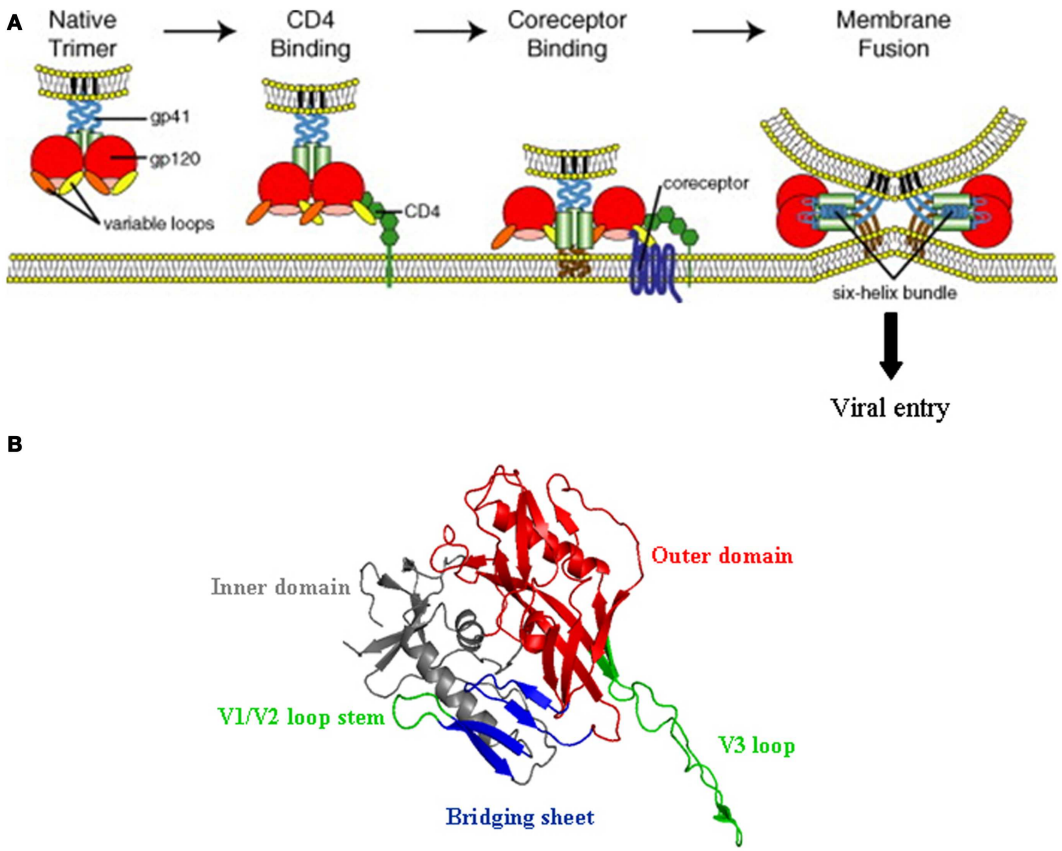


FIGURE 3 | HIV-1 entry mechanism. **(A)** Schematic representation of the multi-step process of HIV-1 entry; from attachment to CD4 (left) to fusion between the viral and the cell membrane (right). The gp120 trimer, upon binding to CD4 (in green), experiences extensive structural changes that open up the variable loops V1/V2 and V3 (orange and yellow), and concomitantly expose and/or fold the so called CD4 induced bridging sheet that will be recognized by the co-receptor (CCR5 and/or CXCR4). This second interaction triggers the insertion of the gp41 fusion peptide into the cell membrane and promotes viral entry (Reprinted from Ref. (102), with permission from Elsevier). **(B)** Three-dimensional structure of gp120 in the CD4-bound conformation (from pdb:2b4c), showing the inner and outer domains, the V1/V2 loop stem, and the four β strands (CD4 induced bridging sheet in blue) that together with the V3 loop (in green) contribute to co-receptor selectivity and interaction.

of the C1, C3, and C4 domains that are brought into proximity in the folded gp120 and located into a depression formed at the interface of the outer and inner domain and the region that connects these two domains (71). Binding to CD4 triggers extensive structural alterations, in particular within the inner domain of the protein. Although X-ray crystallographic analysis have led to atomic models for gp120 on which the V1/V2 and V3 loops were deleted, it seems likely that these structural modifications include both a relocation of the V3 and shifts of the V1/V2 loops, whose base in the inner domain (β2 and β3 strands) is brought into close proximity to a β-hairpin of the outer domain (β20 and β21 strands). This exposes new regions that, partially masked by the V1/V2 and V3 loops, were cryptic in the unliganded gp120, and concomitantly folds a four-stranded β-sheet located within the bridging sheet that connects the inner and the outer domain of the glycoprotein (71, 72). In conjunction with the V3 loop (73), this β-sheet (known as CD4i for CD4 induced epitope) makes up the binding site for either CCR5 or CXCR4 (70, 74, 75). The V3 loop has a major influence on HIV-1 tropism and appears to be a key determinant for co-receptor selectivity, which in turn, affects the overall process of viral pathogenesis. Its sequence is important for defining the extent to which the CD4-bound form of the gp120 interacts with CCR5 or CXCR4, and hence the ability of a particular HIV-1 virus to enter cells using either CCR5 (viruses called R5-tropic) or CXCR4 (X4-tropic viruses). R5X4 or dual tropic strains constitute a third class that can use either of these two co-receptors. It has been reported that in the majority of the infected subjects, the HIV-1 primarily uses CCR5 in order to initiate the infection. However, during the course of infection, the co-receptor usage preference of HIV-1 shifts from CCR5 to CXCR4 in 50% of the infected individuals, a change that is frequently associated with the accelerated $CD4^+$ T-cell decline and the rapid progression toward AIDS. In the context of the interaction between gp120 and HS, it is worth noting that, in general, the R5 to X4 tropism switch is associated with an increase in the net positive charge of the V3 loop (75), which will also determine to which extent gp120 will interact with HS (see below).

HEPARAN SULFATE

Very early in the study of HIV-1, it was found that a number of HS like molecules, including heparin, dextran sulfate, and various heparinoids (such as pentosan polysulfate, fucoidan, curdlan sulfate) inhibit viral replication in cell culture experiments (76–78). This appeared to mostly occur by preventing HIV-1 binding to the cell surface as shown by the ability of heparinase treatment of HIV-1 sensitive lymphoblastic T-cell lines, such as MT-4 and H9, to reduce HIV-1 absorption to these cells (38, 79). Although some studies suggested that heparinoids could bind to CD4 and thus interfere with HIV-1 binding to its primary receptor, several investigations showed that both soluble heparin and cell surface HS interact with gp120 (see below) and target the V3 loop of the viral protein (80, 81). As this domain is not involved in CD4 binding, this excluded that heparinoid works by blocking the gp120-CD4 interaction, which was further confirmed by the observation that (i) HS could be immunoprecipitated from gp120 treated H9 cells with either anti gp120 or anti-CD4 antibodies (82), and (ii) dextran did not interfere with the binding of CD4 to recombinant gp120 at concentrations which effectively prevent HIV-1 replication (83, 84). Interestingly, it was shown that if the polyanionic nature of these compounds were essential for their *in vitro* anti-HIV-1 activities, a number of other sulfated polysaccharides, including for example various chondroitin sulfates (another member of the GAG family), have no such activities. This suggests that specific structural features of the polysaccharide might be important for activity. It thus appears that, in addition to CD4, cell surface HSPG functions as an attachment receptor recognized by the V3 loop of gp120, and therefore suggesting that this interaction allows the virus to scan the cell surface and could assist binding to specific entry receptors. Most of these studies however date back to the discovery of the HIV-1 co-receptors and their importance in tropism. They were performed with T-cell line-adapted HIV-1 that use CXCR4 to enter cells and immortalized T-cell lines that express large amounts of HSPG. The binding of HIV-1 to cell surface HSPG is however likely to depend on the level of expression of this molecule, and it was then reported that if cell surface HSPG facilitates HIV-1 entry into some cell lines it does not into primary T-lymphocytes (85, 86), questioning the physiological relevance of HSPG for capturing viral particles at the surface of $CD4^+$ cells.

Primary T-lymphocytes and macrophages, the two major HIV-1 targets, feature opposite patterns of attachment receptors. In the former, which express high CD4 levels, chondroitin sulfate largely outnumbers HS moieties (87), while macrophages display low levels of CD4 but produce large amount of HS (88). On these cells, HIV-1 attachment is mostly mediated by HSPGs, and this interaction was found necessary for successful infection when a low level of CD4 is expressed at the cell surface (88, 89). Thus, HS may compensate for low level CD4 expression and induce a sufficiently high viral particle concentration for infection that CD4 by itself would not achieve. In contrast, the high levels of CD4 on T-lymphocytes obviate the need for other attachment molecules. Together, this shows that the role of HS in mediating *in cis* HIV-1 infection may depend on the cell surface CD4/HS ratio and their level of regulation. For example, it has been observed that while quiescent primary $CD4^+$ T cells do not express detectable levels of HSPGs, HSPGs are expressed on primary $CD4^+$ T cells following activation by interleukin-2/phytohemagglutinin or anti-CD3/anti-CD28 antibody. This immune activation coincides with binding and entry of HTLV-1, a known HS binding virus (90). Although determining the GAG nature/expression pattern and architecture of primary cells is not trivial, it might be of interest to better characterize the HS status of HIV-1 target cells during the evolution of the pathogenesis. Finally, it is also important to note that HIV-1 susceptibility to HS is dependant on the HIV-1 strain as all do not display high affinity for this GAG (see below).

A BIOCHEMICAL VIEW ON THE gp120-HS INTERACTION

THE V3 LOOP IS THE MAJOR HS BINDING DETERMINANT

Early studies, investigating the mechanism by which polyanions such as heparin or dextran sulfate inhibit HIV-1 replication pointed out that these polysaccharides interact with the gp120 V3 loop. This was essentially based on the observation that polyanions block the binding of a number of monoclonal antibodies, directed against the V3 loop to either recombinant gp120 on ELISA plates or to HIV-1 infected cells expressing gp120 on their surface (80, 82, 84). These results were further confirmed with data showing that HS directly binds to V3 derived peptides (81, 91), whose sequences were characterized by Lys and Arg enriched clusters that are commonly found on protein HS binding sites. However, the V3 loop, a disulfide-bonded structure of approximately 35-residues-long is highly variable and prone to mutation-induced sequence changes (75). Its overall charge may vary from +2 to +10, with that of a CCR5-using HIV-1 strain generally in the range of +3 to +5 and that of a CXCR4-using isolate being from +7 to +10. Therefore, binding to HS may vary according to the gp120 origin and tropism, an evolution toward a more basic structure being linked to adaptation toward CXCR4 usage.

To investigate these points in more detail, the binding of heparin to WT and mutated forms of different gp120s, including MN (X4), HXBc2 (X4), 89.6 (R5X4), W61D (R5X4), Bal (R5), and JRFL (R5) were measured by different means: Surface Plasmon Resonance showed first that the X4-HXBc2 gp120 (whose V3 loop features nine positive charges) strongly binds to heparin, as does the R5X4-89.6 gp120 which has seven positive charges in its V3 loop. The binding of the W61D (another R5X4 gp120 with a V3 loop of +6) was reduced, and finally, the R5-gp120 (whose V3 loop contains only four basic residues) binds relatively weakly (gp120 Bal) or not at all (gp120 JRFL). These results were in agreement with another assay, in which the interaction of [^{35}S]-labeled heparin to the above mentioned gp120s also showed that most of the variation in binding is due to changes in the charge and structure of the V3 loop. It was nevertheless observed that [^{35}S]-labeled heparin binding to HXBc2 gp120 was not entirely suppressed by the V3 loop deletion, suggesting that other regions could contribute, albeit to a lesser extent. Binding of HXBc2 with more substantial deletions, performed to address which other regions of the X4-gp120 might be implicated, showed that deletion of the NH_2- and COOH-termini and the V1/V2 loop structure resulted in a small loss of [^{35}S]-heparin binding. An additional deletion of the V3 loop dramatically reduced [^{35}S]-heparin binding and preincubation of this mutant with the monoclonal antibody 48d further reduced binding to background levels. These data suggest that whereas the V3 loop is the major determinant, the COOH- and NH_2-termini, the

V1/V2 loops and the bridging sheet between the inner and outer domains of gp120 (recognized by the 48d antibody) could contribute to some extent to the binding of polyanions. Consistently with the idea that the V3 loop is the primary high affinity binding site on gp120, at least for the X4 derived Env, molecular modeling of the electrostatic potential of the protein confirmed that the overall charge on the surface is dominated by the V3 loop (92).

The early use of polyanionic compounds such as dextran sulfate as anti- HIV-1 therapeutic agents has not been successful in clinical trials (93). One possible reason for the *in vivo* failure of the molecule (in addition to toxicity and poor bioavailability) could be related to the V3 loop charge differences between R5 and X4 viruses, the former being the phenotype associated with HIV-1 transmission and early infection, while the latter being the only one efficiently targeted by polyanions.

HS BINDING TO OTHER SURFACE EXPOSED REGIONS OF gp120

To obtain unequivocal evidence for a direct interaction between polyanions and regions outside the V3 loops, a new approach designed to identify and simultaneously map potential HS binding sites on a protein surface was developed (94). This method, which uses unmodified native proteins, is based on the formation of cross-linked complexes of the protein of interest with heparin, followed by the proteolytic digestion of these complexes, and the subsequent identification of the heparin bound peptides by N-terminal sequencing using an automated protocol of Edman degradation and HPLC detection of the released amino acids.

Using this approach with HXBc2 gp120, three potential HS binding domains (HBDs) were consistently identified (including the V3 loop that was confirmed by this approach): RGKVQK (HBD 1: residues 166–171) located within the V2 loop, RKRIR (HBD 2: residues 304–308) at the base of the V3 loop and finally, KAKRR (HBD 3: residues 500–504), at the C-terminal domain of the protein (95).

Interestingly, all three HBDs are functionally important. HBD 1 and 2 in particular undergo important structural changes after CD4 binding, resulting in the unmasking of the co-receptor binding site and are thus key to the entry mechanism of the virus. As mentioned above, HBD 2 (within the V3 loop, which determines co-receptor usage) displays essential features for co-receptor binding. In particular, mutation of residues Arg298, Arg306, and Arg308, present in this HBD, strongly decrease the ability of gp120 to interact with CXCR4 (96). It has been reported that heparin enhances the furin cleavage of HIV-1 gp160 into gp120 and gp41, which occurs only three residues downstream HBD 3, but the significance of this observation is not clear (see Ref. (95) for discussion).

Together these data provide a direct demonstration of the existence of additional binding sites and identify some of the residues involved. They are consistent with a kinetic analysis of the gp120-heparin interaction which could be much better described by a complex model than by a single one-to-one binding mode (92) and with the observation that the V3 loop does not fully recapitulate the binding activity of the protein.

A FOURTH HS BINDING SITE IN gp120: THE "CD4 INDUCED" EPITOPE

The gp120 molecules assume several distinct conformations and are characterized by an important intrinsic flexibility, which could likely influence heparin binding. As described above, and as shown by cryo-electron tomography on the native gp120 trimers (including the variable loops that were missing in the X-ray crystallographic analysis), the V1/V2 and V3 loops (comprising the HBD 1 and 2), in particular, are released and move away from the center of the Env spike (97) following binding to CD4. Thus, to further clarify the gp120-HS binding determinant, the unliganded monomeric gp120 (HXBc2 strain) and the gp120 in its CD4-bound conformation, were compared for their ability to interact with heparin. This showed that in its CD4-bound form, gp120 had a substantially increased affinity for the polyanion, suggesting that the CD4-bound conformation could have improved the accessibility of the V1/V2 and V3 loops and/or stabilize them into a structure better recognized by HS.

However, CD4 binding also exposed the "CD4 induced" bridging sheet that was previously masked by the V1/V2 and V3 loops in the unliganded form. Examination of the gp120 electrostatic surface, using the structural data of the CD4-bound core glycoprotein, revealed that the CD4 induced region comprises a cluster of positively charged residues located between the stems of the V1/V2 and V3 loops, organized as a typical HS binding site (**Figure 4**). Using a molecular modeling approach to locate putative HS binding sites further shows that within this domain, amino acids Lys-121, Arg-419, Lys-421, and Lys-432 form a discontinuous surface with a linear shape extending up to 25 Å, which can be predicted by a GRID analysis to be the most favorable anchoring position for an oxygen atom from a sulfate group (98). These molecular modeling predictions could be confirmed by showing that HS and HS derived oligosaccharides strongly inhibited the binding of mAb 17b to the CD4-gp120 complex. The mAb 17b belongs to the CD4i antibody family and recognizes an epitope on the gp120 bridging sheet that is exposed upon CD4 binding. Interestingly, this sterically restricted region, which overlaps the binding site for the co-receptor, is a well conserved element amongst X4, R5, and dual tropic gp120. Mutagenesis then confirmed that of the four amino acids indicated above, Arg-419, Lys-421, and Lys-432 were key to the interaction with HS (95). All together, this defines an additional HS binding domain (HBD 4), located within the gp120 bridging sheet, importantly involved in co-receptor recognition and exposed only after CD4 binding.

DEVELOPMENT OF A CD4-HS GLYCOCONJUGATE TO INHIBIT HIV-1 ATTACHMENT AND ENTRY

These studies thus showed that HS binding to CXCR4 tropic gp120 is constitutive (the V3 loop -which dominates the interaction- is surface exposed), and can be enhanced by CD4 (which, together with V3 loop reorganization, exposes a new HS binding domain), while it is entirely CD4-induced for CCR5 tropic gp120. Interestingly, all these HBDs are located close to each other, at the proximity of- or within- the co-receptor binding site and are collectively involved in the conformational changes induced upon interaction with CD4 and in co-receptor recognition. In particular, mutations of Arg-419, Lys-421, Lys-432 within the bridging sheet, and Arg298, Arg306, Arg308, within the V3 loop, which are targeted by heparin, decrease the ability of gp120 to interact with CXCR4. This strongly suggested that polyanionic compounds, in addition to prevent HIV-1 association to cell surface

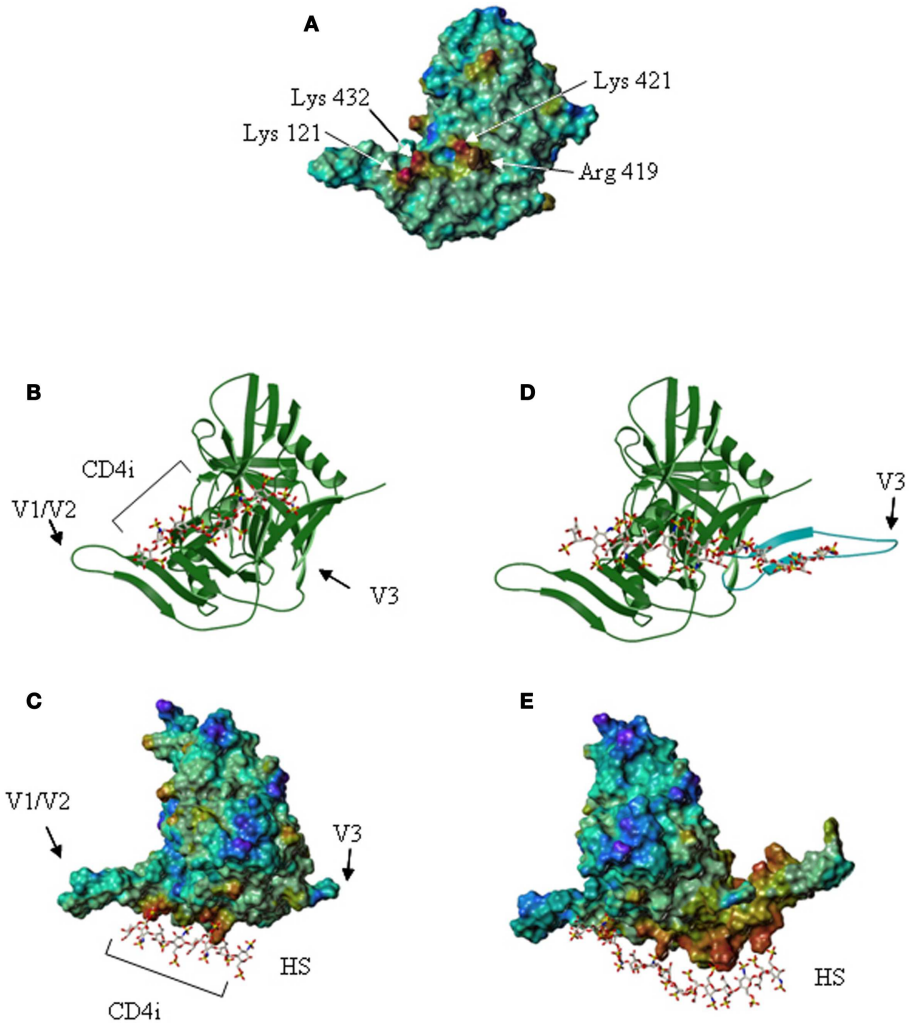


FIGURE 4 | The V3 loop and the co-receptor binding domain of gp120 features HS binding sites. **(A)** The gp120 CD4-induced domain displays a HS binding structure. The Connolly surface of the HXBc2 gp120 core was color-coded according to the electrostatic potential from negative values (blue) to positive values (red). The basic residues of the CD4-induced (CD4i) epitope, which form a HS binding site, are indicated. **(B)** Representation of the lowest energy model of a gp120/HS derived octasaccharide complex. The protein [orientation as in **(A)**] is represented by a ribbon, and the octasaccharide by sticks. **(C)** Lowest energy model of the gp120 (on which the Connolly surface was calculated) in complex with a HS derived octasaccharide. V1/V2 and V3 indicate the stem of the V1/V2 and V3 loops. The location of the CD4i epitope is also indicated. **(D)** Structure of gp120, on which the V3 loop (in blue) was modeled. The HS binding residues of the V3 loop and the CD4-induced epitope are aligned on the surface of the protein and form an extended binding site on which has been docked a HS derived oligosaccharide of appropriate length. **(E)** Connolly surface of gp120, including the V3 loop, in complex with a tetradecasaccharide shown with the same orientation as in **(C)**.

HSPG, could directly block co-receptor binding and thus inhibit entry. However, being cryptic on the HIV-1 associated gp120, the co-receptor binding site needs to be exposed to be efficiently targeted. To this aim, a new molecule composed of CD4 covalently linked to HS has been prepared. To render this molecule potentially druggable it was based on a small CD4 mimetic (rather than recombinant CD4) and a chemically synthesized HS dodecamer (rather than natural derived HS, whose almost infinite structural variety would have made impossible the obtention of a defined compound). This chemically defined glycoconjugate (termed mCD4-HS_{12}), whose size is 6000 Da, was shown to bind to gp120 through its mCD4 moiety and induce the structural modifications necessary to expose the co-receptor binding domain which therefore became available to be blocked by the HS_{12} moiety (**Figure 5**). This compound thus successfully targets two critical and highly conserved domains of gp120; the CD4 and the co-receptor binding domains. From a biochemical point of view, this compound blocks the binding of the prototypic R5-gp120 (YU2), to both CD4 and mAb 17b (directed against the co-receptor binding domain), while it blocks that of the prototypic X4-gp120 (MN) to CD4, HS and mAb 17b, with low nanomolar affinity (99). This molecule also prevents gp120 association to purified native CCR5 and CXCR4 co-receptors (100) and consequently displays a strong antiviral activity against R5- and

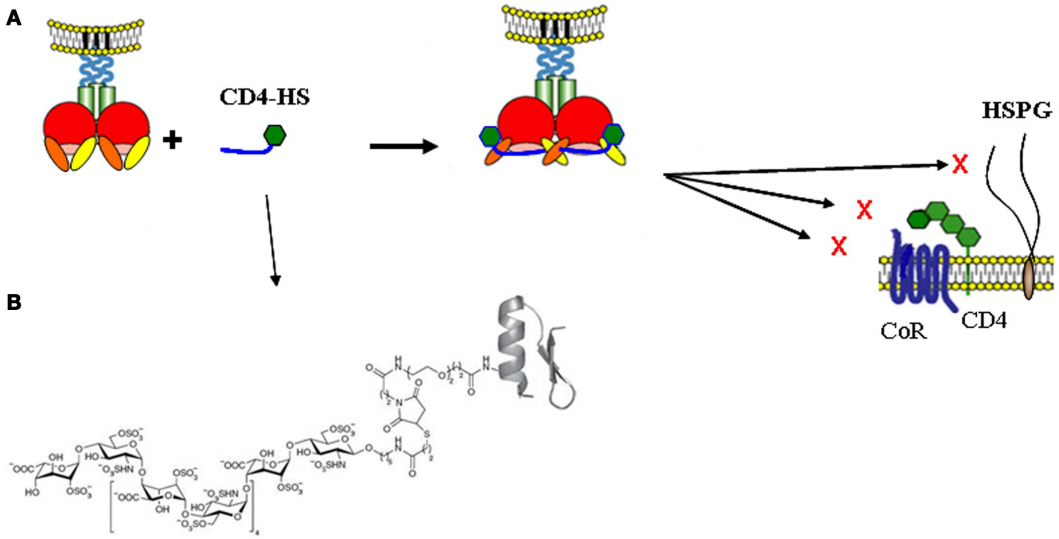


FIGURE 5 | Principe of inhibition of HIV-1 attachment and entry by "CD4-HS." (A) A CD4 mimetic peptide covalently linked to a HS dodecassaccharide (CD4-HS) bind to gp120 through its CD4 moiety and exposes the CD4i epitope, which then becomes available for interaction with the oligosaccharide. Such a bivalent molecule simultaneously binds to the CD4, the HS and the co-receptor binding sites of gp120 and blocks the interaction of the virus with all its principal cell surface ligands, inhibiting both attachment and entry (The gp120 was schematically represented as in **Figure 3**). **(B)** The structure of the mCD4-HS_{12} is also shown [modified from Ref. (99)].

X4- HIV-1 as well as against dual tropic virus with IC_{50} as low as 5 nM.

CONCLUSION AND PERSPECTIVE

Investigation of the gp120 binding to HS has revealed a contrasting situation that is far more complex than previously thought. HIV-1 that uses CXCR4 as an entry co-receptor features up to four HBDs on their gp120, including the V1/V2 and V3 loops and the co-receptor binding site, while those using CCR5 mostly display HS binding activity essentially within the conserved and characteristically basic co-receptor binding domain. In that context, it is worth noting that the N-terminus of CCR5 and CXCR4 contain sulfotyrosine, as do a number of antibodies, directed against the gp120 co-receptor binding domains (101), also indicating that the gp120 CD4 induced region can be liganded by sulfated moieties.

Characterization of these HBDs, in particular within the CD4 induced surface, whose cryptic nature limits its accessibility both temporally and spatially during infection, led to the engineering of a new class of compounds in which HS was covalently linked to mCD4. These compounds, conceptually distinct from any other existing HIV-1 inhibitors, function by simultaneously exposing and blocking the HIV-1 co-receptor binding site, and therefore inhibit binding of gp120 to both CD4 and CCR5/CXCR4. It thus efficiently inhibits viral replication by blocking entry, which is currently considered as a compelling target for controlling viral replication (102). This molecule also inhibits the binding of gp120 to HS and has thus the potential for preventing viral adsorption on mucosa or viral transport through the blood brain barrier. It could therefore be further developed for both prevention and therapy following topical and/or parenteral application. In this regard, it is worth noting that these compounds are much more defined and have a much more specific mode of action than the above described polyanions that have been investigated up to now.

Despite tremendous progresses made in the development of antiviral drugs (103), HIV-1 continues to be a major health concern and remains one of the leading causes of death worldwide, which necessitate the development of new antivirals. With regards to inhibitor development, it is worth noting that mCD4-HS_{12} is bivalent. Multivalency has a number of functional advantages, such as achieving high affinity, and increasing strength and specificity for the binding site. It has been indeed found that the mCD4-HS_{12} is, by far, more active than either its moieties alone, each reciprocally enhancing the blocking activity of the other in a cooperative manner (99). Targeting the gp120 co-receptor binding site, which although is well conserved across various HIV-1 strains exists in a dynamic equilibrium between its unliganded- and CD4-bound conformations, might thus be relatively challenging. From a structural point of view, it is interesting that HS is characterized by considerable internal motion and variation in its local three-dimensional structure. The IdoA, in particular, also exists in a dynamic equilibrium between a chair and a twisted skew-boat form, which may itself represent the average of a rapidly fluctuating ensemble of related structures. The conformation of HS also depends on its local sequence, the presence of poorly sulfated GlcA-GlcNAc domains giving rise to chain flexibility (104). It is thus tempting to suggest that HS is well designed to interact with an ensemble of conformationally dynamic structures such as that of the co-receptor binding domain of gp120, the high specificity of the conjugated bivalent compound being brought by the mCD4 moiety.

Currently, the HS_{12} moiety of the molecule displays a regular and highly sulfated sequence, (2-*O*-sulfated iduronic acid linked

to *N*- and 6-*O*-sulfated glucosamine), so that the exact sulfation pattern recognized by gp120 is hidden in the fully sulfated oligosaccharide. HS synthesis is notoriously difficult, and in view of its huge diversity (see **Figure 1**), the synthesis of a library addressing structure-activity relationships is not realistic. In an effort to pinpoint the sulfate groups that are functionally essential to gp120 binding, the HS was substituted with sulfotyrosine-containing HS mimetic peptide, the synthesis of which is much more straightforward, and more easily amenable to sequence-activity relationship investigation. This molecule compares very well with HS_{12}, and when conjugated to mCD4 broadly inhibits the replication of several HIV-1 strains with an IC_{50} of 1 nM (100), thus, opening the route to future developments.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Our research described in this review was supported by the Agence National de la Recherche sur le SIDA (ANRS), Sidaction, and the Agence Nationale de la Recherche (ANR-10-EMMA-0012 grant). We apologize for failing to cite work that may have been relevant but was omitted due to space limitations. The authors thank K. Arien and G. Vanham for helpful discussions, and their collaborators (F. Arenzana-Seisdedos, F. Baleux, D. Bonnaffé, P. Clayette, E. Crublet, Q. Sattentau, and R. Vivès) that have, in one way or another, contributed to the research described here.

REFERENCES

1. Barre-Sinoussi F, Chermann JC, Rey F, Nugeyre MT, Chamaret S, Gruest J, et al. Isolation of a T-lymphotropic retrovirus from a patient at risk for acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). *Science* (1983) **220**:868–71. doi:10.1126/science.6189183
2. Weiss RA. HIV receptors and cellular tropism. *IUBMB Life* (2002) **53**:201–5. doi:10.1080/15216540212652
3. Shaw GM, Hunter E. HIV transmission. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* (2012) **2**(11):a006965. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a006965
4. Berger EA, Murphy PM, Farber JM. Chemokine receptors as HIV-1 coreceptors: roles in viral entry, tropism, and disease. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1999) **17**:657–700. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.17.1.657
5. Ugolini S, Mondor I, Sattentau QJ. HIV-1 attachment: another look. *Trends Microbiol* (1999) **7**:144–9. doi:10.1016/S0966-842X(99)01474-2
6. Bomsel M, Alfsen A. Entry of viruses through the epithelial barrier: pathogenic trickery. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* (2003) **4**:57–68. doi:10.1038/nrm1005
7. Saidi H, Magri G, Nasreddine N, Requena M, Belec L. R5- and X4-HIV-1 use differentially the endometrial epithelial cells HEC-1A to ensure their own spread: implication for mechanisms of sexual transmission. *Virology* (2007) **358**:55–68. doi:10.1016/j.virol.2006.07.029
8. Sarrazin S, Lamanna WC, Esko JD. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) **3**(7):a004952. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a004952
9. Lindahl U, Li JP. Interactions between heparan sulfate and proteins-design and functional implications. *Int Rev Cell Mol Biol* (2009) **276**:105–59. doi:10.1016/S1937-6448(09)76003-4
10. Lortat-Jacob H. The molecular basis and functional implications of chemokine interactions with heparan sulphate. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* (2009) **19**:543–8. doi:10.1016/j.sbi.2009.09.003
11. Salanga CL, Handel TM. Chemokine oligomerization and interactions with receptors and glycosaminoglycans: the role of structural dynamics in function. *Exp Cell Res* (2011) **317**:590–601. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2011.01.004
12. Rueda P, Richart A, Recalde A, Gasse P, Vilar J, Guerin C, et al. Homeostatic and tissue reparation defaults in mice carrying selective genetic invalidation of CXCL12/proteoglycan interactions. *Circulation* (2012) **126**:1882–95. doi:10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.112.113290
13. Goetz R, Mohammadi M. Exploring mechanisms of FGF signalling through the lens of structural biology. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* (2013) **14**:166–80. doi:10.1038/nrm3528
14. Lortat-Jacob H, Baltzer F, Grimaud JA. Heparin decreases the blood clearance of interferon-gamma and increases its activity by limiting the processing of its carboxyl-terminal sequence. *J Biol Chem* (1996) **271**:16139–43. doi:10.1074/jbc.271.27.16139
15. Whisstock JC, Pike RN, Jin L, Skinner R, Pei XY, Carrell RW, et al. Conformational changes in serpins: II. The mechanism of activation of antithrombin by heparindagger. *J Mol Biol* (2000) **301**:1287–305. doi:10.1006/jmbi.2000.3982
16. Duchesne L, Octeau V, Bearon RN, Beckett A, Prior IA, Lounis B, et al. Transport of fibroblast growth factor 2 in the pericellular matrix is controlled by the spatial distribution of its binding sites in heparan sulfate. *PLoS Biol* (2012) **10**:e1001361. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.1001361
17. Qu X, Pan Y, Carbe C, Powers A, Grobe K, Zhang X. Glycosaminoglycan-dependent restriction of FGF diffusion is necessary for lacrimal gland development. *Development* (2012) **139**:2730–9. doi:10.1242/dev.079236
18. Sarris M, Masson JB, Maurin D, Aa LM, Boudinot P, Lortat-Jacob H, et al. Inflammatory chemokines direct and restrict leukocyte migration within live tissues as glycan-bound gradients. *Curr Biol* (2012) **22**:2375–82. doi:10.1016/j.cub.2012.11.018
19. Gandhi NS, Mancera RL. The structure of glycosaminoglycans and their interactions with proteins. *Chem Biol Drug Des* (2008) **72**:455–82. doi:10.1111/j.1747-0285.2008.00741.x
20. Kreuger J, Kjellen L. Heparan sulfate biosynthesis: regulation and variability. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2012) **60**:898–907. doi:10.1369/0022155412464972
21. Sadir R, Imberty A, Baleux F, Lortat-Jacob H. Heparan sulfate/heparin oligosaccharides protect stromal cell-derived factor-1 (SDF-1)/CXCL12 against proteolysis induced by CD26/dipeptidyl peptidase IV. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**:43854–60. doi:10.1074/jbc.M405392200
22. Spillmann D. Heparan sulfate: anchor for viral intruders? *Biochimie* (2001) **83**:811–7. doi:10.1016/S0300-9084(01)01290-1
23. Liu J, Thorp SC. Cell surface heparan sulfate and its roles in assisting viral infections. *Med Res Rev* (2002) **22**:1–25. doi:10.1002/med.1026
24. Vives RR, Lortat-Jacob H, Fender P. Heparan sulphate proteoglycans and viral vectors: ally or foe? *Curr Gene Ther* (2006) **6**:35–44. doi:10.2174/156652306775515565
25. Bartlett AH, Park PW. Proteoglycans in host-pathogen interactions: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic implications. *Expert Rev Mol Med* (2010) **12**:e5. doi:10.1017/S1462399409001367
26. Tiwari V, Maus E, Sigar IM, Ramsey KH, Shukla D. Role of heparan sulfate in sexually transmitted infections. *Glycobiology* (2012) **22**:1402–12. doi:10.1093/glycob/cws106
27. Kobayashi K, Kato K, Sugi T, Takemae H, Pandey K, Gong H, et al. Plasmodium falciparum BAEBL binds to heparan sulfate proteoglycans on the human erythrocyte surface. *J Biol Chem* (2010) **285**:1716–25. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.021576
28. Bucior I, Pielage JF, Engel JN. Pseudomonas aeruginosa pili and flagella mediate distinct binding and signaling events at the apical and basolateral surface of airway epithelium. *PLoS Pathog* (2012) **8**:e1002616. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1002616
29. Norman MU, Moriarty TJ, Dresser AR, Millen B, Kubes P, Chaconas G. Molecular mechanisms involved in vascular interactions of the Lyme disease pathogen in a living host. *PLoS Pathog* (2008) **4**:e1000169. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1000169
30. Lebrun P, Raze D, Fritzinger B, Wieruszeski JM, Biet F, Dose A, et al. Differential contribution of the repeats to heparin binding of HBHA, a major adhesin of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *PLoS One* (2012) **7**:e32421. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0032421
31. Sureau C, Salisse J. A conformational heparan sulfate binding site essential to infectivity overlaps with the conserved hepatitis B virus a-determinant. *Hepatology* (2013) **57**:985–94. doi:10.1002/hep.26125
32. Germi R, Crance JM, Garin D, Guimet J, Lortat-Jacob H, Ruigrok RW, et al. Cellular glycosaminoglycans and low density lipoprotein receptor are involved in hepatitis C virus adsorption. *J Med Virol* (2002) **68**:206–15. doi:10.1002/jmv.10196
33. Lamas Longarela O, Schmidt TT, Schoneweis K, Romeo R, Wedemeyer H, Urban S, et al. Proteoglycans act as cellular hepatitis delta virus attachment receptors. *PLoS One* (2013) **8**:e58340. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0058340
34. Kalia M, Chandra V, Rahman SA, Sehgal D, Jameel S. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans are required for cellular binding of the hepatitis E virus ORF2 capsid

protein and for viral infection. *J Virol* (2009) **83**:12714–24. doi:10.1128/JVI.00717-09
35. Cruz L, Meyers C. Differential dependence on host cell glycosaminoglycans for infection of epithelial cells by high-risk HPV types. *PLoS One* (2013) **8**:e68379. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0068379
36. Shukla D, Liu J, Blaiklock P, Shworak NW, Bai X, Esko JD, et al. A novel role for 3-O-sulfated heparan sulfate in herpes simplex virus 1 entry. *Cell* (1999) **99**:13–22. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80058-6
37. Lambert S, Bouttier M, Vassy R, Seigneuret M, Petrow-Sadowski C, Janvier S, et al. HTLV-1 uses HSPG and neuropilin-1 for entry by molecular mimicry of VEGF165. *Blood* (2009) **113**:5176–85. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-04-150342
38. Patel M, Yanagishita M, Roderiquez G, Bou-Habib DC, Oravecz T, Hascall VC, et al. Cell-surface heparan sulfate proteoglycan mediates HIV-1 infection of T-cell lines. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* (1993) **9**:167–74. doi:10.1089/aid.1993.9.167
39. Urbinati C, Chiodelli P, Rusnati M. Polyanionic drugs and viral oncogenesis: a novel approach to control infection, tumor-associated inflammation and angiogenesis. *Molecules* (2008) **13**:2758–85. doi:10.3390/molecules13112758
40. Walker SJ, Pizzato M, Takeuchi Y, Devereux S. Heparin binds to murine leukemia virus and inhibits Env-independent attachment and infection. *J Virol* (2002) **76**:6909–18. doi:10.1128/JVI.76.14.6909-6918.2002
41. Lee E, Pavy M, Young N, Freeman C, Lobigs M. Antiviral effect of the heparan sulfate mimetic, PI-88, against dengue and encephalitic flaviviruses. *Antiviral Res* (2006) **69**:31–8. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2005.08.006
42. Basu A, Kanda T, Beyene A, Saito K, Meyer K, Ray R. Sulfated homologues of heparin inhibit hepatitis C virus entry into mammalian cells. *J Virol* (2007) **81**:3933–41. doi:10.1128/JVI.02622-06
43. Klimstra WB, Ryman KD, Johnston RE. Adaptation of Sindbis virus to BHK cells selects for use of heparan sulfate as an attachment receptor. *J Virol* (1998) **72**:7357–66.
44. Hulst MM, Van Gennip HG, Moormann RJ. Passage of classical swine fever virus in cultured swine kidney cells selects virus variants that bind to heparan sulfate due to a single amino acid change in envelope protein E(rns). *J Virol* (2000) **74**:9553–61. doi:10.1128/JVI.74.20.9553-9561.2000
45. Mandl CW, Kroschewski H, Allison SL, Kofler R, Holzmann H, Meixner T, et al. Adaptation of tick-borne encephalitis virus to BHK-21 cells results in the formation of multiple heparan sulfate binding sites in the envelope protein and attenuation in vivo. *J Virol* (2001) **75**:5627–37. doi:10.1128/JVI.75.12.5627-5637.2001
46. Bear JS, Byrnes AP, Griffin DE. Heparin-binding and patterns of virulence for two recombinant strains of Sindbis virus. *Virology* (2006) **347**:183–90. doi:10.1016/j.virol.2005.11.034
47. Sherer NM, Jin J, Mothes W. Directional spread of surface-associated retroviruses regulated by differential virus-cell interactions. *J Virol* (2010) **84**:3248–58. doi:10.1128/JVI.02155-09
48. Connolly SA, Jackson JO, Jardetzky TS, Longnecker R. Fusing structure and function: a structural view of the herpesvirus entry machinery. *Nat Rev Microbiol* (2011) **9**:369–81. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2548
49. Spear PG. Herpes simplex virus: receptors and ligands for cell entry. *Cell Microbiol* (2004) **6**:401–10. doi:10.1111/j.1462-5822.2004.00389.x
50. Hu YP, Lin SY, Huang CY, Zulueta MM, Liu JY, Chang W, et al. Synthesis of 3-O-sulfonated heparan sulfate octasaccharides that inhibit the herpes simplex virus type 1 host-cell interaction. *Nat Chem* (2011) **3**:557–63. doi:10.1038/nchem.1073
51. Ceballos A, Remes Lenicov F, Sabatte J, Rodriguez Rodrigues C, Cabrini M, Jancic C, et al. Spermatozoa capture HIV-1 through heparan sulfate and efficiently transmit the virus to dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* (2009) **206**:2717–33. doi:10.1084/jem.20091579
52. Shattock RJ, Moore JP. Inhibiting sexual transmission of HIV-1 infection. *Nat Rev Microbiol* (2003) **1**:25–34. doi:10.1038/nrmicro729
53. Bomsel M. Transcytosis of infectious human immunodeficiency virus across a tight human epithelial cell line barrier. *Nat Med* (1997) **3**:42–7. doi:10.1038/nm0197-42
54. Hladik F, McElrath MJ. Setting the stage: host invasion by HIV. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) **8**:447–57. doi:10.1038/nri2302
55. Wu Z, Chen Z, Phillips DM. Human genital epithelial cells capture cell-free human immunodeficiency virus type 1 and transmit the virus to CD4+ Cells: implications for mechanisms of sexual transmission. *J Infect Dis* (2003) **188**:1473–82. doi:10.1086/379248
56. Bobardt MD, Chatterji U, Selvarajah S, Van Der Schueren B, David G, Kahn B, et al. Cell-free human immunodeficiency virus type 1 transcytosis through primary genital epithelial cells. *J Virol* (2007) **81**:395–405. doi:10.1128/JVI.01303-06
57. Nazli A, Kafka JK, Ferreira VH, Anipindi V, Mueller K, Osborne BJ, et al. HIV-1 gp120 induces TLR2- and TLR4-mediated innate immune activation in human female genital epithelium. *J Immunol* (2013) **191**(8):4246–58. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1301482
58. Kumar RB, Maher DM, Herzberg MC, Southern PJ. Expression of HIV receptors, alternate receptors and co-receptors on tonsillar epithelium: implications for HIV binding and primary oral infection. *Virol J* (2006) **3**:25. doi:10.1186/1743-422X-3-25
59. Vidricaire G, Gauthier S, Tremblay MJ. HIV-1 infection of trophoblasts is independent of gp120/CD4 Interactions but relies on heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *J Infect Dis* (2007) **195**:1461–71. doi:10.1086/515576
60. Bobardt MD, Saphire AC, Hung HC, Yu X, Van Der Schueren B, Zhang Z, et al. Syndecan captures, protects, and transmits HIV to T lymphocytes. *Immunity* (2003) **18**:27–39. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00504-6
61. Argyris EG, Acheampong E, Nunnari G, Mukhtar M, Williams KJ, Pomerantz RJ. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 enters primary human brain microvascular endothelial cells by a mechanism involving cell surface proteoglycans independent of lipid rafts. *J Virol* (2003) **77**:12140–51. doi:10.1128/JVI.77.22.12140-12151.2003
62. Banks WA, Robinson SM, Wolf KM, Bess JW Jr, Arthur LO. Binding, internalization, and membrane incorporation of human immunodeficiency virus-1 at the blood-brain barrier is differentially regulated. *Neuroscience* (2004) **128**:143–53. doi:10.1016/j.neuroscience.2004.06.021
63. Bobardt MD, Salmon P, Wang L, Esko JD, Gabuzda D, Fiala M, et al. Contribution of proteoglycans to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 brain invasion. *J Virol* (2004) **78**:6567–84. doi:10.1128/JVI.78.12.6567-6584.2004
64. Poiesi C, De Francesco MA, Baronio M, Manca N. HIV-1 p17 binds heparan sulfate proteoglycans to activated CD4(+) T cells. *Virus Res* (2008) **132**:25–32. doi:10.1016/j.virusres.2007.10.006
65. Tyagi M, Rusnati M, Presta M, Giacca M. Internalization of HIV-1 tat requires cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *J Biol Chem* (2001) **276**:3254–61. doi:10.1074/jbc.M006701200
66. Greiner VJ, Shvadchak V, Fritz J, Arntz Y, Didier P, Frisch B, et al. Characterization of the mechanisms of HIV-1 Vpr(52–96) internalization in cells. *Biochimie* (2011) **93**:1647–58. doi:10.1016/j.biochi.2011.05.033
67. Gali Y, Delezay O, Brouwers J, Addad N, Augustijns P, Bourlet T, et al. In vitro evaluation of viability, integrity, and inflammation in genital epithelia upon exposure to pharmaceutical excipients and candidate microbicides. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* (2010) **54**:5105–14. doi:10.1128/AAC.00456-10
68. Pirrone V, Wigdahl B, Krebs FC. The rise and fall of polyanionic inhibitors of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Antiviral Res* (2011) **90**:168–82. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2011.03.176
69. Klatzmann D, Champagne E, Chamaret S, Gruest J, Guetard D, Hercend T, et al. T-lymphocyte T4 molecule behaves as the receptor for human retrovirus LAV. *Nature* (1984) **312**:767–8. doi:10.1038/312767a0
70. Rizzuto CD, Wyatt R, Hernandez-Ramos N, Sun Y, Kwong PD, Hendrickson WA, et al. A conserved HIV gp120 glycoprotein structure involved in chemokine receptor binding. *Science* (1998) **280**:1949–53. doi:10.1126/science.280.5371.1949
71. Kwong PD, Wyatt R, Robinson J, Sweet RW, Sodroski J, Hendrickson WA. Structure of an HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein in complex with the CD4 receptor and a neutralizing human antibody. *Nature* (1998) **393**:648–59. doi:10.1038/31405
72. Chen B, Vogan EM, Gong H, Skehel JJ, Wiley DC, Harrison SC. Structure of an unliganded simian immunodeficiency virus gp120 core. *Nature* (2005) **433**:834–41. doi:10.1038/nature03327
73. Huang CC, Tang M, Zhang MY, Majeed S, Montabana E, Stanfield RL, et al. Structure of a V3-containing HIV-1 gp120 core. *Science* (2005) **310**:1025–8. doi:10.1126/science.1118398
74. Wu L, Gerard NP, Wyatt R, Choe H, Parolin C, Ruffing N, et al. CD4-induced interaction of primary HIV-1 gp120 glycoproteins with the chemokine receptor CCR-5. *Nature* (1996) **384**:179–83. doi:10.1038/384179a0
75. Hartley O, Klasse PJ, Sattentau QJ, Moore JP. V3: HIV's switch-hitter. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* (2005) **21**:171–89. doi:10.1089/aid.2005.21.171

76. Ito M, Baba M, Sato A, Pauwels R, De Clercq E, Shigeta S. Inhibitory effect of dextran sulfate and heparin on the replication of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) in vitro. *Antiviral Res* (1987) **7**:361–7. doi:10.1016/0166-3542(87)90001-5
77. Baba M, Snoeck R, Pauwels R, De Clercq E. Sulfated polysaccharides are potent and selective inhibitors of various enveloped viruses, including herpes simplex virus, cytomegalovirus, vesicular stomatitis virus, and human immunodeficiency virus. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* (1988) **32**:1742–5. doi:10.1128/AAC.32.11.1742
78. Mitsuya H, Looney DJ, Kuno S, Ueno R, Wong-Staal F, Broder S. Dextran sulfate suppression of viruses in the HIV family: inhibition of virion binding to CD4+ cells. *Science* (1988) **240**:646–9. doi:10.1126/science.2452480
79. Ohshiro Y, Murakami T, Matsuda K, Nishioka K, Yoshida K, Yamamoto N. Role of cell surface glycosaminoglycans of human T cells in human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1) infection. *Microbiol Immunol* (1996) **40**:827–35.
80. Rider CC, Coombe DR, Harrop HA, Hounsell EF, Bauer C, Feeney J, et al. Anti-HIV-1 activity of chemically modified heparins: correlation between binding to the V3 loop of gp120 and inhibition of cellular HIV-1 infection in vitro. *Biochemistry* (1994) **33**:6974–80. doi:10.1021/bi00188a029
81. Harrop HA, Rider CC. Heparin and its derivatives bind to HIV-1 recombinant envelope glycoproteins, rather than to recombinant HIV-1 receptor, CD4. *Glycobiology* (1998) **8**:131–7. doi:10.1093/glycob/8.2.131
82. Roderiquez G, Oravecz T, Yanagishita M, Bou-Habib DC, Mostowski H, Norcross MA. Mediation of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 binding by interaction of cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans with the V3 region of envelope gp120-gp41. *J Virol* (1995) **69**:2233–9.
83. Schols D, Pauwels R, Desmyter J, De Clercq E. Dextran sulfate and other polyanionic anti-HIV compounds specifically interact with the viral gp120 glycoprotein expressed by T-cells persistently infected with HIV-1. *Virology* (1990) **175**:556–61. doi:10.1016/0042-6822(90)90440-3
84. Callahan LN, Phelan M, Mallinson M, Norcross MA. Dextran sulfate blocks antibody binding to the principal neutralizing domain of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 without interfering with gp120-CD4 interactions. *J Virol* (1991) **65**:1543–50.
85. Ibrahim J, Griffin P, Coombe DR, Rider CC, James W. Cell-surface heparan sulfate facilitates human immunodeficiency virus type 1 entry into some cell lines but not primary lymphocytes. *Virus Res* (1999) **60**:159–69. doi:10.1016/S0168-1702(99)00018-0
86. Bartolini B, Di Caro A, Cavallaro RA, Liverani L, Mascellani G, La Rosa G, et al. Susceptibility to highly sulphated glycosaminoglycans of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in peripheral blood lymphocytes and monocyte-derived macrophages cell cultures. *Antiviral Res* (2003) **58**:139–47. doi:10.1016/S0166-3542(02)00209-7
87. Fadnes B, Husebekk A, Svineng G, Rekdal O, Yanagishita M, Kolset SO, et al. The proteoglycan repertoire of lymphoid cells. *Glycoconj J* (2012) **29**:513–23. doi:10.1007/s10719-012-9427-9
88. Saphire AC, Bobardt MD, Zhang Z, David G, Gallay PA. Syndecans serve as attachment receptors for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 on macrophages. *J Virol* (2001) **75**:9187–200. doi:10.1128/JVI.75.19.9187-9200.2001
89. Saidi H, Magri G, Carbonneil C, Bouhlal H, Hocini H, Belec L. Apical interactions of HIV type 1 with polarized HEC-1 cell monolayer modulate R5-HIV type 1 spread by submucosal macrophages. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* (2009) **25**:497–509. doi:10.1089/aid.2008.0156
90. Jones KS, Petrow-Sadowski C, Bertolette DC, Huang Y, Ruscetti FW. Heparan sulfate proteoglycans mediate attachment and entry of human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 virions into CD4+ T cells. *J Virol* (2005) **79**:12692–702. doi:10.1128/JVI.79.20.12692-12702.2005
91. Batinic D, Robey FA. The V3 region of the envelope glycoprotein of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 binds sulfated polysaccharides and CD4-derived synthetic peptides. *J Biol Chem* (1992) **267**:6664–71.
92. Moulard M, Lortat-Jacob H, Mondor I, Roca G, Wyatt R, Sodroski J, et al. Selective interactions of polyanions with basic surfaces on human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120. *J Virol* (2000) **74**:1948–60. doi:10.1128/JVI.74.4.1948-1960.2000
93. Flexner C, Barditch-Crovo PA, Kornhauser DM, Farzadegan H, Nerhood LJ, Chaisson RE, et al. Pharmacokinetics, toxicity, and activity of intravenous dextran sulfate in human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* (1991) **35**:2544–50. doi:10.1128/AAC.35.12.2544
94. Vives RR, Crublet E, Andrieu JP, Gagnon J, Rousselle P, Lortat-Jacob H. A novel strategy for defining critical amino acid residues involved in protein/glycosaminoglycan interactions. *J Biol Chem* (2004) **279**:54327–33. doi:10.1074/jbc.M409760200
95. Crublet E, Andrieu JP, Vives RR, Lortat-Jacob H. The HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein gp120 features four heparan sulfate binding domains, including the co-receptor binding site. *J Biol Chem* (2008) **283**:15193–200. doi:10.1074/jbc.M800066200
96. Basmaciogullari S, Babcock GJ, Van Ryk D, Wojtowicz W, Sodroski J. Identification of conserved and variable structures in the human immunodeficiency virus gp120 glycoprotein of importance for CXCR4 binding. *J Virol* (2002) **76**:10791–800. doi:10.1128/JVI.76.21.10791-10800.2002
97. Liu J, Bartesaghi A, Borgnia MJ, Sapiro G, Subramaniam S. Molecular architecture of native HIV-1 gp120 trimers. *Nature* (2008) **455**:109–13. doi:10.1038/nature07159
98. Vives RR, Imberty A, Sattentau QJ, Lortat-Jacob H. Heparan sulfate targets the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein gp120 coreceptor binding site. *J Biol Chem* (2005) **280**:21353–7. doi:10.1074/jbc.M500911200
99. Baleux F, Loureiro-Morais L, Hersant Y, Clayette P, Arenzana-Seisdedos F, Bonnaffe D, et al. A synthetic CD4-heparan sulfate glycoconjugate inhibits CCR5 and CXCR4 HIV-1 attachment and entry. *Nat Chem Biol* (2009) **5**:743–8. doi:10.1038/nchembio.207
100. Connell BJ, Baleux F, Coic YM, Clayette P, Bonnaffe D, Lortat-Jacob H. A synthetic heparan sulfate-mimetic peptide conjugated to a mini CD4 displays very high anti- HIV-1 activity independently of coreceptor usage. *Chem Biol* (2012) **19**:131–9. doi:10.1016/j.chembiol.2011.12.009
101. Huang CC, Lam SN, Acharya P, Tang M, Xiang SH, Hussan SS, et al. Structures of the CCR5 N terminus and of a tyrosine-sulfated antibody with HIV-1 gp120 and CD4. *Science* (2007) **317**:1930–4. doi:10.1126/science.1145373
102. Tilton JC, Doms RW. Entry inhibitors in the treatment of HIV-1 infection. *Antiviral Res* (2010) **85**:91–100. doi:10.1016/j.antiviral.2009.07.022
103. Mehellou Y, De Clercq E. Twenty-six years of anti-HIV drug discovery: where do we stand and where do we go? *J Med Chem* (2010) **53**:521–38. doi:10.1021/jm900492g
104. Mulloy B. Structure and physicochemical characterisation of heparin. *Handb Exp Pharmacol* (2012) **207**:77–98. doi:10.1007/978-3-642-23056-1_5

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Received: 23 September 2013; paper pending published: 15 October 2013; accepted: 05 November 2013; published online: 20 November 2013.

*Citation: Connell BJ and Lortat-Jacob H (2013) Human immunodeficiency virus and heparan sulfate: from attachment to entry inhibition. Front. Immunol. **4**:385. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00385*

This article was submitted to Inflammation, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology.

frontiers

EPFL Innovation Park · Building I · 1015 Lausanne · Switzerland
T +41 21 510 17 00 · info@frontiersin.org · frontiersin.org